

MING HISTORY

AN INTRODUCTORY GUIDE TO RESEARCH

明史研究指南



compiled by

Edward L. Farmer
Romeyn Taylor
Ann Waltner

with the assistance of

Jiang Yonglin

MING STUDIES RESEARCH SERIES NUMBER 3

**MING HISTORY:
AN INTRODUCTORY GUIDE TO
RESEARCH**

明史研究指南

Compiled by

Edward L. Farmer

Romeyn Taylor

Ann Waltner

with the assistance of

Jiang Yonglin

MING STUDIES RESEARCH SERIES NUMBER 3

MINNEAPOLIS 1994

MING STUDIES RESEARCH SERIES

Edward L. Farmer, Editor

1. A SYNCHRONIC CHINESE-WESTERN DAILY CALENDAR 1341-1661 A.D., by
Keith Hazelton (1984)
2. MING STUDIES IN JAPAN 1961-1981: A CLASSIFIED BIBLIOGRAPHY, by
Richard T. Wang (1985)
3. MING HISTORY: AN INTRODUCTORY GUIDE TO RESEARCH, by Edward L.
Farmer, Romeyn Taylor, and Ann Waltner (1994)

All titles are available from:

MING STUDIES RESEARCH SERIES
History Department
University of Minnesota
267 - 19th Avenue South
Minneapolis, Minnesota 55455

Copyright © 1994 by Edward L. Farmer

All rights reserved

ISBN: 1-886108-02-1

Printed in the United States of America

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This guide grew out of a research seminar in the History Department at the University of Minnesota. The course was taught jointly by Edward L. Farmer and Romeyn Taylor for two decades and by the three of us after Ann Waltner joined the Department in the late 1980s. The work owes much to our teachers, our colleagues and our students who challenged us, prodded us and helped us along the way. In particular we wish to thank Paul P. W. Cheng, William Sheh Wong, Richard T. Wang and Yuan Zhou, East Asian Librarians at the University of Minnesota. Help in the library was also received from Sharyn T. Wang, Yuh-shiow Wang and Emiko Weeks. Graduate students who made particular contributions include George Jerlang Chang, Tai-yung Lin, Keith Hazelton, Jennifer Downs, Hsu Pi-ching, and Jiang Yonglin.

MING HISTORY: AN INTRODUCTORY GUIDE TO RESEARCH constitutes Number 3 in the Ming Studies Research Series and is available from the History Department, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN 55455. We take responsibility for any errors in the text. Suggestions for corrections and improvements would be greatly appreciated.

E.L.F. R.T. A.W.
Minneapolis, Minnesota
August, 1994

MING HISTORY:
AN INTRODUCTORY GUIDE TO RESEARCH

Contents

<u>Introduction</u>	1
<u>A. Conventional Practice</u>	
1. Romanization.....	5
2. Dictionaries.....	10
3. Names of Persons.....	19
4. Names of Places.....	30
5. Date Conversion.....	42
6. Offices and Titles.....	54
7. Writing and Editing.....	59
<u>B. Traditional Sources</u>	
8. Traditional Sources.....	67
9. The Ming History (<u>Mingshi</u>).....	72
10. The Veritable Records (<u>Ming shilu</u>) et al.....	81
11. Collected Statutes (<u>Huidian</u>).....	89
12. Law Codes.....	91
13. Gazetteers.....	99
14. Collectanea (<u>Congshu</u>).....	106
15. Writings of Individual Authors (<u>Wenji</u> and <u>Biji</u>).....	110
16. Essays on Statecraft.....	115
17. Encyclopedias.....	119
<u>C. Modern Scholarship</u>	
18. Ming History Journals.....	129
19. Secondary Literature in Western Languages.....	132
20. Secondary Literature in Japanese.....	135
21. Secondary Literature in Chinese.....	139
22. Dissertations.....	143
23. Libraries and Archives.....	146

D. Vocabulary and Notes

1.	A Month in 1378 (MING TONGJIAN).....	V	1
2.	The Land System (MING HUIYAO).....	V	25
3.	Biography of Wang Yangming (MINGSHI).....	V	44
4.	Turpan (MINGSHI).....	V	69
5.	Summer 1366 (MING SHILU).....	V	89
6.	Preface (HUANG MING YONGHUA LEIBIAN).....	V	117
7.	On law (HUANG MING YONGHUA LEIBIAN).....	V	131
8.	Memorial re Ming Code (HUANG MING ZHISHU).....	V	141
9.	Imperial Proclamation (HUANG MING ZHAOLING).....	V	152
10.	Adult Males (ZHENZE XIAN ZHI).....	V	165
11.	Treatise on Rituals (MING SHI).....	V	168

E. Documents

1.	MING TONGJIAN, 1: 358-62.....	D	1
2.	MING HUIYAO, 2: 982-87.....	D	7
3.	MINGSHI, <u>juan</u> 195.....	D	13
4.	MINGSHI, <u>juan</u> 329.....	D	24
5.	MING TAIZU SHILU, <u>juan</u> 20.....	D	33
6.	HUANG MING YONGHUA LEIBIAN, 1: 1-8.....	D	42
7.	HUANG MING YONGHUA LEIBIAN, 6: 395-99.....	D	50
8.	HUANG MING ZHISHU, 1609-15.....	D	55
9.	HUANG MING ZHAOLING, 4: 1652-64.....	D	62
10.	ZHENZE XIAN ZHI, <u>juan</u> 4.....	D	76
11.	MING SHI, <u>juan</u> 56.....	D	81

F. Reference Aids

1.	Handy Reference Works.....	R	1
2.	The Four-Corner System.....	R	2
3.	Wade Giles to Pinyin Conversion Table.....	R	15
4.	Pinyin to Wade-Giles Conversion Table.....	R	17
5.	Weights and Measures.....	R	19
6.	Reign Years.....	R	20
7.	Map of Ming China.....	R	21

INTRODUCTION

The materials collected here were used to introduce graduate students to Ming history documents, the resources of the East Asian Library, and some of the conventions of Sinological scholarship. Experience teaching mixed groups of students of different educational backgrounds and disciplinary interests has convinced us that one can take nothing for granted. While American or European students may be unfamiliar with the most elementary aspects of Chinese culture it is also the case that students from Taiwan, Hong Kong and the People's Republic of China are apt to be very unevenly prepared in terms of American scholarly conventions, English usage, or even the ability to read late imperial Chinese texts. Thus these materials assume little knowledge other than an introductory acquaintance with Classical Chinese. Users of the GUIDE will want to skip over or ignore sections dealing with matters they have already mastered.

The numbered subsections of parts A, B and C are arranged in a sequence from the more elementary to the more advanced. These conform more or less to the tripartite division of our seminar in which the fall term is devoted to basic skills, the winter to translation and annotation of documents, and the spring to research papers based on the documents. The notes and documents in parts D and E are designed for in-class reading beginning with the first day in the fall. They were selected to introduce the student to a variety of sources and prose styles. The vocabulary and notes are designed to save students time in

looking up unfamiliar characters and expressions. It might be objected that binding the Chinese texts and vocabulary notes together in one volume makes reference to the notes less convenient than publication under separate cover. It is our expectation that any student wishing to read through the documents will make xerox copies that can be annotated without defacing the bound originals. Part F brings together a number of items to which the researcher may often require ready reference.

In addition to the materials offered here, in our seminar we have also made use of two excellent works based on a case study approach. They are: Frederick W. Mote and Howard L. Goodman, **A RESEARCH MANUAL FOR MING HISTORY**, 2 vols., part of the **RESEARCH MANUAL SERIES** co-edited by Ta-tuan Ch'en and Frederick W. Mote (Princeton: Chinese Linguistics Project at Princeton University, n.d.) and Philip A. Kuhn and John K. Fairbank, comp., **INTRODUCTION TO CH'ING DOCUMENTS**, Part One, **READING DOCUMENTS: THE REBELLION OF CHUNG JEN-CHIEH** (Cambridge: The John King Fairbank Center for East Asian Research, 1986), 2 vols.

A. CONVENTIONAL PRACTICE

1. ROMANIZATION

1.1 Romanization. Romanization is the representation in the Latin alphabet of terms from another language originally written in a script other than the Latin alphabet. For readers of English, romanization offers the convenience of representing the phonetic value of foreign words in a familiar script which is easy to write, type and print. As a phonetic rendering romanization is only one of a number of devices for transcription which might include other alphabets, phonetic alphabets and phonetic symbols and conventions. When applied to the transcription of Chinese, romanization systems, because they reproduce only the phonetic value of the original, are unable to distinguish between different Chinese characters with the same pronunciation. This inability to disambiguate homophonic expressions severely limits the power of any system of romanization to represent the full meaning of Chinese terms. Tonal values, however, can be represented in romanization through the addition of diacritical markings, the addition of numbers, or the variation of spelling. In the latter case Latin letters are assigned tonal values that depart radically from their more familiar phonetic associations. Because the sounds of Chinese and English are not identical, all systems of romanization require that some Latin letters be used in ways not obvious to the English speaker. Learning these uses requires mastery of conventions which are part neither of English nor of Chinese but which exist outside both languages as tools for

descriptive purposes. These tools are essential to historical scholarship.

1.2 When to Romanize. Romanization is most useful as an alternative either to translation or to rendering a foreign term in its original orthography. As an alternative to translation it offers a way to avoid translating terms which lack precise English equivalents (e.g., tianxia instead of "under heaven," ren instead of "benevolence") or which lack any equivalent at all (e.g., xin Hai for the cyclical characters 辛亥).

Romanization is most commonly used in rendering names of persons and places in a form that can be recognized and written by readers of English who would not recognize the native orthography. It is also useful for listing Chinese terms as in dictionaries and card catalogues. Furthermore, it is cheaper and more convenient to romanize foreign terms than to insert them into an English text. This can be a matter of major importance in the production of a manuscript.

1.3 Which System. There are numerous conventions for rendering Chinese terms in phonetic symbols the most common of which are: Wade-Giles, Pinyin, Yale, Zhuyin zimu (Zhuyin fuhao) and Romatzyh. Because Chinese characters are primarily visual symbols there is a gross loss of meaning when they are transcribed phonetically. The rate of ambiguity is further multiplied when tones are not indicated. However, phonetic accuracy is not the primary concern of the historian. Systems like Romatzyh and Yale most closely approximate the spoken language and are primarily intended for language instruction.

The Zhuyin zimu system is primarily a phonetic alphabet for speakers of Chinese and cannot be written in the Latin alphabet. The system which first gained wide currency in the English-speaking world was the Wade-Giles system. It was for years the standard system followed in journalism, government documents and formal academic work on China. Pinyin, which shares most vowels with Wade-Giles but rationalizes the use of consonants, was first popularized in the People's Republic of China and has gradually gained international acceptance. Since 1979 it has been adopted for most journalistic and governmental purposes in the United States. The use of Pinyin is now widespread in English language scholarship but it has not yet completely displaced Wade-Giles. At the time of this writing (1993) both Pinyin and Wade-Giles are in common use; therefore the student of Chinese history should be familiar with both systems and able to convert from one to the other. It should be noted that when one renders a Chinese term in Wade-Giles or Pinyin romanization one is observing a double convention: first, determining the pronunciation in Standard Chinese (i.e. "Mandarin"); second, romanizing that in Latin letters. This means that even a native speaker of Chinese who wishes to write in English will be obliged to learn two new systems for rendering his or her own language.

1.4 Problems with Wade-Giles. The Wade-Giles system presents a number of problems. In the first place it does not approximate English pronunciation ("Ch" sounds like "J", "K" sounds like "G", "P" sounds like "B", "T" sounds like "D" and "J" sounds

like "R"). Secondly, it involves usages not found in English, such as the apostrophe (') after Ch, K, P, T, Ts and Tz and the umlaut U (Ü). Thirdly, while variant forms such as the circumflex and breve are now generally discarded, Wade-Giles requires diacritical marks to indicate tones. Finally, the use of the hyphen to link syllables causes considerable confusion.

1.5 Problems with Pinyin. Pinyin is superior to Wade-Giles in the sense that it is potentially a universal system. It is used in the People's Republic of China as well as other countries using the Latin alphabet. Wade-Giles, by contrast, was used only in English-speaking countries and West Germany. Pinyin, however, is not without problems of its own. First of all it assigns a number of arbitrary values to initial letters, especially C, Q, X, Z and Zh. Second, final R sounds are unwritten in syllables such as Chi, Ri, Shi, and Zhi. Third, the absence of hyphens creates ambiguities in syllable separation which can only be resolved by the insertion of apostrophes (e.g., Yan'an).

1.6 Usage. Capitalize as little as possible. Only the beginning of a book title and only proper names need be capitalized. Group syllables together for clarity of meaning. Underline romanized terms (in typescript this is the equivalent of italics in print). Do not underline proper names or words commonly accepted in English usage. It is now acceptable to use romanization for place names (e.g., Beijing for Peking) and personal names but some traditional usages should be respected (e.g., Confucius).

1.7 Sources. See Mathews' CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, revised edition (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1965), pp. xviii-xxi. For accurate guidance to Mandarin pronunciation see the GWOYEU TSYRDEAN (2.5, below) which comes in editions using both Pinyin and Zhuyin zimu.

2. DICTIONARIES

2.1 Dictionaries. One of the greatest sorrows of the study of Chinese history is the absence of an adequate Chinese-English dictionary. Since Chinese and English rank as the first and second languages in the world in number of speakers it is not unreasonable to wish for a dictionary to bridge the gap between them. For the study of Ming history, entirely adequate tools do not exist for translating either modern vernacular Chinese or the classical written language of the early modern period. Some of the most useful dictionaries with which you should be familiar are listed below.

2.2 Mathews. MATHEWS' CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY (MAI SHI HANYING DACIDIAN 麥氏漢英大辭典 : Shanghai, 1931; revised edition, Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1944), although old, remains an essential tool. A companion volume gives English to Chinese entries of limited utility. The principal virtue of this work is that it gives romanizations and English renderings for more than 7,700 Chinese characters and more than 100,000 phrases and combinations. Entries are grouped under individual characters arranged in alphabetical order (with notable deviations) and serially numbered. Within each entry, phrases and combinations are listed by radical and number of strokes of the second character. Individual characters are listed in the index by radical and number of strokes. A number of useful tables and a discussion of Chinese pronunciation are included. The shortcomings of this dictionary are very serious

indeed and should be kept in mind. The entries contain a mixture of vernacular, literary, and classical items not always clearly distinguished. Romanizations are frequently inaccurate. This dictionary is at best a first stop in the search for a workable definition.

2.3 Giles. Herbert A. Giles, A CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY (second edition, revised, Shanghai, 1912; available in one volume, Taiwan reprint, Taipei: Ch'eng-wen Publishing Company, 1967), 2 vols., is a by-product of Western penetration of China in the nineteenth century. Consequently it benefits from its author's intimate acquaintance with the bureaucratic machinery of the Chinese empire. Many of the Qing institutions described here are essentially the same as their Ming predecessors (similarities, however, can also be deceiving). The utility of Giles' dictionary is that it is designed as a tool to aid the foreign student in understanding Chinese. Such, manifestly, is not the goal of many Chinese dictionaries (see Giles, p. ix, on the subject of the Kangxi dictionary). Like MATHEWS, Giles' contents are arranged alphabetically by romanized Mandarin reading. The index at the front of volume 1 is organized by radical and strokes. Entries combine colloquial, literary, and administrative terminology but there is less of the foreign and modern usage which makes 2.2 so confusing. The comprehensive list of Chinese surnames at the front of the volume is especially useful. The question whether to translate a word, or to read it as a personal name, is quickly resolved by reference to this list.

2.4 Couvreur. F. S. Couvreur, DICTIONNAIRE CLASSIQUE DE LA LANGUE CHINOISE, 2nd ed. (Peiping: H. Vetch, 1947; Taipei: World Book Co., 1963) is organized by radical and stroke count. It has at least two important advantages. The first is that it includes a large number of variant forms of characters, such as are often encountered in reading block-printed texts. The other is that it indicates the locus classicus for the examples of usage that it cites. This is often helpful in the demystification of a difficult text.

2.5 Hanying Cidian. HANYING CIDIAN 漢英詞典 (THE CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY; Hong Kong: Commercial Press, 1979), 976 pp. Compiled by the Chinese-English Dictionary Editorial Committee of the Beijing Foreign Languages Institute under the leadership of Wu Jingrong 吳景榮. This is the most recent effort to compile a comprehensive Chinese-to-English dictionary for contemporary Standard Chinese. Entries are arranged alphabetically according to the romanized value of individual characters in Hanyupinyin and among homophones by tone and then number of strokes. Under each main character heading compounds are listed in alphabetical order giving Chinese characters, romanization and English meaning. Entries use only contemporary simplified forms of the Chinese characters. Aside from its overall quality and accuracy the greatest virtue of this dictionary is that full romanization and tone marks are given for every entry. Also of general utility are numerous tables and indexes among which the following deserve mention: (1) a Radical Index based on 227 radicals (p. 13); (2) a listing of

all characters by radical and stroke (pp. 14-31); (3) an Index of Syllables of Hanyupinyin, subdivided by tone with every character shown for each possible pronunciation (pp. 32-37); (4) Tables showing the old forms of Chinese Characters and their simplified versions, arranged both by romanized pronunciation and by radical (pp. 948-955); (5) a conversion table for Hanyupinyin and Wade-Giles (pp. 957-959); and (6) lists of the heavenly stems and earthly branches and the twenty-four solar terms (p. 976). This dictionary is chiefly useful as a reliable guide to pronunciation.

2.6 Gwoyeu Tsyrdian. GWOYEU TSYRDEAN 國語辭典; Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1937; Taipei, 1965), 4 vols. As the title suggests the main strength of this dictionary lies in the attention given to phonetic readings of the characters. Entries are arranged by their phonetic value according to the national phonetic syllabary, guoyin zimu 國音字母 or zhuyin fuhao 注音符號, and subdivided by tone. Entries are also labelled in the gwoyeu romatzyh 國語羅馬字 which vary in spelling for each tone and thus require no diacritical marks. Tables comparing these phonetic systems are to be found near the front of volume 1, third set of numbered pages, 1-13. A character index by radicals and strokes may be found at the end of the last volume. Entries are drawn mostly from modern spoken Chinese and definitions are minimal in content. This reference work is especially useful for finding expressions that are too colloquial to have been included in CI HAI or CI YUAN.

2.7 Ci Hai. CI HAI 辭海 (first Taiwan edition, Taipei, 1967), 2

vols., is a reissue of the famous modern Chinese dictionary that appeared originally in 1936. Characters are arranged throughout the work by radical and stroke and entries under each character by number of characters in the entry and number of strokes in the second character. This dictionary also includes both classical and modern terminology but its definitions are generally careful to give information about early usage.

The pronunciation of characters is rendered by the traditional fan qie 反切 system. In that system three items of information are relayed: (1) the pronunciation is indicated by giving two characters followed by qie 切. This indicates that the pronunciation of the character being defined can be determined by taking the initial reading of the first character and the final reading of the second character and combining them. For example, the character 黃 is followed by the characters 胡光切 hu guang qie. This means that we take the "h" from hu and the "uang" from guang to get huang which is the proper reading for 黃. (2) The second item is a word which rhymes with (or classically has been purported to rhyme with) the word being defined followed by yun. In the preceding example, we would find 陽韻 yang yun. Thus the first block of information under the character 黃 reads as follows: 胡光切皇陽韻. For more information of this type about the CI HAI and its contents see: George A. Kennedy, ZH GUIDE: AN INTRODUCTION TO SINOLOGY (New Haven, 1953), 185 pp.

2.8 Ci Yuan. CI YUAN 辭源 (Beijing: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1979), 4 vols.; Taiwan edition (Taipei: Taiwan Shangwu yinshuguan,

1989), 2 vols., is the most definitive dictionary for classical Chinese. Entries are arranged by radical and stroke, pp. 1-3619. Volume 4 contains a four corner index of main entries and sub-entries followed by a phonetic index of single characters arranged by Pinyin pronunciation. The last item in volume 4 is a comprehensive chronological chart of rulers and reign titles in Chinese history giving both Western year equivalents and the Chinese stem and branch designations.

2.9 Xinhua Zidian. XINHUA ZIDIAN 新华字典 (first edition 1959, revised 1979; Beijing: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1982), is a handy character dictionary arranged according to Pinyin pronunciation and tone. Entries list over 11,000 characters in simplified form with complex form in parentheses. It is available with various indexes depending on edition. This little dictionary is the best guide to contemporary pronunciation and tone of individual characters.

2.10 Kangxi Zidian. KANGXI ZIDIAN 康熙字典 (imperial edition 1716; Zhonghua shuju reprint 1958), 1562 pp., plus 47 pages of corrections and emendations is a monument of early Qing scholarship. The list of 214 classifiers or radicals (部 bu) used, with or without modification, to organize subsequent dictionaries derives from this work. It encompasses virtually all Chinese characters (47,315 are included) and consequently is useful in identifying obscure graphs. Note that, as the title indicates, it is a dictionary of characters and not of words or phrases. The contents are listed by radical and stroke. Definitions are concerned for the most part with tracing

characters back to their earliest classical usages. The contents of the dictionary are also divided into sections

(ji 集) numbered according to the twelve cyclical characters called horary branches (dizhi 地支) and further subdivided into thirds (shang, zhong, xia 上、中、下). This method of division is used in a number of the dictionaries mentioned here. It has no special utility and may safely be ignored.

2.11 Morohashi. Morohashi Tetsuji 諸橋 轍次 DAI KAN-WA JITEN 大漢和辭典 (Tokyo, 1955), 12 vols. (13,757 pp.), plus one volume of indexes. This monumental opus is the greatest and most authoritative collection of information on the Chinese language to be found anywhere. In some respects it is like an encyclopedia since it gives biographical and other kinds of information that goes beyond the definition of words and phrases. Characters are arranged through the volumes by radical and stroke but combinations are arranged after each character heading according to Japanese pronunciation and hence can be difficult to locate. Readings are given in the Japanese syllabary as well as the traditional Chinese fan qie system, and sometimes Wade-Giles. This dictionary is particularly strong on Chinese historical information including things like the literary names of famous individuals cross referenced to their proper names. You should consider it one of the best places to find help in reading Ming texts. The index volume provides for looking up single characters by stroke, by Japanese pronunciation (jion 字音, Chinese style), by a second kind of Japanese pronunciation (jikun 字訓, Japanese style), and by the four corner system.

2.12 Zhongwen Da Cidian. Zhang Qiyun 張其昀 , ed., ZHONGWEN DA CIDIAN 中文大辭典 (The Encyclopedic Dictionary of the Chinese Language; Taipei, 1968), 38 vols., plus two index vols. This mammoth work is essentially a Chinese translation of 2.11 above. Like that work it can be used both as a dictionary and a classical encyclopedia. Contents are arranged by radical and stroke. Readings are given only for the character headings and not for combinations of characters. Various written styles of a character are given with its initial entry. Index 1 lists the contents by radical and stroke; sections indicate the volumes, entries give the page number of each character. Index 2 lists the contents by stroke and then radical, giving volume and page for each character.

2.13 Nelson. Andrew N. Nelson, (The Modern Reader's) JAPANESE-ENGLISH CHARACTER DICTIONARY (Rutland Vermont and Tokyo, Japan: Charles E. Tuttle Co., 1962), 1048 pp. This basic dictionary is a model of simplicity and organization. It has utility mainly as a guide to pronunciation and as an aid in reading contemporary Japanese secondary literature.

2.14 Kenkyusha Dictionary. Senkichi Katsumata, ed., (Kenkyusha's) NEW JAPANESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY (Kenkyusha: Tokyo, revised edition, 1954), 2136 pp. Entries in this dictionary are listed alphabetically in romanization followed by characters and a definition (often with examples) in English. This is strictly a guide to contemporary Japanese usage. Tables in the rear provide information on Japanese renderings of foreign place names, names of persons, Korean and Chinese places

and terms from East Asian history.

2.15 Ueda. Ueda Mannen 上田萬年 et al, eds., DAIJITEN 大字典 (American edition entitled UEDA'S DAIJITEN: A JAPANESE DICTIONARY OF CHINESE CHARACTERS AND COMPOUNDS, Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1942). Organized by radical and stroke, this dictionary is useful in identifying obscure or variant graphs. Contents include a radical and stroke index, the body of the dictionary with 14,924 character entries, a list of cursive forms of characters, and a phonetic index based on Japanese jion readings.

2.16 Historical Terminology. David Y. Hu 胡應元, comp. CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY OF CHINESE HISTORICAL TERMINOLOGY (ZHONGGUO SHIXUE CIHUI 中國史學辭彙; Taipei: Hua Shiang Yuan Publishing Co., 1992), 2 vols. This dictionary presents phrases and expressions in alphabetical order according to Wade-Giles romanization. Entries consist of the phrase in Chinese characters, the phrase in romanized form, an English translation, a longer phrase or passage from which it comes, and a brief explanation of its meaning and significance.

3. NAMES OF PERSONS

3.1 Rendering. Personal names are usually best transliterated and not translated. Use a Pinyin spelling, surname first, capitalizing the first element of the surname and given name and joining the other elements.

Examples:

徐達 Xu Da (single surname, single given name)
胡惟庸 Hu Weiyong (single surname, double given name)
司馬光 Sima Guang (double surname, single given name)

Conventional usage in a Chinese text may refer to an individual by his or her given name only, specifying the surname only at the beginning of an entry (as in a biography) or deleting it altogether (as in the commentary in DU SHI FANGYU JIYAO 讀史方輿紀要). Hence Yang Shiqi may be referred to as Shiqi with no indication of which Shiqi is meant. In translating such a passage it may be desirable to insert the surname or even substitute it for the given name.

Where an individual's name has an established romanized version that is not a simple transliteration you have an obligation to indicate what the standard form of the name would be. Examples:

Lee Dinyi (i.e. Li Dingyi 李定一)
Orient Lee (i.e. Li Dongfang 黎東方)
Paul Hsu (i.e. Xu Guangqi 徐光啓)

3.2 Variants. One problem you face in dealing with Chinese names is that of distinguishing between variant names for the

same individual. In addition to a family name (xing 姓) and a given name (ming 名) it is common to find a courtesy name (zi 字) and a literary name (hao 號). In reference works using Wade-Giles romanizations zi and hao are commonly rendered "T." (for tzu) and "H." respectively. Example:

Ku Yen-wu 顧炎武 (T. Ning-jen 寧人, H. T'ing-lin 亭林)

Usually it is desirable to designate an individual by the proper family name and given name. If he or she is better known by a courtesy name or literary name, it may be better to use the more common form and indicate the proper name in parentheses.

Example:

Wang Yangming 王陽明 (Wang Shouren 王守仁)

In case you do not know an individual's proper name you can look up the courtesy or literary name in an index like the ZI HAO SUOYIN (字號索引, zihao index) in MINGREN ZHUANJI ZILIAO SUOYIN [see below, 3.9]. A similar index may be found in Volume I of COMBINED INDICES TO EIGHTY-NINE COLLECTIONS OF MING DYNASTY BIOGRAPHIES, pp. 1-138 [see below, 3.8].

3.3 Titles of Nobility. Confusion sometimes arises between names and titles. For a comprehensive over-view of titles held by members of the imperial family, you are referred to the table in the front of Hucker 6.2. Emperors present the worst problems. They have:

a. Personal names (yuming 御名) which were taboo during their lives,

b. Reign titles (nianhao 年號), i.e. the year period of their rule--not a name at all--but frequently so used by

Westerners,

c. Temple names (miaohao 廟號) granted after death. For the founder of an imperial line this frequently included the word "progenitor" (zu 祖) and for subsequent rulers "ancestor" (zong 宗) or "emperor" (huangdi 皇帝) with an epithet (e.g. Su Huangdi 肅皇帝, The Majestic Emperor),

d. Posthumous titles (shi 謚), and

e. Tomb names (lingming 陵名) which substitute the name of the place of burial for the name of the person buried there.

Example:

The third Ming emperor, Zhu Di 朱棣, is occasionally referred to in English-language works by his reign title as "Yongle," which means the emperor who used the reign title 永樂 "Yongle." This is not a good practice: it is like referring to Franklin D. Roosevelt as "New Deal." A better usage would be "the Yongle emperor." After his death he was called Taizong 太宗 but in later times this was changed to Chengzu 成祖, which implied that he had started a new imperial line. His conventionally abbreviated posthumous title was Wen Huangdi 文皇帝 and his tomb near Beijing was known as the Changling 長陵. For a complete list of names and titles of the Ming rulers, see: Meng Sen 孟森, MING DAI SHI 明代史 (History of the Ming period; Taipei, 1957), table following page 8.

Empresses bore the title huanghou. Example: Ma huanghou 馬皇后, "Empress Ma." Empresses were also given posthumous titles. Example: Xiaoci huanghou 孝慈, "Filial and Kindly Empress." A surviving empress became an empress dowager

huangtaihou 皇太后 or, if she survived two emperors of successive generations, a grand empress dowager taihuang taihou 太皇太后 .

The heir-apparent was designated taizi 太子 . Because he resided in the eastern palace, he was also referred to as donggong 東宮 .

Other imperial princes were designated qinwang 親王 . Reference to an individual imperial prince included the name of his fief. Example: Yan Wang 燕王 "Prince of Yan." The junior sons of qinwang were junwang 郡王 "commandery prince." The junior descendants of the junwang were gong 公 "duke," and hou 侯 "marquis. Imperial princesses were gongzhu 公主 .

Heritable titles of nobility were also bestowed as a reward for distinguished military service. The holders of such titles constituted the nobility of merit gongchen 功臣 . They enjoyed certain legal privileges, and were sometimes sought out as suitable consorts for imperial princesses. Most were marquises hou 侯 . Some were dukes gong 公 , the most important of whom were state dukes guogong 國公 . In rare cases, the title of prince wang was conferred, but this was only for the lifetime of the recipient. The lowest title regularly bestowed in Ming times was that of earl bo 伯 .

Posthumous titles frequently appear in the title of a man's collected works. Example:

Yang Yiqing 楊一清 (1454-1530) was given the posthumous title Wenxiang 文襄 . His collected works are referred to by the title YANG WEN XIANG GONG WENJI 楊文襄公文集 , "THE COLLECTED WORKS OF MR. YANG WENXIANG." Note that such usage is purely

honorary and does not imply that the person in question held a title of nobility.

The following are the most obvious places to look up names for additional information:

3.4 Non-Chinese. Where non-Chinese names occur in Ming history one must decide on how to render them. Western names can best be given in their Western form. Example: Matteo Ricci--not Li Madou 利馬竇 .

Korean, Vietnamese, and Japanese names can be romanized to indicate the native pronunciation where that can be determined and the characters indicated. Where Mongol, Manchu, or other non-Chinese names are encountered in a Chinese text it may not always be possible to determine a proper pronunciation. Even when the proper phonetic rendering is known it may not make any more sense to the reader than the Chinese version.

For example, 阿魯台 (Alutai) is properly romanized Arur tai. Faced with this knowledge one must make a judgment as to whether the gain in linguistic accuracy is worth the cost of introducing Greek orthography into the text. In such matters practicality should be your guide.

3.5 DMB. L. Carrington Goodrich and Chaoying Fang, eds., DICTIONARY OF MING BIOGRAPHY 1368-1644 (明代名人傳 MING DAI MINGREN ZHUAN; New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1976), 2 vols. The most authoritative source in any language, this is the best place to begin looking for the name of an individual. It is the product of a large-scale international scholarly collaboration that produced brief biographies of

important persons, Chinese and non-Chinese. Each entry gives the individual's names in romanization and in Chinese, dates, life history, publications, and a short bibliography of sources used. At the back of Volume II are three indexes to Names (alphabetically arranged, pp. 1647-1691), Books (by title in Wade-Giles romanization, pp. 1695-1724), and Subjects (pp. 1727-1757). In the Index of Names those with biographies are indicated in boldface type and the page number of the biography is given in boldface to distinguish it from other occurrences of the name. In the body of the dictionary biographical entries are arranged alphabetically. For a chronological listing of the entries see Daniel Bryant, "A DMB Chronology," MING STUDIES, 8:27-40 (Spring 1979).

3.6 Hummel. Arthur W. Hummel, ed., EMINENT CHINESE OF THE CH'ING PERIOD (Washington, 1943-44; Taipei, 1964), contains numerous entries for late Ming personalities. If a person has a biography in Hummel there will not be an entry in DMB. The most reliable and informative work of its kind for the Qing, this was the model for 3.5, above.

3.7 Guide to Names. ZHONGGUO RENMING DAZIDIAN 中國人名大辭典 (Cyclopedia of Chinese biographical names; Commercial Press, various editions since 1921). Arranged by stroke, this work will give a person's dynasty, names, and a minimal amount of identifying information.

3.8 Combined Indices. COMBINED INDICES TO EIGHTY-NINE COLLECTIONS OF MING DYNASTY BIOGRAPHIES (BASHIJIU ZHONG MINGDAI ZHUANJI ZONGHE YINDE 八十九種明代傳紀總合引得 ; Harvard-Yenching

Institute Sinological Index Series, No. 24), 3 vols. This index is arranged by a modified four-corner classification but surnames can also be looked up in Volume I by stroke (pp. i-xv) or Wade-Giles romanization (pp. xvi-xxv).

3.9 Biographical Index. MINGREN ZHUANJI ZILIAO SUOYIN

明人傳紀資料索引 (Index to biographical materials on Ming persons; Taipei: National Central Library, 1965), 2 vols. contains what is essentially a combination of the information in the above two sources but goes beyond standard biographies in its listings and it lists titles of works attributed to the subjects. It does contain a romanized index in Volume II (with numerous spelling errors). The zihao index, arranged by the number of strokes, will be found in volume II.

3.10 Index to Mingshi Names. Li Yumin 李裕民, ed, MINGSHI RENMING SUOYIN 明史人名索引 (Index of personal names in the MING HISTORY; Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1985), 2 vols. This work is intended to give every reference to every name in the entire MINGSHI. By looking here you can also find biographies of persons the compilers of the dynastic history considered noteworthy. The number of entries is an indication of the relative prominence of the individual in the MINGSHI. Because every citation of a name is listed you can discover connections between individuals. It is arranged by the four corner system. An index of single characters by stroke appears at the back of volume 2, pp. 1114-1124.

3.11 Degree Holders. MING-QING JINSHI TIMINGBEI LU SUOYIN

明清進士題名碑錄索引 (Shanghai: Guji chubanshe, 1980), 3 vols.

This work contains the names of 51,624 persons who passed the highest examination between 1371 and 1904. The title indicates that the names are taken from the tablets erected in the Confucian Temple to honor the graduates of the triennial event. The bulk of the text, pp. 1-2413, is a four corner index of the names. The names are then grouped by examination cohort, pp. 2415-2871. A stroke order index of surnames appears at the front of Volume 1, followed by a Pinyin index of surnames. Entries tell you a man's native place, the year he passed and how he placed. The lists themselves are useful: it can be very interesting to know who else passed the examinations in the same year as did the person you are studying. This is an indispensable research tool for people who are only moderately famous. Knowing the year a man passed the examinations and his native place, you can almost always find a gazetteer biography of him.

3.12 Index to Qing Biographies. Zhou Junfu 周駿富, ed., QING DAI ZHUANJI CONGKAN SUOYIN 清代傳紀叢刊索引 (Index to collected biographies of the Qing period; Mingwen shuju, 1985), 3 vols. The book is divided into three sections: shihao 謚號, zihao 字號 and xingming 姓名. There are a number of indexes in Volume 1: by radical/stroke order (p. 29), by stroke order (p. 77), by the four corner system (p. 145), by the Yale romanization system (p. 193), and by Japanese pronunciation (p. 209). In each index the page number in which the character appears in each of the three sections is indicated. Two numbers follow a name: the first refers to the volume (ce 冊) of the QING DAI ZHUANJI CONGKAN

where the reference occurs, the second to the page number. The Minnesota library does not have the QING DAI ZHUANJI CONGKAN, but it does have many of the texts contained in it. A key to which texts are in which volumes occurs in Volume 1, p. 15.

3.13 Qing Eulogies. Chen Naiqian 陳乃乾 , QING DAI BEIZHUANWEN TONGJIAN 清代碑傳文通檢 (An index of Qing dynasty eulogies; Shanghai: Zhonghua shuju, 1959). A listing of thousands of inscriptions, primarily muzhiming (eulogies) of Qing people, organized by strokes. Appendix 1 (p. 380) is a listing of alternative personal names. Appendix 2 (p. 384) lists differences of opinion on birth and death dates. Appendix 3 is a listing of Qing wenji that the authors have seen. The first section (p. 385) is texts they used in compiling the index. The second section (p. 408) is a list of texts they did not use.

3.14 Name Dictionary. GUJIN TONGXINGMING DACIDIAN 古今同姓名大辭典 (Dictionary of people, ancient and modern, with the same name; Shanghai: Shanghai shudian, 1983; reprint of Beijing 1936 edition). A listing of people who have the same name, done by number of strokes. The entries begin with a number of people who have that name. For each person, minimal identification is given, along with sources for further information.

3.15 Yuanshi Index. YUAN SHI RENMING SUOYIN 元史人名索引 (Index of names in the YUAN HISTORY; Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1982). Organized by four corner system, with a stroke index beginning on p. 512.

3.16 Yuan Names. Igor de Rachewiltz and May Wang, YUAN CHAO RENMING LU 元朝人名錄 (Repertory of proper names in Yuan literary sources; Taipei: Southern Materials Center, 1988), 3 vols. Arranged alphabetically by Wade-Giles pronunciation. Indexes 325 Yuan dynasty wenji. The introduction in both English and Chinese explains usage.

3.17 Yamane Yukio. Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫, MINDAI SHI KENKYU MOKUROKU 明代史研究文獻目錄 (Bibliography of literature on the study of Ming history; Tokyo: Toyo Bunko, 1960), pp. 231-258, contains a short romanized list of eminent Chinese, non-Chinese, and Europeans of the Ming period.

3.18 Yang Jialuo. Yang Jialuo 楊家駱, ed., LIDAI RENWU NIANLI TONGPU 歷代人物年里通譜 (Taipei: Shijie Shuju, 1968). A chronological listing of vital information on outstanding persons throughout Chinese history. Columns give names, home district, age attained, birth and death data (in terms of reigning emperors, lunar and Western years), and notes on sources. The index at the rear is organized according to number of strokes in surname, then by number of characters in given name, and then by number of strokes in the given name.

3.19 Dates and Ages. Liang Tingcan 梁廷燦, LIDAI MINGREN SHENGZU NIAN BIAO 歷代名人生卒年表 (Hong Kong: Zhongmei tushu gongsi, 1969). Indexed both by four corner system and stroke; entries are chronologically arranged by year of birth. Columns indicate names, home, years of birth and death (in lunar and Western versions), and age at death.

Tao Rong 陶容 and Yu Shixiong 于士雄, eds., LIDAI MINGREN

SHENGZUNIAN BIAOBU 歷代名人生卒年表補 (Hong Kong, 1969). This is a supplement to the above work in the same format. A stroke index is attached at the end.

3.20 Studio Names. Chen Naiqian 陳乃乾, LIDAI RENWU SHIMING BIEHAO TONGJIAN 歷代人物室名別號通檢 (Hong Kong: Taiping shuju, 1964). A guide to studio names organized by first character arranged in order of number of strokes.

3.21 Rulers. Jia Huchen 賈虎臣, ZHONGGUO LIDAI DIWANG PUXI HUIBIAN 中國歷代帝王譜系彙編 (Taipei: Zhengzhong shuju, 1966). A table of Chinese rulers for the various dynasties giving essential information in a readily accessible form. Columns give information on such matters as the dynasty, complete title, reign period, race, names, home, relatives, years on throne (in lunar and Western forms), capital city, tomb name, and other notes. The tabulated information is followed by a brief biographical summary.

3.22 Gujin tushu jicheng. GUJIN TUSHU JICHENG ZHONG MINGREN ZHUANJI SUOYIN 古今圖書集成中名人傳記索引 (Hong Kong: 1963), 222 pages, indexes thousands of names in the mammoth GUJIN TUSHU JICHENG (See 17.8). Entries are arranged alphabetically by Wade-Giles romanization.

4. NAMES OF PLACES

4.1 Conventions. Place names, like official titles, present the scholar of Ming history with numerous problems of translation. Chinese place names carry with them more information than can ever be rendered by an English equivalent. Thus, you are left with the problem of deciding what to carry over to your English reader and what to leave out--or how to carry information over if it is necessary to your purpose. For example, consider the case of the capital city of the Ming. You can transliterate the Chinese characters Beijing (北京) or Jingshi (京師) in which case the reader might not understand what place you are talking about. The same is true if you translate the Chinese into English as Northern Capital or The Capital. If you use the familiar English form Peking, the reader may know what city you mean but you run the risk of distorting the truth during the time when it was not a capital. Peking stands for Beijing (Northern Capital) which was the designation only during the early Ming at times when Nanjing was the primary capital; thus Beijing implies a secondary status. In the early Ming the city was called Beiping 北平 (Northern Peace), a term which implies that it did not have capital status. (For more on the changes in the Ming capital see Goodrich, 3.5, pp. xiv-xv.) The name was revived in the twentieth century for just this reason when Nanjing became the capital after 1927. Whichever way one turns in such matters there are problems. The important thing is to be clear what

those problems are and to make practical choices among the conventional alternatives available or, when necessary, to make your own formulation.

4.2 Rendering. Generally, it is most convenient and accurate to transliterate place names and translate auxiliary words into English. Example: 洞庭湖 = Dongting Lake. In some cases you might want to communicate the meaning in addition to the phonetic value of a place name. This can be done by adding a comment in parentheses to the first occurrence. Example: Taicang 太倉 (lit., great granary). There are cases, of course, when an English name is better known than the romanized form of the Chinese (e.g., The Great Wall) or where there is no precise Chinese equivalent (e.g., Grand Canal).

Even where you romanize the Chinese there exists the question of how to render it. With obscure places you are safe in using a Pinyin romanization. With better known places, however, it is sometimes preferable to use conventional English spellings (e.g., Canton, not Guangzhou). Somewhere you must draw the line between the well-known and the obscure. Is it better, for example, to render 濟南 as Tsinan or Jinan? One way to ease such questions is to follow an authority. In this connection 4.15, below, has long been used as a standard. Perhaps it has now reached the limits of its utility. It is not generally available and its renderings carry the authority of a postal system that no longer services the area described. A good candidate to replace it might be 4.13 which offers both comprehensiveness and consistency.

4.3 Administrative Divisions. Another problem in rendering place names has to do with the designation of administrative divisions. Common terms like fu 府, zhou 州, and xian 縣, should be routinely translated into fixed English equivalents of prefecture, subprefecture and district, respectively. In these matters it seems wisest to follow Hucker, "Governmental Organization in the Ming Dynasty" (6.3 below) or A DICTIONARY OF OFFICIAL TITLES IN IMPERIAL CHINA (6.2). In some cases it is better to translate a word such as zhou as part of a name.

Example: 揚州府 = Yangzhou Prefecture.

4.4 Historical Place Names. ZHONGGUO GUJIN DIMING

DACIDIAN 中國古今地名大辭典 (Dictionary of historical Chinese place names; Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1931; Taiwan reprint, Taipei, 1960). The text consists of 1421 pp. of entries describing place names, administrative units, mountains and rivers. Each entry gives the location and changes of boundary and terminology by dynasty. This is a good place (CI HAI is another) to go in trying to identify any Ming place name.

Entries are arranged by stroke order of the first character. An index at the front lists first characters by number of strokes, and by radical within those groupings, and gives page numbers for the beginning of entries under each character. A 250-page four-corner index at the end of the text gives page numbers for all entries. A number of useful addenda are appended to the rear of the volume: a 117-page supplement containing many entries dealing with Taiwan, a 69-page table of administrative divisions established by the Nationalist government in 1947, and

a 24-page table of changes in county names.

4.5 Dictionary of Place Names. ZHONGGUO DIMING

DACIDIAN 中國地名大辭典 (Dictionary of Chinese place names; Beijing, 1930; Taiwan reprint, Taipei, 1967). Text contains 1118 pages of entries which give: the place name, its romanization (in a slightly aberrant spelling system once used by the Chinese Post Office), its classification in brackets, e.g., name of county, and some history and/or the location. A four-page index at the front lists contents by radical giving location in the text under the twelve branches and page number. It is followed by an eight-page index of first characters listed by number of strokes which also gives location under twelve branches and page. At the rear is a 232 page index of all entries in romanization followed by the Chinese character and page number in the text. Although convenient to use, this dictionary is far less informative on historical matters than ZHONGGUO GUJIN DIMING DACIDIAN (4.4).

4.6 Tan Qixiang's Historical Atlas. Tan Qixiang 譚其驤, ed., ZHONGGUO LISHI DITUJI 中國歷史地圖集 (The historical atlas of China), vol. 7, YUAN MING SHIQI 元明時期 (The Yuan dynasty period, the Ming dynasty period; Shanghai: Ditu chubanshe, 1982). This is one volume of a monumental set of historical atlases which have greatly eased the burden of identifying historical locations. It is the best place to go for a sense of where things were in the Ming period. The introductory matter and index are provided in both English and Chinese. The maps, pp. 1-89, display Yuan and Ming place names overprinted in black

on maps of China in which contemporary place names appear in light brown. The place name index (pp. 90-139), arranged by radical and stroke, gives the dynasty and location for each entry. It is followed by a stroke order listing of single characters (pp. 140-141) and a table of simplified characters (pp. 142-144).

4.7 Zhang Qiyun's Historical Atlas. Zhang Qiyun 張其昀, et al eds., ZHONGGUO LISHI DITU 中國歷史地圖 (Historical atlas of China; Taipei: Zhongguo wenhua xueyuan chubanshu, 1980), 2 vols., presents maps with historical names in black and red printed over country names in pale blue. Volume 2 features maps on such topics as cities, the economy, transportation, social trends, cultural activity and warfare. Each volume has a stroke order index of place names.

4.8 Atlas of China. ZHONGHUA RENMIN GONGHEGUO FENSHENG DITUJI 中華人民共和國分省地圖集 (Atlas of the People's Republic of China divided by province; Beijing: Ditu chubanshe, 1974). Multicolored administrative maps of provincial level units are interspersed with tables and text, pp. 9-132; followed by physical relief maps, pp. 133-153. The province and map location of all place names (in simplified characters) are listed by radical and stroke in the main index, pp. 155-240; followed by an index of single first characters (pp. 241-246) arranged by Pinyin pronunciation and keyed to the main index; followed by an index of single characters (pp. 247-251) also keyed to the main index. A work such as this can be used to identify historical places in terms of contemporary locations. The index is invaluable.

4.9 Wada Sei's Ming Maps. Wada Sei 和田清 ,ed., MINSHI SHIKASHI YAKUCHU 明史食貨志譯註 (The SHIHUOZHI of the MINGSHI-- translation and notes; Tokyo: Toyo Bunko, 1957), 2 vols. At the end of the second volume there are a number of items related to Ming geography. There are three maps, an index to place names in the text, and a table of administrative divisions: fu, zhou, and xian. This latter table lists names of fu, zhou and xian according to readings in the Japanese syllabary, parent unit and province, and closest modern equivalent.

4.10 Dushi Fangyujiyao. Gu Zuyu 顧祖禹 ,DUSHI FANGYU JIYAO 讀史方輿紀要 (Notes on historical geography; block print edition, 1879; photolithographic reproduction, Taipei, 1966), 3 vols. This monumental work by an early Qing scholar (Gu Zuyu, 1631-1692) provides a wealth of information on Ming geography together with an account of earlier periods. Juan 1-9 deal with historical division of China, 10-123 with provinces and their sub-units, 124-129 waterways, and 130 with division of territory. Appended at the end are four more juan of maps and tables. This text is distinguished by the quality of the information it provides--especially from the perspectives of historical change and the strategic importance of physical and economic factors. It is one of the best places to look for a straightforward account of the significance of a given location.

4.11 Index to Dushi Fangyu Jiyao. Aoyama Sadao 青山定雄 , DOKUSHI HOYO KIYO SAKUIN--CHUGOKU REKIDAI CHIMEI YORAN 讀史方輿紀要索引—中國歷代地名要覽 (Index to the DUSHI FANGYU JIYAO--a handbook of Chinese historical place names; first

edition 1933; third edition, Tokyo: Daian, 1965). This work is nominally an index to 4.10 but in reality it constitutes a formidable guide to Ming-Qing place names. The main index, pp. 1-721, consists of pages divided horizontally in the middle making two rows of entries each of which have three columns containing the following information: (1) the place name, (2) its modern location, (3) its location in 4.10 by juan and administrative division. Entries are arranged in order of their reading in the Japanese syllabary and may be looked up in indexes either by Japanese reading or stroke. Appendixes contain a wealth of information about Gu Zuyu, 4.10, and differences between editions.

4.12 Administrative Divisions. Office of Geography, Department of Interior, MAINLAND CHINA: ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS AND THEIR SEATS, Gazetteer No. 70 (Washington, D.C., 1963), 253 pp. This work is divided into three parts: General List (11,900 entries), Administrative Seats (2,560 names), and Administrative Divisions (2,156 listed under the 28 first order divisions). Entries are designated by type, grid coordinates, provincial location. Part II contrasts Communist and Nationalist administrative organizations. No Chinese characters are given. The principal utility of this work is as a guide to present-day designations of places given in other reference works in pre-1949 forms.

4.13 Standard Names. United States Board on Geographic Names, MAINLAND CHINA: OFFICIAL STANDARD NAMES, Gazetteer No. 22, second edition (Washington, D.C.: Geographic Names Division,

Army Map Service, 1968), 2 vols. This work lists 108,000 alphabetically arranged entries for places and features in the People's Republic of China. Entries consist of computer printout giving: place name in modified Wade-Giles romanization, designation indicating the type of feature it is (e.g., PPL = populated place), latitude and longitude, and an area number (44000 = China general; 44011 = Shantung, etc.). See Forward, vol. I, pp. i-vii, for explanation of contents. No Chinese characters appear. Because of the great number of places named and the effort to establish an official standardized form this work may be considered a source of authority when authority is needed.

4.14 Essay on Geography. DILI ZHI 地理志 (Essay on geography, juan 40-46 of the MINGSHI 明史 or official history of the Ming). This item is just one small portion of the MINGSHI which will be discussed in detail below but it is worth mentioning here because it contains the most concise and readily available account of Ming administrative geography. Note that the contents of this essay are organized with the capitals first and then the various provinces more or less in the order of their propinquity to Beijing. Under each province or metropolitan area the entry is subdivided by prefectures. Typically information will be provided on the status of the prefecture under the Yuan, its changes in the Ming, the number of subordinate subprefectures and counties, the distance of its administrative seat to that of the next higher unit, population figures in households and mouths, and the names and locations

subordinate units. Military units tend to be placed at the end of provincial entries.

4.15 Postal Atlas. ZHONGHUA MINGUO YOUZHENG YUTU 中華民國郵政輿圖 (Postal atlas of the Republic of China; Nanjing: Chinese Directorate-General of Post, 1933). This work features twenty-nine color maps of provinces with names in both Chinese and romanization with some English terms. Two indexes are included: (1) by radical and stroke, giving place name, province, map number and latitude and longitude; and (2) a romanized listing of the same information. The main values of this work are its use of two orthographies on the maps, the fact that it gives distances between points, and the official status of its rendering of place names. Because of this last point it is often cited as an authority for spelling.

4.16 Zhang Qiyun's Atlas of China. Zhang Qiyun 張其昀, ed., ZHONGHUA MINGUO DITUJI 中華民國地圖集 (National atlas of China; Taiwan: The National War College, Yangmingshan, 1959-62), 5 vols. I: Taiwan; II: Xizang (Tibet), Xinjiang and Mongolia; III: North China; IV: South China; V: General Maps of China. This work contains numerous large color maps and is entirely bilingual in Chinese and romanization with some English terms. Indexes in each volume list all names both in Chinese by stroke and romanization by alphabetized Wade-Giles spelling, giving locations on the appropriate map. The romanization is not consistent and does not include hyphens or apostrophes--hence it is unreliable as a guide to spelling.

4.17 1930 Provincial Atlas. Ding Wenjiang 丁文江, Weng Wenhao 翁文灝 and Zeng Shiyong 曾世英, eds., ZHONGGUO FENSHENG XIN TU 中國分省新圖 (New provincial atlas of China; Shanghai, 1930). This map contains fifty-eight pages of colored maps. Entries are indexed at the rear, pp. 1-67, by the four-corner number for the first character plus the first digit of the four-corner number for the second character. Pages 68-72 give a stroke index to the first characters in entries so they may be looked up in the four-corner index. Pages 73-78 give a romanized listing of first characters also keyed to the main index.

4.18 Herrmann. Albert Herrmann, AN HISTORICAL ATLAS OF CHINA (Chicago: Aldine Publishing Co., 1966), 88 pp. This edition includes population, agriculture and language-distribution maps. Originally issued as HISTORICAL AND COMMERCIAL ATLAS OF CHINA (Harvard-Yenching Institute Monograph Series, vol. I, 1935; Taiwan reprint, Taipei, 1964), 112 pp. Color plates of China in various periods of history. Introductory essay, pp. v-xxix, by Paul Wheatley points out many problems.

4.19 Japanese Historical Atlas of Asia. Matsuda Hisao 松田寿男, AJIA REKISHI CHIZU アジア歴史地圖 (Historical atlas of Asia; Tokyo: Heibonsha, 1966), 148 pp. This work is technically vastly superior to 4.16. Its information on the Ming period is limited to a few pages. Pages 76-77 contain maps on coastal pirates, late Yuan rebellions and points along the Great Wall. Page 77 contains a map of Ming China. The indexes, explained on p. 2 of the Appendix, are as follows: (1) pp. 3-10, first characters listed by stroke giving Japanese reading and page

number in Chinese character index; (2) pp. 11-15, first characters listed by Japanese syllabary; (3) pp. 16-97, place names in Chinese characters arranged in the order of the Japanese syllabary, giving location in text (Example: 68[2]D = page 68, map 2, lower right-hand quadrant of map); (4) pp. 98-148, all the place names listed in a phonetic rendering in katakana, giving location in text. Because of its extensive indexes this atlas stands out as a potentially useful tool in locating historical place names.

4.20 Qing Map. QINGDAI YITONG DITU 清代一統地圖 (Comprehensive atlas of the Qing dynasty; original imperial edition 1760; Taipei, 1966), 206 pp. This work is a transitional one between traditional Chinese maps and modern cartography. It was based on the work of Jesuits who mapped the Chinese empire in the Kangxi period (1662-1722). It is arranged in strips or rows which cross China from east to west. Altogether there are thirteen rows of various lengths. Double pages are thus numbered by the row and then an indication of their position in the row (east 3, east 2, east 1, west 1, west 2, on up to west 9). Because of the fragmented nature of this pagination and the fact that there is no guide to relate the sections to a map of China, it is difficult to locate a desired place. The virtue of this atlas is the fact that it is a product of the eighteenth century and that it contains a large number of place names. Note that Beijing is located in the ninth row which would put it in the southern half of the map. There is no index.

4.21 Ming Map. MING DILI ZHITU 明地理志圖 (Map of Ming geography) in Yang Shoujing 楊守敬, LIDAI YUDI YANGE DITU 歷代輿地沿革地圖 (Atlas of historical geography; blockprint edition, 1906-1911), 42 ce. This is the Ming portion of a comprehensive historical atlas which covers all of Chinese history. It is based upon a map of China in the Qing period, printed in red, with Ming place names overprinted in black. Thus one can see at a glance where changes in name occurred between the Ming and the Qing. Unfortunately, this work, like 4.20, is arranged in rows so that the pages of each juan of the text constitute panels in strips of a map of China running from east to west. Consequently, it is difficult to identify individual pages or to locate specific points. There is no index.

5. DATE CONVERSION

5.1 Western Time. The numbering of years from the supposed time of Christ's birth gained popular acceptance in Europe around the seventh century. In this Western calendar, which has gradually gained international acceptance, years are numbered from the time of Christ (B.C., before Christ, in descending order; A.D., anno Domini, "year of our Lord," in ascending numbers). In contemporary usage these conventions are often rendered less parochial by substituting the usage B.C.E., before the common era, and C.E., common era, respectively. This system is referred to in Chinese as gongyuanqian for B.C.E. and gongyuan for C.E.

The Western calendar is based primarily on the solar year with correction in the length of the year being made by adding one day (February 29) every fourth year (leap year). This system was started in the year 45 B.C. by the Roman Emperor Julius Caesar. The Julian calendar, as it came to be known, was based on a year of 365.25 days, the fractional day being added in leap years. Such a year was still not in compliance with the time it took the earth to orbit the sun, exceeding that time by 11 minutes and 14 seconds every year. Consequently, there was slippage in the Julian calendar at the rate of about seven days in 1,000 years. By the 1500s the vernal equinox was off by ten days. Acting to correct this error, Pope Gregory XIII issued a papal bull in February 1582, specifying a method to correct the calendar. The equinox was adjusted by dropping ten days from

October in that year, and the value of the year was adjusted to 365.2422 days. A rule was adopted that on centennial years, i.e. years ending in round hundreds, there would be no leap year except in cases where the centennial year is evenly divisible by 400. Thus there are leap years in 1600 and 2000 but not in 1700, 1800, or 1900. The effect of this rule is to shorten each century by .75 days. Acceptance of the Gregorian calendar varied from country to country but became widespread by the early twentieth century. It was adopted in Great Britain and dominions in 1752 by advancing the calendar from September 2 to September 14, a move which caused considerable popular outcry.

An appealing feature of the Western solar calendar is the regularity of the equinoxes (March 21 and September 23) and the solstices (June 22 and December 22). The months, however, vary from twenty-eight to thirty-one days and do not correspond to the phases of the moon. In the Roman period the Judeo-Christian seven day week gained general acceptance for establishing the cycle of market days. The seven day week apparently derives from the ancient Babylonian belief in hebdomadism, the sacredness of the number seven. Seven-day units, obviously, fit neither months nor years.

5.2 Chinese Time. In the Chinese calendar (yinyangli 陰陽曆) primacy is given to the lunar month as the basic unit. The year is composed of twelve or thirteen lunar months of twenty-nine or thirty days, the length of the year being allowed to vary from 354 days to 385 days. Since the year consisted of a combination of big and little months of twenty-nine and thirty days, a

normal year of twelve months numbered 353, 354, or 355 days, and since this was about ten days short of the solar year, considerable numbers of days had to be added. This intercalation was achieved by adding an intercalary month every second or third year. Intercalary months were designated by the character run 閏 and numbered according to the preceding month, for example: run qiyue 閏七月, intercalary seventh month. The first month of the year was designated zhengyue 正月 while subsequent months were numbered serially from the second month to the twelfth month. Since the months were adjusted to the phases of the moon there was always a full moon on the fifteenth day of the month. It follows also that solar eclipses would occur on the first of the month.

Within this system of years and months, days were numbered in two ways: (1) serially by the month (i.e. first through thirtieth), and (2) in cycles of sixty overlapping the months. The latter numbering was according to the cycle of sixty pairs of numerical characters (see 5.3 below). In the monthly numbering system the first ten days of the month were designated by the character chu 初. The first day of the month was referred to as shuo 朔. The fifteenth was designated by wang 望 (and corresponded to the full moon).

Longer periods of time in years were marked off in terms of two conventions: (1) according to political events, i.e. dynasties and reign periods, and (2) according to cycles of sixty years. These are discussed below. It should also be noted that there existed in parallel to this lunar system an

essentially solar agricultural calendar of twenty-four "festivals," jieqi 節氣, of about fifteen days each. For a table of the names and approximate solar dates of these festivals, see MATHEWS' CHINESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY, p. 1178. The Chinese month was also broken into xun 旬 or "weeks" of ten days each. Shorter cycles of days for market purposes were determined by using the cyclical characters. The time of day was reckoned in terms of twelve two-hour periods designated by the twelve earthly branches. For a list of these divisions see Mathews' dictionary, p. 1176.

It should also be noted that the Chinese calendar was prepared by the state. It contained a great deal of ideologically significant material about the spirits, and auspicious and inauspicious days which today we would expect to find in an almanac.

The year in the Chinese imperial calendar was numbered according to the dynasty and the reign period of the emperor. Note that any rival political regime could establish its own reign periods and hence a rival calendar. One function of the orthodox succession of Chinese dynasties was to provide a conventional numbering for all the years in Chinese history. Prior to the Ming period it was normal practice for a ruler to change his reign title (nianhao 年號) during the course of his reign. This meant that a new year series would begin. With the founding of the Ming this practice was changed, and only one nianhao was adopted for each rule. The nianhao was inaugurated on the first day of the lunar year regardless of what day a

ruler actually took the throne. Similarly, when a ruler died, his nianhao still applied to the remainder of the current lunar year. As a result of these practices, historical time in Ming China was thought of as consisting of irregular blocks of years corresponding to the reigns of various emperors.

5.3 Cyclical Characters. Years, days, months and hours were counted in terms of two special sets of characters used for enumeration. These are designated the "ten stems" (shigan 十干 or tiangan 天干) and "twelve branches" (shierzhi 十二支 or dizhi 地支). Memorize their order and pronunciations:

<u>10 Stems</u>			<u>12 Branches</u>					
1.	甲	jia	1.	子	zi	11.	戌	xu
2.	乙	yi	2.	丑	chou	12.	亥	hai
3.	丙	bing	3.	寅	yin			
4.	丁	ding	4.	卯	mao			
5.	戊	wu	5.	辰	chen			
6.	己	ji	6.	巳	si			
7.	庚	geng	7.	午	wu			
8.	辛	xin	8.	未	wei			
9.	壬	ren	9.	申	shen			
10.	癸	gui	10.	酉	you			

When combined in pairs these characters form a cycle of sixty (since both sets are even numbers not all the stems combine with all the branches--so there are only sixty combinations, not the full potential of 120). The full cycle, beginning with jiazi 甲子 and ending with guihai 癸亥 is given in

the following table:

TABLE OF CYCLICAL PAIRS

1. 甲子	jiazi	21. 甲申	jiashen	41. 甲辰	jiachen
2. 乙丑	yichou	22. 乙酉	yiyou	42. 乙巳	yisi
3. 丙寅	bingyin	23. 丙戌	bingxu	43. 丙午	bingwu
4. 丁卯	dingmao	24. 丁亥	dinghai	44. 丁未	dingwei
5. 戊辰	wuchen	25. 戊子	wuzi	45. 戊申	wushen
6. 己巳	jisi	26. 己丑	jichou	46. 己酉	jiyou
7. 庚午	gengwu	27. 庚寅	gengyin	47. 庚戌	gengxu
8. 辛未	xinwei	28. 辛卯	xinmao	48. 辛亥	xinhai
9. 壬申	renshen	29. 壬辰	renchen	49. 壬子	renzi
10. 癸酉	guiyou	30. 癸巳	guisi	50. 癸丑	guichou
11. 甲戌	jiayu	31. 甲午	jiawu	51. 甲寅	jiayin
12. 乙亥	yihai	32. 乙未	yiwei	52. 乙卯	yimao
13. 丙子	bingzi	33. 丙申	bingshen	53. 丙辰	bingchen
14. 丁丑	dingchou	34. 丁酉	dingyou	54. 丁巳	dingsi
15. 戊寅	wuyin	35. 戊戌	wuxu	55. 戊午	wuwu
16. 己卯	jimao	36. 己亥	jihai	56. 己未	jiwei
17. 庚辰	gengchen	37. 庚子	gengzi	57. 庚申	gengshen
18. 辛巳	xinsi	38. 辛丑	xinchou	58. 辛酉	xinyou
19. 壬午	renwu	39. 壬寅	renyin	59. 壬戌	renxu
20. 癸未	guiwei	40. 癸卯	guimao	60. 癸亥	guihai

These pairs of cyclical characters have been applied consistently throughout recorded history, and extended back to

the prehistoric past. The first year of the legendary Yellow Emperor was dinghai 丁亥 , so multiples of sixty from 2674 to 1 B.C. are all dinghai years. Because there was no 0 year, all A.D. years that are a multiple of sixty plus one will be xinyou 辛酉 years.

5.4 Converting Dates. Given the low correspondence between the Chinese and Western calendars, you are faced with three sorts of problems in using Chinese documents: (1) establishing the times of, and relevant sequential and temporal relationships between, the events you are studying, (2) converting Chinese dates to their Western equivalents efficiently and without error, and (3) rendering dates and chronological information clearly and unambiguously in English. The first step in converting a Chinese date is to determine the corresponding Western year. In this operation there are two essential points that must be remembered: (1) the Western year and the Chinese year correspond roughly but are not exactly the same. Example: the first year of the Chenghua era (Chenghua yuannian 成化元年) corresponds to the period January 27, 1465 to January 16, 1466. Thus an event occurring late in the first year of Chenghua might actually have happened in 1466. (2) When figuring the year of a reign period always subtract one year (to allow for the fact that you are not calculating from zero but from the first year, called yuannian 元年). Example: the third year of Chenghua (Chenghua sannian 成化三年) was 1467, not 1468.

5.5 Reign years. Reign years may be looked up in any of a number of handy tables. The one in MATHEWS' CHINESE-ENGLISH

DICTIONARY, pp. 1165-1175, gives the temple names (miaohao), accession dates, reign title (nianhao), and beginning year for most dynasties in Chinese history. A useful list of Ming emperors giving personal name; temple name; dates of birth, death, enthronement; and reign title and dates when it was in effect, can be found in Goodrich, ed., DICTIONARY OF MING BIOGRAPHY, p. xxi. Beware of a similar table near the front of THE CAMBRIDGE HISTORY OF CHINA, vol. 7, THE MING DYNASTY, 1368-1644, Part I. After the third emperor the temple names are incorrectly aligned with the reign names!

5.6 Accuracy. To avoid errors, be precise when talking about time. Either use unambiguous terms, "the fifth lunar month," or qualified terms, "roughly the year 1372." The only way to be accurate is to convert the dates in question and render them exactly, "April 7, 1378," or in a simplified form which you are sure is correct, "early April." This is easier on the English reader for whom "the third lunar month" is liable to be meaningless. Generally speaking, one should refer to lunar dates in English only when they are relevant to the meaning (e.g., a ceremony took place "on the first day of the first lunar month"). Rendering dates in Western equivalents implies that you have checked them in a table. Never take things for granted. For instance, you cannot assume that events which happened on the 4th day of the 2nd month and the 4th day of the 3rd month were only twenty-nine or thirty days apart unless you are certain that there was no intercalary month intervening.

5.7 Hazelton. Keith Hazelton, A SYNCHRONIC CHINESE-WESTERN DAILY CALENDAR 1341-1661 A.D. (Ming dai Zhong-Xi rili duizhaobiao 明代中西日歷對照表 ; Minneapolis: Ming Studies, 1985). This work makes it possible to look up the Chinese and Western equivalents for any day during the years covered. Each page contains one Chinese year. Page headings include, on the left the closest Western years and the romanized cyclical pairs for the Chinese year and, on the right the reign title and year. Chinese months are listed in vertical columns with the month, cyclical pair (in pinyin romanization), and serial day. This is followed by the Western year, month and day. In the corner of each page a table lists the stems and branches with pinyin and Wade-Giles romanizations.

5.8 Zheng Hesheng. Zheng Hesheng 鄭鶴聲, JINSHI ZHONGXI SHI RI DUIZHAOBIAO 近世中西史日對照表 (A daily equivalence chart for modern Sino-Western history; Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1936; Taipei, 1962). This chart gives Sino-Western equivalents for every day from 1516 to 1941. It is arranged with one Western year per page (six months on each side). To look up a date, locate the year in the margin (cyclical characters at the top; Western year in the middle; Chinese dynasty, ruler, reign name and year in parentheses below it). Each Western month is arranged horizontally across the page in four rows. The top row indicates the Western month and the days in the month. The second row indicates the lunar month and the day of the lunar month. The third row gives the day of the week

and the fourth row the cyclical characters for the day and first day of each of the twenty-four solar "festivals."

5.9 Dong Zuobin. Dong Zuobin 董作賓, ZHONGGUO NIANLI ZONGPU 中國年曆總譜 (Chronological tables of Chinese history; Hong Kong: Hong Kong University Press, 1960), 2 vols. This is the best guide to dates before 1314. It contains, in addition to a number of conversion tables, an explanation of its use (in English), vol. I, pp. v-xiv, and a long introduction by the author (in Chinese), vol. I, pp. 1-72. The conversion tables for the Ming period will be found in vol. II, pp. 171-208. These tables, unlike Zheng Hesheng above, are based on the Chinese lunar year, giving eight years per page, converting only the first day of each lunar month to its Western equivalent and January 1 in the Western calendar to its Chinese equivalent. Thus equivalents for only thirteen or fourteen days in each year are given and the remainder must be calculated.

5.10 Other Calendars. For Moslem years see Tung Tso-pin. For Japanese, Korean, Vietnamese, and Mongolian years and their Chinese equivalents see : Mathias Tchang, S.J., SYNCHRONISMES CHINOIS: CHRONOLOGIE COMPLETE ET CONCORDANNCCE AVEC L'ERE CHRETIENNE DE TOUTES LES DATES CONCERNANT L'HISTOIRE DE L'EXTREME-ORIENT (CHINE, JAPON, COREE, MONGOLIE, ETC., 2357 AV. J.C.-1904 APR. J.C.), VARIETES SINOLOGIQUES 24 (Shanghai, 1905), 530 pp. As the full title suggests this work is a guide to several East Asian calendars. Its primary utility for the student of Chinese history is the aid it can give when it is necessary to correlate dates in Chinese calendars with dates in,

e.g. the Korean annals. In the front there is a table of nianhao arranged alphabetically in the French romanization. In the rear is a chronological listing of dynasties with references to the main text. In the main text of SYNCHRONISMES CHINOIS the Ming period begins on p. 412 and ends on p. 456. Reading from left to right across four pages the columns give: year in cyclical characters, closest Western year, the Ming, Northern Yuan, Korean, Annam, and various Japanese dates. Columns are dropped and added as old regimes end or new ones are established.

5.11 Xue Zhongsan. Xue Zhongsan 薛仲三, LIANGQIANNIAN ZHONG-XI LI DUIZHAO BIAO 兩千年中西曆對照表 (A Sino-Western calendar for two thousand years, 1-2000 A.D.; Beijing: Sanlian shudian, 1956), 438 pp. This work consists of tables for converting years, months and days from one calendar to the other. Introductory explanations are given in both Chinese and English.

5.12 Chen Yuan. Chen Yuan 陳垣, ZENGBU ERSHI SHI SHUORUN BIAO 增補二十史朔閏表 (Taipei: Yiwen yinshuguan, 1958), with additions by Dong Zuobin, 246 pp. In this work you will find: (1) an index to reign periods arranged by stroke, pp. 4-10, (2) the main tables of dates for twenty dynasties from Han to Qing, pp. 11-228, and (3) seven tables of four Western years each giving all possible days of the week with and without a leap year, 28 distinct patterns in all, pp. 229-242. The main table gives Chinese years in vertical columns running right to left. Lunar months are arranged vertically down the right side of each page. Reading across the page in any lunar monthly column you

will find cyclical dates and Western month and day (in Chinese numbers) for the first day of each month. This is essentially the same information provided by Dong Zuobin.

6. OFFICES AND TITLES

6.1 Translation and Romanization. In dealing with the names of offices and the titles of persons you face a number of decisions about style. Generally it is best to translate the terms for offices and titles where standard translations exist. Where the term is not common it is a good idea to give the romanized equivalent in parentheses following the first occurrence.

Example:

Grand Tutor (taifu)

When translating a title, treat it as you would an English title, capitalizing when appropriate. When romanizing a title or office, capitalize only the first syllable (where appropriate) and underline. Cluster into meaningful units as necessary. Example:

太僕寺 Taipusi

Be consistent. Where there is established precedent, follow it. In the case of most Ming titles and offices standard translations are available in Charles O. Hucker, A DICTIONARY OF OFFICIAL TITLES IN IMPERIAL CHINA, described below. In most cases it will make sense to follow Hucker's suggested rendering. If you disagree with him and use your own translation indicate that in the first reference. Example:

chiliad (gianhusuo; Hucker: battalion)

6.2 Hucker's Dictionary. Charles O. Hucker, A DICTIONARY OF OFFICIAL TITLES IN IMPERIAL CHINA (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1985). This monumental work should be considered the

first source of help on all matters relating to Chinese official titles in the imperial era. The Introduction, pp. 1-96, provides a general overview of the evolution of governmental organization from the Qin through the Qing. You should make a point to read through the Introduction. The main body of the text consists of 8,291 entries listed alphabetically by Wade-Giles romanization. Each entry provides the Chinese characters; Hucker's English rendering in bold-face; and comments about when the term was used, functions of the office, and changes over time.

6.3 Hucker on Ming Government. Charles O. Hucker, "Governmental Organization of the Ming Dynasty," HARVARD JOURNAL OF ASIATIC STUDIES [HJAS], 21: 1-66 (1958), and Index in HJAS, 23: 47-61 (1960-1961); reprinted together in John L. Bishop, ed., STUDIES OF GOVERNMENTAL INSTITUTIONS IN CHINESE HISTORY (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1968) pp. 59-151. Although generally superseded by 6.2, above, this work, because it is devoted entirely to the Ming, still provides a handy introduction to the offices and titles of that dynasty.

6.4 Brunnert and Hagelstrom. H. S. Brunnert and V. V. Hagelstrom, tr. A. Beltchenko and E. E. Moran, PRESENT DAY POLITICAL ORGANIZATION OF CHINA (Shanghai, 1912; reprinted in Taiwan). Although this work is for the Qing dynasty it contains many terms which date back to the Ming. Note that standard usage may vary for the same term in Ming and Qing history. A good example is the six ministries of the Ming which come to be known as the six boards in Qing usage:

Ming: Ministry of Justice (xingbu 刑部)

Qing: Board of Punishments (xingbu 刑部)

6.5 Huang Benji. Huang Benji 黃本驥 , LIDAI ZHIGUAN BIAO 歷代職官表 (Chronological table of official posts; typeset, punctuated version of Qing work, Shanghai, 1965). The first section of this work, 76 pp., gives a general account of systemic changes in Chinese governmental organizations by dynasties. The following section, 364 pp., consists of charts in vertical columns showing changes of each office from ancient times down through the Ming. Entries are arranged according to the structure of the Qing government, starting with the grand secretaries and going through the six boards to lesser offices. Entries begin with a short account of the Qing office. Note that a separate and more detailed mulu 目錄 appears at the beginning of each juan. The third section, 210 pp., is a modern account of each office title listed by stroke order. Indexes are paginated serially from the rear of the volume: 1-149, an index to entries arranged by the four-corner number of the last character in the entry, next to last by stroke count; 150-152, an index to first character in some entries; 153-156, an index to single characters by stroke giving the four-corner number; and 157-160, an index to single characters by phonetic value in pinyin romanization giving four-corner number. This work is an account of Chinese government looking backward from the Qing perspective. Its value is that it reveals continuities and equivalencies as they were viewed from within the tradition itself. One difficulty with the work is that you have to know

the Qing organization to use it with ease.

6.6 Mingshi Biao. The MINGSHI, juan 100-112, and similar works (see section 9, below) contain chronological tables of prominent persons in the imperial family and government. These tables constitute a useful guide to the upper strata of the Ming elite.

a. Princes. ZHUWANG SHIBIAO 諸王世表 (Generational table of princes), pp. 2833-2997 (juan 100-104), deals with the offspring of the emperors. It is arranged according to the order of Ming rulers. Sons of the emperor--excluding heirs to the throne or those who did not live long enough to be given titles-- are listed in the order of their birth. Information is given about the date of their investiture, the date they took up residence in their fief, and date of death. Lower rows show successors to the princes' titles, and lines founded by other princely offspring.

b. Nobility of Merit. GONGCHEN SHI BIAO 功臣世表 (Generational table of meritorious officials), pp. 2999-3267 (juan 105-107) lists prominent supporters of the ruling house who were granted hereditary noble titles in each reign period, showing successors down to the thirteenth generation.

c. Imperial Relatives. WAIQI ENZE HOU BIAO 外戚恩澤侯表 (Table of imperial relatives by marriage), pp. 3269-3304 (juan 108) depicts the transmission of titles granted to families of empresses.

d. Ministers of State. ZAIFU NIANBIAO 宰輔年表 (Chronological table of ministers of state), pp. 3305-3394 (juan 109-110) is a listing year by year of the highest officials, for

the Hongwu period the chief councilors and from 1402 the grand secretaries. See extensive additional information appended in Taiwan edition (1962), pp. 1388-1399.

e. The Seven Ministers. QIQING NIANBIAO 七卿年表 (Chronological table of seven ministers), pp. 3395-3502 (juan 111-112) is a tabular presentation of the occupants of the highest offices in the six ministries and the censors-in-chief.

7. WRITING AND EDITING

7.1 Manuscripts. The end product of a research endeavor is usually a written report, sometimes delivered orally at a scholarly meeting, of the author's findings. It takes the form of a manuscript: a paper, article, dissertation or book. Before a manuscript can be made available to the scholarly world in printed form it must first be accepted by a journal or press willing to publish it. The author who has produced a manuscript can submit it to an appropriate publisher for consideration. It is the job of the acquisitions editor to solicit and evaluate manuscripts for publication. Promising manuscripts are usually sent to reviewers for blind evaluation, i.e. with the author's name removed. The reviewer's anonymous evaluations, i.e. with the reviewer's name removed, are often sent to the author by the editor. If the manuscript is judged to be sufficiently worthy the editor will submit it to an editorial board with the recommendation that it be published. If it is approved for publication a contractual arrangement is then concluded with the author and editing of the manuscript can begin. In some cases reviewers will recommend modification of the manuscript and a round of negotiations and revisions will be worked out between the author and the editor.

7.2 Style. Style is defined by WEBSTER'S NEW COLLEGIATE DICTIONARY as a "mode of expressing thought in language." As such it is close to the heart of the academic enterprise; you ignore it at your peril. The manuscript the scholar produces,

even if accepted for publication, has not yet assumed its final form; it is still a draft, a work in progress. Most or all of the scholarly work of research, analysis, and reflection may be done but a manuscript is never identical with the finished product. Before it can be published as a book or article it must be brought into conformity with the publisher's stylistic requirements. Bringing it into conformity can be easy or difficult, depending on the condition of the manuscript. It is in the author's interest, as well as the publisher's, that the manuscript be prepared with stylistic problems in mind.

7.3 Style Sheets. Most publishers, be they journals or presses, make use of style sheets or lists of guidelines for authors specifying just how the text should be prepared. These range from mechanical matters such as the insistence that all text, including notes, be double-spaced for easy editing to rules about capitalization, spelling and the treatment of foreign words. It is a good idea to keep the editor's job in mind while preparing a manuscript for submission. A good deal of unnecessary work can be avoided by following the publisher's style sheet early on.

7.4 Chinese Characters. In writing about Ming history you will often find it desirable to include Chinese characters in your manuscript to identify accurately terms, places, persons and texts. While it may be agreeable enough for the reader to find Chinese characters inserted into an English text it is no easy matter for the author to put them there; for the editor or the publisher it may represent a nightmare. In general, it is most

efficient to exclude Chinese characters from the body of the work and relegate them to an appended glossary. This will greatly simplify revision and editing. However, some journals (e.g. CLEAR, JOURNAL OF THE AMERICAN ORIENTAL SOCIETY) do include Chinese characters in the text. Word processing programs are now making this easier to do.

7.5 Editors. Editors are the people who deal with authors in the publication process. They come in many forms. There are acquisitions editors, book review editors, executive editors and copy editors. They bring common sense, linguistic skills, and professional expertise to bear on manuscripts as they are turned into publications. On factual matters and questions of scholarly judgement they rely heavily on outside referees. Their job is to make a manuscript clear, accurate and readable. They can save the author from error and sometimes from folly.

7.6 Citation. One of the first questions you must answer in preparing a manuscript is the format you will use in citing sources. Essentially, there are two systems: parenthetical documentation, most common in the social sciences, and numbered notes, the predominant form used in the humanities.

The great advantage of parenthetical documentation is that you can insert a brief citation (Author date, page) into the text as you write. The parenthetical citation refers to a list of works cited at the end of the manuscript. You need only give a complete citation once, when the list is compiled, and you never need to worry about numbering citations or renumbering them as the text is revised and passages are moved around. The

disadvantage of parenthetical documentation is that it allows no room for elaboration or comments about the text other than the simple citation of sources.

Notes come in two forms: footnotes and endnotes. Despite the fact that word processing programs offer the option of placing notes at the bottom of the page or at the end of the manuscript, as a practical matter notes should always be placed at the end of the manuscript, double-spaced so that they can be edited. Because citations in note form entail complete bibliographical information, lists of references or bibliographies are unnecessary for manuscripts shorter than book length. Also, with notes you can comment on the sources cited or intersperse asides and qualifications to the main text in ways that add color, depth or precision to your argument. The disadvantage of notes is that they are exacting to compose and cumbersome to keep track of and renumber as the manuscript is being revised, although word processing programs can generally do this automatically. While parenthetical documentation interrupts the reader's eye in scanning the text, notes require the reader to search the bottom of the page or the end of manuscript to find out what lies behind the number in the text.

7.7 Bibliographies and Reference Lists. Whether you need a bibliography at all is determined by the length of your manuscript, the citation strategy you have adopted, and the house rules of your publisher. A bibliography is necessary only where notes are used for citation and then only for dissertations or book manuscripts. Bibliographies repeat in a

single list the full citation for every source mentioned in the notes but use a slightly different format to do it. Reference lists are required for manuscripts of any length that make use of parenthetical documentation.

7.8 The Chicago Manual of Style. Most academic publishing in the United States is guided by the advice offered in THE CHICAGO MANUAL OF STYLE, fourteenth edition, revised and expanded (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1993). This work occupies a unique position in American publishing. It is a bible for authors and editors. It will tell you more than you may want to know about the preparation of manuscripts. It is an authoritative place to go when a definitive judgement is needed on a matter of style. It now includes a guide to the production of electronic manuscripts.

7.9 Turabian. Another standard guide to the conventions of scholarly writing is Kate L. Turabian, A MANUAL FOR WRITERS OF TERM PAPERS, THESES AND DISSERTATIONS, fifth edition, revised and expanded by Bonnie Birtwistle Honigsblum (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987). This work is a practical condensation based on 7.6. It provides contrasting examples of parenthetical documentation, notes, reference lists and bibliographies.

7.10 MLA Handbook. The handiest guide to parenthetical documentation as well as other matters pertaining to research and writing is Joseph Gibaldi and Walter S. Achtert, MLA HANDBOOK FOR WRITERS OF RESEARCH PAPERS, third edition (New York: The Modern Language Association of America, 1988).

7.11 The Elements of Style. In written English simplicity is a virtue. It follows from this that simple and direct advice is the best guidance one can have on matters of English style. A classic in this regard is E. B. White's revision of William Strunk, Jr., *THE ELEMENTS OF STYLE*, second edition (New York: Collier-Macmillan, 1972). Here you can find sound advice in a small package. You can take it with you and refer to it often.

B. TRADITIONAL SOURCES

8. TRADITIONAL SOURCES

8.1 Traditional Sources. Printed sources for the study of Ming history are many and varied. It is well known that paper was invented and that printing reached a high level of development in the Song Dynasty. Writing and publication continued in great volume throughout Ming times. It would probably not be an exaggeration to say that by the end of the Ming as many as half of the books ever printed in the world were Chinese (See THE CAMBRIDGE HISTORY OF CHINA, Volume 7, THE MING DYNASTY, 1368-1644, PART I, p. 9). Much of this outpouring of words has survived to our own time. The works most central to the historian's task have generally been reissued in modern editions, some of them typeset and punctuated with indexes and helpful annotations.

Exploring the forest of Chinese books can be a daunting but rewarding adventure. Many guides to the forest have been written by those who have gone before. A few of them are introduced here. More specialized bibliographies are described in the sections that follow. Listings of rare books and library holdings are mentioned in Part C, Section 22, Libraries and Archives.

8.2 Teng and Biggerstaff. Ssu-yū Teng and Knight Biggerstaff, AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF SELECTED CHINESE REFERENCE WORKS, third edition (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1971) provides a general introduction to many works in the field of Chinese studies, traditional and modern.

8.3 Wilkinson. Endymion Wilkinson, THE HISTORY OF IMPERIAL CHINA: A RESEARCH GUIDE (Cambridge: Harvard East Asian Monographs, 1973) is a practical guide to both research techniques and sources. It is supplemented by James H. Cole, UPDATING WILKINSON: AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF REFERENCE WORKS ON IMPERIAL CHINA PUBLISHED SINCE 1973 (New York, 1991).

8.4 Franke. The place to begin any search for Ming sources is Wolfgang Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY (Kuala Lumpur: University of Malaysia Press, 1968). This priceless guidebook is the product of years of painstaking work, searching through the resources of the world's great libraries, carefully comparing editions, and classifying the material into categories useful to the researcher. It is a work to keep close at hand for frequent consultation.

8.5 Cambridge History of China. For Wolfgang Franke's overview of Ming historical literature see "Historical Writing During the Ming," in Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett, eds., THE CAMBRIDGE HISTORY OF CHINA, Volume 7, THE MING DYNASTY, 1368-1644, PART I (New York: Cambridge University Press, 1988), Chapter 12, pp. 726-782.

8.6 Yiwen zhi. The YIWEN ZHI or Essay on Literature occupies the last four juan of the Essay section of the MINGSHI, juan 96-99 (pages 2343-2502). It is essentially a list of book titles in the imperial collection listed under the traditional four categories of classics, history, philosophers and belles lettres. It is often issued as a separate title with supplements. An example is MINGSHI YIWEN ZHI GUANGBIAN

明史藝文志廣編 (Ming history essay on literature supplemented; Taipei, 1963), 4 vols. This is a photocopy of the Shanghai edition of 1959, 2 vols., with a slightly altered title. The principal work is the four juan from the MINGSHI with supplements. Also included are three essays on literature: MINGSHU JINGJI ZHI 明書經籍志, XU WENXIAN TONGKAO JINGJI KAO 續文獻通考經籍考, QINDING XU WENXIAN TONGKAO JINGJI KAO 欽定續文獻通考經籍考, and two supplements: GUOSHI JINGJI ZHI 國史經籍志 and GUOSHI JINGJI ZHI BU 國史經籍志補. A title and author index by the four corner system is located in volume four, numbered from the back, pp. 1-385.

8.7 Catalogue of the Four Treasuries. The SIKU QUANSHU ZONGMU QINDING 四庫全書總目欽定 (Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1930, 10 vols.; Taipei, 1957, 16 vols.) is a comprehensive bibliography of traditional Chinese literature that grew out of the heroic, imperially sponsored compilation of the SIKU QUANSHU (Complete work of the four treasuries) 1773-1782. The bibliography includes extensive notes, not just on the 3,461 works copied into the SIKU QUANSHU but also on another 6,793 works not included in that collection. The annotations on each work are products of the highest order of Qing scholarship. The contents follow the traditional categories: classics (jing 經) with ten sections, history (shi 史) fifteen sections, philosophers (zi 子) fourteen sections, and belles lettres (ji 集) five sections. Also included are: (1) Ruan Yuan's list of works not in the original: SIKU WEISHOU SHUMU TIYAO 四庫未收書目提要, (2) an author index, and (3) a list of works proscribed by the Qing:

QINGDAI JINHUI SHUMU SIZHONG 清代禁毀書目四種 . For the student of the Ming it is important to remember both that an anti-Ming bias is present in these Qing commentaries and that many Ming works were proscribed.

8.8 Harvard Index. For access to the contents of the preceding work see INDEX TO SSU K'U CH'ÜAN SHU TSUNG MU AND WEI SHOU MU (Harvard-Yenching Institute Sinological Index Series, No. 7, Peiping, 1932; photocopy Taipei, 1966). For more information on the SIKU catalogue and its many cousins see Teng and Biggerstaff.

8.9 Xie Guozhen. Xie Guozhen 謝國楨 , WANMING SHIJI KAO 晚明史籍考 (Beijing, 1932; photocopy Taipei, 1968), 3 vols., 1198 pp., is an annotated bibliography of some 1,400 works from the late Ming period (1621-1662). These are items that do not appear in the Qing bibliographies. Entries give information on prefaces, contents, location of copies and the like. The last volume contains a stroke index to titles (pp. 1119-1147) and a stroke index to authors (pp. 1149-1192).

8.10 Huang Yuji. Huang Yuji 黃虞稷 (1629-1691), QIANQINGTANG SHUMU 千頃堂書目 (photoffset editions, Shanghai, 1935; Taipei, 1967), 6 vols., is the best bibliography of Ming authors. It is the catalogue of the library of Huang Yuji who also compiled the first draft of the YIWEN ZHI for the MINGSHI. It lists 14,907 works by Ming authors and nearly 3,000 titles by authors from the preceding dynasties.

8.11 Imperial Library Catalogue. The NEIGE CANGSHU MULU 內閣藏書目錄 by Sun Nengquan 孫能傳 , (1605, 8 juan; photocopy

Taipei, 1968), 2 vols., is a bibliography or catalogue of the Ming imperial library. It lists 2,552 titles with a brief identification of the author. With neither table of contents nor index it is difficult to be certain exactly what is included, but the arrangement of the contents is itself a matter of some interest. Imperial edicts and orders come first, followed by traditional literary categories, while local gazetteers are toward the end.

8.12 Rare Books. Rare books in the National Central Library are catalogued in GUOLI ZHONGYANG TUSHUGUAN SHANBEN SHUMU 國立中央圖書館善本書目 (Taipei: Guoli zhongyang tushuguan, 1957), 3 vols. The contents are arranged in order of the four standard categories followed by a section on collectanea which are analyzed by contents. Separate rare book catalogues also exist for a number of other libraries.

9. THE MING HISTORY (MINGSHI)

9.1 Mingshi. The MINGSHI 明史 is the official history of the Ming dynasty and as such is the twenty-fourth and last in the series of official histories. The fact that it is an official history tells a good deal about its content and organization. First of all, an official history was always written after the end of a dynasty, frequently by the dynasty which succeeded it, in this case the Manchu Qing. Setting up a governmental commission to collect data and assemble an official history was an essential part of the political process of founding a new dynasty by recognizing the legitimacy of the preceding regime while at the same time writing its epitaph. (Note that since the Qing dynasty was not followed by another dynastic regime it does not have an official history, only a draft.) The compilation of the MINGSHI took an extraordinarily long time due to the prolonged pacification of China by the Manchus and the fact that many surviving Ming loyalists were unwilling to cooperate with the conquerors. It took seventy-eight years (1645-1723) to produce the draft history of Ming, MINGSHI GAO 明史稿. The MINGSHI itself was presented to the throne in 1736 and first printed in 1739.

9.2 Historiography. The content and organization of the MINGSHI also betray its official origin. For example, sections dealing with border relations during the Ming, particularly relations with Mongols and Manchus, were very carefully edited to show the Qing conquerors in an acceptable light. The tone of

the writing is frequently didactic and reveals an orthodox Confucian interpretation of past events and a moral evaluation of the characters of the subjects. The material was organized into traditional categories, arranged to give precedence to the emperors and their relatives, the capital, heaven, earth and the like according to a sort of cosmological hierarchy within the various sections. For more information on the organization of traditional dynastic histories see Lien-sheng Yang, "The Organization of Chinese Official Historiography: Principles and Methods of the Standard Histories from the T'ang Through the Ming Dynasty," in W. G. Beasley and E. G. Pulleyblank, eds., HISTORIANS OF CHINA AND JAPAN (London, 1961), 44-59. For a more general discussion see Charles S. Gardner, CHINESE TRADITIONAL HISTORIOGRAPHY (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1961).

9.3 Contents. The MINGSHI was compiled under the supervision of Zhang Tingyu 張廷玉 (1672-1755) and others. It consists of 332 juan, with a table of contents (mulu 目錄, 4 juan) and four main sections:

basic annals, <u>benji</u> 本紀	24 <u>juan</u>
essays (monographs) <u>zhi</u> 志	75 <u>juan</u>
tables, <u>biao</u> 表	13 <u>juan</u>
biographies, <u>liezhuan</u> 列傳	220 <u>juan</u>

9.4 Basic Annals. The basic annals are titled after each emperor and consist of dated entries in strict chronological order except for opening statements on the emperor's early career and closing statements evaluating his character and

accomplishments. They present an extremely compressed version of the important events of each reign from the perspective of the court. For a study of the content of basic annals of the first Ming emperor and a translation of the text see Romeyn Taylor, tr., BASIC ANNALS OF MING T'AI-TSU (San Francisco: Chinese Materials Center, 1975).

9.5 Essays. The essays are descriptive treatises on various aspects of the empire and the government:

<u>Essay Topic</u>	<u>Chinese Title</u>	<u>juan</u>
Astronomy	<u>tianwen zhi</u> 天文志	25-27
Five Elements	<u>wuxing zhi</u> 五行志	28-30
Calendar	<u>li zhi</u> 曆志	31-39
Geography	<u>dili zhi</u> 地理志	40-46
Ceremony	<u>li zhi</u> 禮志	47-60
Music	<u>yue zhi</u> 樂志	61-63
Protocol	<u>yiwei zhi</u> 儀衛志	64
Sumptuary Regulations	<u>yufu zhi</u> 輿服志	65-68
Examinations	<u>xuanju zhi</u> 選舉志	69-71
Officialdom	<u>zhiguan zhi</u> 職官志	72-76
Food and Money	<u>shihuo zhi</u> 食貨志	77-82
Waterways	<u>heju zhi</u> 河渠志	83-88
Military Affairs	<u>bing zhi</u> 兵志	89-92
Punishments	<u>xingfa zhi</u> 刑法志	93-95
Literature	<u>yiwen zhi</u> 藝文志	96-99

9.6 Tables. The tables are chronological arrangements of information on important titles and offices. The first three are genealogical because their subjects are invested with

hereditary titles.

<u>Table Title</u>	<u>Chinese Title</u>	<u>juan</u>
Imperial Princes	<u>zhuwang shibiao</u> 諸王世表	100-104
Nobility of Merit	<u>gongchen shibiao</u> 功臣世表	105-107
Imperial Relatives	<u>waiqi biao</u> 外戚表	108
Chief Ministers	<u>zaifu biao</u> 宰輔表	109-110
The Seven Officers	<u>qiqing biao</u> 七卿表	111-112
(i.e. six ministers and censor-in-chief)		

9.7 Biographies. The biographies contain the bulk of the information in the dynastic history and are often set apart as a separate work. (In this connection note that the biographies are allocated a separate set of juan numbers.) To find out more about events reported in the basic annals it is necessary to look into the biographies of the relevant persons. One cannot assume that a biographical entry contains all the information about its subject, however. Frequently, important details will also be found in the biographies of a person's associates. The biographies are listed by name in the mulu, first by category, and within that ranking, chronologically. The emperors do not appear because their lives are recounted in the basic annals. The major categories are as follows:

<u>Category</u>	<u>Chinese term</u>	<u>juan</u>
empresses and imperial consorts	<u>houfei</u> 后妃	1-3
princes	<u>zhuwang</u> 諸王	4-8

imperial princesses	<u>gongzhu</u> 公主	9
prominent persons (chronologically)		10-168
upright officials	<u>xunli</u> 循吏	169
Confucian scholars	<u>rulin</u> 儒林	170-172
literary figures	<u>wenyuan</u> 文苑	173-176
loyal persons	<u>zhongyi</u> 忠義	177-183
filial subjects	<u>xiaoyi</u> 孝義	184-185
hermits	<u>yinyi</u> 隱逸	186
shamans and healers	<u>fangji</u> 方伎	187
imperial male relatives		
by marriage	<u>waiqi</u> 外戚	188
virtuous women	<u>lienü</u> 列女	189-191
eunuchs	<u>huanguan</u> 宦官	192-193
eunuch cliques	<u>yandang</u> 閹黨	194
sycophants	<u>ningxing</u> 佞倖	195
traitorous officials	<u>jianchen</u> 姦臣	196
rebels	<u>liuzei</u> 流賊	197
local chieftains, by province	<u>tusi</u> 土司	198-207
foreign countries	<u>waiquo</u> 外國	208-216
western regions	<u>xiyu</u> 西域	217-220

9.8 Editions. The following are the three most convenient editions of the MINGSHI:

a) Zhonghua Shuju. The best current edition of the MINGSHI (Beijing: Zhonghua Shuju, 1974; also available in a Taiwan reprint) consists of 28 paperback volumes. It is a carefully composed typeset, punctuated edition with lines indicating names of persons and of books. Every juan is followed by comparative

notes, jiaokanji 校勘記. Pagination is continuous throughout the work for 8,642 pages with a detailed table of contents in pages 1-137. Because of its quality, convenience and low cost, this is now the version of the MINGSHI to use.

b) Bona ben. The Bona ben 百衲本 or Palace edition, photo-reprint of the Wuyingdian 武英殿 blockprint edition (named for the building in which it was kept), Shanghai, 1937; reprinted in Taipei by Yiwen Publishing Company. This edition is the traditional standard version, noted for its quality.

c) Guofang yanjiuyuan. Taipei: Guofang yanjiuyuan 國防研究院, 1962, 6 vols. This is another modern typeset edition which also includes corrections and emendations at the conclusion of each juan. The typesetting and punctuation of this edition were not carefully done, however, and one should be alert to possible errors. Note the following handy additions in volume 6:

a bibliography of secondary work in Chinese, pp. 3843-3898

a chronology of major events, pp. 3899-4127

an index of names (by stroke), separate pagination, pp.

1-137

9.9 Mingshi Index. Li Yumin 李裕民, comp., MINGSHI RENMING SUOYIN 明史人名索引 (Index to personal names in the MINGSHI; Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1985), 2 vols. The main body of this index, pp. 1-113, is intended to list every occurrence of every personal name in the dynastic history, arranged according to the four corner system. Entries give the volume, juan, and page in edition 9.4 (a), above. A stroke order index of surnames occurs

at the end of the second volume, pp. 1114-1124.

9.10 Huang Yunmei 黄雲眉, comp., MINGSHI KAOZHENG 明史考證 (Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1979), 8 vols. This massive work consists of scholarly emendations of passages in the MINGSHI. The contents are arranged in the sequence the passages occur in the dynastic history. Lines from the MINGSHI are followed by Huang's citation of other sources to clarify or correct the initial statement.

9.11 Food and Money Essay in Japanese. Wada Sei 和田清, ed., MINGSHI SHIKASHI YAKUCHU 明史食貨志譯注 (The SHIHUOZHI of the MINGSHI-- translation and notes; Tokyo: Toyo Bunko, 1957), 2 vols. This valuable work, already referred to in section 4, consists of a Japanese translation of the MINGSHI Essay on Food and Money followed by the original text; a bibliography of secondary works in Chinese and Japanese; indexes of terms, personal names, book titles, place names; a table of prefectures, subprefectures and districts; maps of Ming grain transport, salt administration districts, administrative divisions; and an English abstract.

9.12 Food and Money Essay Notes. Li Xunxiao 李洵校, ed., MINGSHI SHIHUOZHI JIAOZHU 明史食貨志校註 (Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1982), 2 vols. This work consists of passages from the MINGSHI Essay on Food and Money followed by notes clarifying obscure points. Works such as this and the preceding are essential guides if one is to make extensive use of the Essays, which are dense, technical, and difficult to read.

9.13 Punishments Essay Index. Noguchi Tetsuro 野口鐵郎, MINSHI KEIHOSHI SAKUIN 明史刑法志索引 (Tokyo: Kokusho kankokai, 1981). This work is an index to the Essay on Punishments in the MINGSHI.

9.14 Mingshi gao. MINGSHI GAO 明史稿 (Draft history of the Ming; in a seven volume photolithographic edition; Taipei: Wenhai chubanshe: 1962), 7 vols. Credited to Wang Hongxu 王鴻緒 (1645-1723) and others, it consists of 310 juan. It varies from the MINGSHI in numerous minor details. Comparison with the MINGSHI often reveals informative contrasts. Its contents are arranged as follows:

basic annals, <u>benji</u> 本紀	19 <u>juan</u>
essays, <u>zhi</u> 志	77 <u>juan</u>
tables, <u>biao</u> 表	9 <u>juan</u>
biographies, <u>liezhuan</u> 列傳	205 <u>juan</u>

9.15 Mingshu. Fu Weilin 傅維鱗, comp., MINGSHU 明書 (An unofficial history of the Ming; 171 juan; in GUOXUE JIBEN CONGSHU 國學基本叢書; reproduced by the Commercial Press, 1937). This is one of a number of private histories following the official pattern that were compiled following the dynasty's fall. Fu Weilin himself died in 1667. The MINGSHU was prohibited in the Qing period. Its contents are arranged as follows:

basic annals, <u>benji</u> 本紀	19 <u>juan</u>
records of imperial women, <u>ji</u> 紀	2 <u>juan</u>
tables, <u>biao</u> 表	16 <u>juan</u>
essays, <u>zhi</u> 志	48 <u>juan</u>

biographies of hereditary

families, shijia 世家 3 juan

biographies, liezhuan 列傳 78 juan

9.16 Mingshi Jishi Benmo. Gu Yingtai 谷應泰, MINGSHI JISHI BENMO 明史紀事本末 (1658, 80 juan; reprinted Taipei: Wanyou wenku, 1956, 4 vols.; Taipei: Sanmin shuju, 1956, 2 vols.) treats Ming history in the "narrative from beginning to end" format. The contents are chronologically arranged, each juan being assigned a separate title suggesting a central incident or development. Based in part on sources no longer extant, this work is regarded as one of the most reliable accounts of Ming history. It was compiled independently of the MINGSHI and can be thought of as an alternative account to the story told in the basic annals.

10. THE VERITABLE RECORD (MING SHILU) ET AL

10.1 Ming shilu. The MING SHILU 明實錄 (Veritable records of the Ming dynasty) is the most important single source for the study of Ming political history. The standard edition is a facsimile reproduction of a manuscript that had come into the possession of the National Library and was moved to Taiwan around 1948. The work was carried on in Taiwan at the Academia Sinica under the supervision of Huang Zhangjian 黃彰健. Although not a primary source in the strictest sense it is a monumental collection of raw material on the court and the Ming regime in general. Compiled for government use, it was put together from various court diaries and daily administrative records kept by special offices charged with gathering historical materials. Once compiled the veritable record served as a reference work for the court not unlike a modern parliamentary journal. For details on its content and compilation see Wolfgang Franke, "The Veritable Records of the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644)," in W. G. Beasely and E. G. Pulleyblank, eds., HISTORIANS OF CHINA AND JAPAN (London: Oxford University Press, 1961), 60-77; also see Franke in 8.4, pp. 8-22.

Ostensibly the veritable records are a chronologically arranged collection of notices of court activities, important events, summaries of memorials, debates, imperial edicts and the like. They also contain biographies of many prominent persons. These appear under the date of the person's death. They differ

from the biographies in the MINGSHI and were written much closer to the time of the subject's life. Considerable care was expended in the selection and editing to make the accounts of most matters highly reliable. However, in politically sensitive issues intentional distortion was occasionally introduced. The veritable record of the first emperor's reign, for example, was twice edited by the Yongle emperor who had usurped the throne. For an introduction to the historiography of the veritable records see Wolfgang Franke, "Historical Writing During the Ming," in F. W. Mote and D. Twitchett, eds., THE CAMBRIDGE HISTORY OF CHINA, Volume 7, THE MING DYNASTY, 1368-1644, PART I (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1988), esp. pp. 746-52.

10.2 Titles. The MING SHILU is not a single work but a series of works separately titled for the reign of each emperor. Materials were collected and edited at the end of each reign period and given the appearance of forming one work only in retrospect. A photo-offset edition was published in the 1960's by the Institute of History and Philology of the Academia Sinica in Taiwan. This set of 133 volumes bears the general title MING SHILU with separate subtitles for the various reigns. The following listing indicates the subtitles, the year of initial compilation, the number of juan and the era name and years covered by the contents.

TAIZU SHILU 太祖實錄 (1418, 257 juan). Covers predynastic years and Hongwu era, 1351-1398

TAIZONG SHILU 太宗實錄 (1430, 130 juan). Covers Jianwen reign and Yongle era, 1398-1424

- RENZONG SHILU 仁宗實錄 (1430, 10 juan). Covers the Hongxi era, 1424-1425
- XUANZONG SHILU 宣宗實錄 (1438, 115 juan). Covers Xuande era, 1425-1435
- YINGZONG SHILU 英宗實錄 (1467, 361 juan). Covers the Zhengtong, Jingtai and Tianshun eras, 1435-1464
- XIANZONG SHILU 憲宗實錄 (1491, 293 juan). Covers the Chenghua era, 1464-1487
- XIAOZONG SHILU 孝宗實錄 (1509, 224 juan). Covers the Hongzhi era, 1487-1505
- WUZONG SHILU 武宗實錄 (1525, 197 juan). Covers the Chengde era, 1505-1521
- SHIZONG SHILU 世宗實錄 (1577, 566 juan). Covers the Jiajing era, 1521-1567
- MUZONG SHILU 穆宗實錄 (1574, 70 juan). Covers the Longqing era, 1567-1572
- SHENZONG SHILU 神宗實錄 (1630, 596 juan). Covers the Wanli era, 1572-1620
- GUANGZONG SHILU 光宗實錄 (1623, 8 juan). Covers the Taichang era, i.e. one month in 1620
- XIZONG SHILU 熹宗實錄 (1637, 86 juan). Covers the Tianqi era, 1621-1628
- CHONGZHEN SHILU 崇宗實錄 (n.d., 17 juan). Covers the Chongzhen era, 1628-1644)

For additional details on these subtitles see Wolfgang Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY (Kuala Lumpur: University of Malaysia Press, 1968), pp. 30-33.

10.3 Format. The numbering of juan begins again for each reign period. The first line gives the full title and the juan number. Example:

太祖高皇帝實錄卷之一百八十四

The second line of the text gives the date: reign period, year, month, first day of month in cyclical characters. Example:

洪武二十年八月戊申朔

The first entry for each month begins with the month and day. The first entry for each subsequent day in that month begins with the day. Other entries for that day are undated.

Note that pages are numbered in traditional style, by juan, with one number for both sides of the page. Therefore, unless you use Western style volume and page number, it is incumbent upon you to distinguish in all citations between the recto and verso sides of the page. Use small letters "a" and "b" for this purpose. Example:

MING SHIZONG SHILU, juan 202, page 2, second side, could be rendered: MING SHIZONG SHILU, 202:2b.

10.4 Jiaokanji. 校勘記 Since the MING SHILU was a court record and very long, it was never published in printed form. Rather, it was kept in a number of scribal copies on deposit in various places. Because it is in manuscript form there are obvious variations in the style in which characters were written and frequent mistakes and even some insertions of corrections. The present Academia Sinica edition is simply a photo-reproduction of one of these manuscript copies. Variants in other manuscript copies are identified in companion volumes of comparative notes

entitled MING SHILU JIAOKANJI 明實錄校勘記 . Volumes are titled separately by reign period to correspond to the main text. For an explanation of this work and the photographs of the various editions, see the first volume, MING TAIZU SHILU JIAOKANJI, 1-13.

Entries in the JIAOKANJI are organized by juan, page (recto and verso being indicated by qian 前 and hou 后) and line. Under this entry will be given the form found in the text and below that the variants as found in one of the other manuscripts. Having noted the difference, the JIAOKANJI will occasionally venture a judgment such as "correct" (shi ye 是也) or "wrong" (wu 誤). When using the veritable records be aware of the JIAOKANJI and the possibility that it might contain additional information.

10.5 Supplement. The Taiwan edition of the MING SHILU is accompanied by a twenty-one volume supplement, MING SHILU FULU 明實錄附錄 containing various unofficial titles from the last years of the dynasty as well collections of "precious instructions" (baoxun 寶訓) of the various emperors arranged by reign period.

10.6 Excerpts. Given the richness of the veritable records it is natural that scholars should search through it for information on particular topics. A number of collections of excerpts relating to specialized subjects have been published. A single example is Chiu Ling-yeong 趙令揚 , Chan Hok-lam 陳學霖 , Chan Cheung 陳璋 and Lo Wen 羅文 , MING SHILU ZHONG ZHI DONGNANYA SHILIAO 明實錄之東南亞史料 (Southeast Asia in Chinese Reign

Chronicles, 1368-1644; Hong Kong: Hsüeh-tsin Press, 1968), 2 vols. The body of this work consists of references to Southeast Asia arranged chronologically by year in type-set form with punctuation and marking of proper names. The first volume begins with a brief introductory essay; the second ends with indexes of personal names and place names arranged by stroke order.

10.7 Guoque. GUOQUE 國權 (An evaluation of the events of our dynasty) is an outstanding example of a private work on Ming history in an annalistic pattern. It was compiled in the middle of the seventeenth century by Tan Qian 談遷 (1594-1658) who had the good fortune to have access to large private libraries and to former Ming officials following the change of dynasties. The GUOQUE differs from the MING SHILU in many details reflecting the varied sources available to the author and his high standards. His own good opinion of his prowess as a historian is reflected in the fact that he changed his name from Tan Yixun 談以訓 to Tan Qian so that it would combine the names of China's two most famous historians, Sima Tan and Sima Qian.

The availability and usefulness of the GUOQUE is owed to the fact that it was issued in a modern, typeset, punctuated edition in six volumes, Peking, 1958. The body of the text covers the years 1328-1645. The contents are chronologically arranged except for commentary which is set one line lower than the text and introduced by the phrase "So-and-so says" (e.g., Wang Shizhen yue 王世貞曰, or Tan Qian yue). The beginning of a new month is raised one line above the text and the first day of

that month is indicated in small characters printed side by side. Year entries are also raised one line above the text and give the cyclical characters for the year first, followed by reign name and number. Every entry begins a new line and only the first entry on a given day shows the cyclical characters for the date. Thus, to find the date for a given entry you must refer back to find the day, the month and the year, respectively. The emperor's temple name, reign name, and the year are shown in the margin of every page.

In addition to the main body of the text, volume I, pages 1-255, contains four juan of biographical and geographical information in tabular form. The categories of this information are as follows:

<u>datong</u> 大統	emperors
<u>tianli</u> 天僊	imperial wives and concubines
<u>yuanhuang</u> 元黃	imperial offspring
<u>gefan</u> 各藩	princely fiefs
<u>yushu</u> 輿屬	geographical subdivisions
<u>xunfeng</u> 勳封	enfeoffment of nobles
<u>xujue</u> 卹爵	posthumous promotions
<u>qiyuan</u> 戚院	imperial in-laws
<u>zhige</u> 直閣	grand secretaries
<u>buyuan</u> 部院	ministers
<u>jiake</u> 甲科	top examination candidates
<u>chaogong</u> 朝貢	tributaries

The GUOQUE is an essential tool for all periods of Ming history. It should always be compared to the MING SHILU and can

be used as a guide for finding things in the veritable records.

10.8 Xinjiao Ming Tongjian. The XINJIAO MING TONGJIAN 新校明通鑑 (Newly annotated annalistic account of Ming history) is a late Qing work in traditional format by Xia Xie 夏燮. The main body of the work consists of ninety juan with supplements of four juan at the front and six juan at the rear to cover the periods before and after the dynasty. It is now available in a typeset, punctuated edition of six volumes, Taipei: Shijie shuju, 1962.

This work is arranged chronologically, but is much more superficial in content than the GUOQUE or the MING SHILU. Its advantages include brevity, the indication of Chinese and Western equivalent years in the margins, lines indicating names of persons and titles of books, and comparative notes (kaoyi 考異, investigation of variations) which point out problems and refer to other texts.

The XINJIAO MING TONGJIAN, like the basic annals of the MINGSHI, is a good place to go for an initial survey of events before moving on to the richer and more detailed works described above.

11. COLLECTED STATUTES

11.1 Da Ming Huidian. DA MING HUIDIAN 大明會典 (Collected statutes of great Ming, 1587 edition, 228 juan; 1963 photo offset edition in Taiwan by the Guofeng chubanshe, 5 vols.) is the most comprehensive collection of codified abstracts of imperial edicts and instructions. The collection was itself prepared and promulgated by imperial authority, and was used in central and local administrative offices. These were addressed to officials, but covered the duties of ordinary subjects as well. Entries are arranged according to the six ministries with a few minor exceptions:

<u>juan</u>	<u>topic</u>	<u>main heading</u>	<u>total juan</u>
1	Imperial Clan Court	zongrenfu 宗人府	1
2-13	Personnel	libu 吏部	12
14-42	Revenue	hubu 戶部	29
43-117	Rites	libu 禮部	75
118-158	War	bingbu 兵部	41
159-180	Justice	xingbu 刑部	22
181-213	Works	gongbu 工部	33
214-228	Miscellaneous agencies, commands, guards		15

The number of juan allocated to each topic vary widely--particularly the emphasis on rites and war--raising the question of how the number of entries are related to the priorities, the structure, and the activities of the Ming government. Individual entries combine information on regulations, organization, administrative practices, directives

and historical changes.

11.2 Ming Huiyao. Long Wenlin 龍文彬, comp., MING HUIYAO 明會要 (Handbook of Ming government, typeset, punctuated edition, Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1956; Taipei: Shijie shuju, 1963, 2 vols.) is a nineteenth century secondary work providing ready access to the basic facts on Ming government. Brief entries are drawn from a wide variety of Ming texts, the source being indicated at the end of each item. The organization of contents is markedly different from the HUIDIAN as a summary of the table of contents will indicate:

<u>juan</u>	<u>topic</u>	<u>main heading</u>	<u>total juan</u>
1-5	Imperial family	dixi 帝系	5
6-20	Rites	li 禮	15
21-22	Music	yue 樂	2
23-24	Sumptuary regulations	yufu 輿服	2
25-26	Schools	xuexiao 學校	2
27-28	Calendar	yunli 運曆	2
29-46	Officialdom	zhiguan 職官	18
47-49	Examination system	xuanju 選舉	3
50-52	Commoners	minzheng 民政	3
53-57	Economy	shihuo 食貨	5
58-63	Military	bing 兵	6
64-67	Justice	xing 刑	4
68-70	Omens	xiangyi 祥異	3
71-77	Regions	fangyu 方域	6
78-80	Outer states	waifan 外番	4

12. PENAL CODES

12.1 Penal Codes. Ming emperors with their officials, codified and published rules and regulations to guide the behavior of their subjects. Since the form, content, and force of these regulations differed in many particulars from what we would call law codes in our own society we must be prepared to use such words as "law" flexibly in speaking of Ming China. The "Ming Code" (DA MING LÜ 大明律), which was promulgated in 1397, combines elements of a penal code with many sections regulating governmental affairs. The Ming founder ordered that articles of the Code issued in his reign could never be altered in later generations. Because of this restriction the need for change was met by adding statutes, li 例, to the articles of the Code. On this and other questions related to the Code see Huang Zhangjian 黄彰健 MING DAI LÜLI HUIBIAN 明代律例彙編 (Academia Sinica, Institute of History and Philology Monograph No. 75; Taipei: Zhongyang yanjiuyuan Lishi yuyan yanjiusuo, 1979), 2 vols.

The "Collected Statutes of the Ming" (DA MING HUIDIAN, 11.1 above) have the form of administrative regulations and executive orders and hence constitute a special body of law pertaining to administrative matters. The HUANG MING ZUXUN 皇明祖訓 (August Ming Ancestral Instruction) are rules laid down by the founding emperor to guide subsequent rulers. These regulations, which focus particularly on the palace and members of the imperial clan, might be viewed as the core of a Ming constitution,

principles intended to guide the dynasty in perpetuity. On quite another level the "Grand Pronouncement" (YUZHI DA GAO 御制大誥) of the founding emperor constitute prohibitions and warnings to commoners and officials, both civil and military, covering a wide range of criminal behavior. One could extend this list still further. Regulations on ceremony, for example, could be included on the grounds that ritual behavior was one of the activities most jealously controlled by the state and most essential to its well-being. Or one might argue that all imperial edicts had the force of law and hence the entire corpus of executive decisions constituted an ever expanding body of law. These are essentially matters of definition.

12.2 The Ming Code. There are many editions of the DA MING LŪ (Ming Code). The most current edition is the 1908 reprint with preface by Shen Jiaben 沈家本 (a by-product of the late Qing reform program) available in a Taiwan reprint (Chengwen chubanshe, 1969) in five volumes. The law consists of two basic elements: the statutes (lŭ 律) which enumerated the basic principles and the sub-statutes or precedents (li 例) which were refinements added to the code by imperial edict. As time passed the li tended to multiply making interpretation ever more difficult. By 1585 the li, which had grown to 382 in number, were combined with the lŭ. The mature text with commentary as it existed in the late Ming was known as the MING LŪ JI JIE FU LI 明律集解附例 ("Ming code with collected commentaries and substatutes attached").

12.3 Principles. As many commentators have pointed out the intent of the traditional Chinese law codes was to uphold a social order based on Confucian notions of moral hierarchy. Several features of the law reflect this order. Elaborate tables are appended to the code to aid in assessing relationships and gradations. Some of the basic features are:

(i) The Five Degrees of Mourning (wufu 五服). Here, the degree of mourning one owes a relative serves as a principle for determining the closeness and degree of subordination embodied in the relationship. This in turn was used to measure the severity of a crime. The degrees are:

1. Garb of unhemmed sackcloth, 3 years (zhancui san nian 斬衰三年)
- 2a. Garb of hemmed sackcloth, 1 year with mourning staff (zixui zhangqi 齊衰杖期)
- 2b. Garb of hemmed sackcloth, 1 year without staff (zicui bu zhangqi 齊衰不杖期)
- 2c. Garb of hemmed sackcloth, 5 months (zicui wu yue 齊衰五月)
- 2d. Garb of hemmed sackcloth, 3 months (zicui san yue 齊衰三月)
3. Garb worked with greater coarseness, 9 months (dagong jiu yue 大功九月)
4. Garb worked with lesser coarseness, 5 months (xiaogong wu yue 小功五月)
5. Garb of plain hempen cloth, 3 months (sima san yue 緦麻三月)

(ii) The Five Punishments (wu xing 五刑), with commutation rates in cash indicated:

1. Light bamboo (chi 笞), 5 degrees : 10-50 blows
2. Heavy bamboo (zhang 杖), 5 degrees: 60-100 blows
3. Penal servitude (tu 徒), 5 degrees: 1-3 years with 60-100 blows of heavy bamboo.
4. Life exile (liu 流), 3 degrees: 2,000-3,000 li with 100 blows of heavy bamboo.
5. Death (si 死), 2 degrees: zhan 斬 (decapitation), jiao 絞 (strangulation)

(iii) The Ten Abominations (shi e 十惡). These are crimes viewed as particularly offensive to the moral hierarchy:

1. Rebellion (moufan 謀反)
2. Conspiracy against the dynasty (mou da ni 謀大逆)
3. Treason (mou pan 謀叛)
4. Parricide, etc. (e ni 惡逆)
5. Massacre (bu dao 不道)
6. Sacrilege (da bujing 大不敬)
7. Unfilial behavior (buxiao 不孝)
8. Discord (bumu 不睦)
9. Insubordination (buyi 不義)
10. Incest (nei luan 內亂)

(iv) The Eight Considerations (bayi 八議). These are actually groups entitled to special consideration under the law:

1. Imperial relations (qin 親)
2. Long service (gu 故)
3. Merit (gong 功)
4. Virtue (xian 賢)

5. Ability (neng 能)
6. Industry (qin 勤)
7. Rank (gui 貴)
8. Descent (bin 賓)

12.4 Contents of the Code. The Ming Code issued in 1397 contained some organizational changes from the traditional codes that had been passed on from Tang and Song times. The number of articles was reduced from 606 to 460, and the number of subheadings increased from twelve to thirty. These thirty were, in turn, arranged in seven major groups: one on general principles and six sections corresponding to the six ministries. This arrangement was to remain virtually unchanged for the Ming and Qing periods. See Derk Bodde and Clarence Morris, *LAW IN IMPERIAL CHINA: EXEMPLIFIED BY 190 CH'ING DYNASTY CASES (TRANSLATED FROM THE HSING-AN HUI-LAN), WITH HISTORICAL, SOCIAL AND JURIDICAL COMMENTARIES* (paperback edition; Philadelphia: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1973).

The contents of the Code, with the number of articles indicated in parentheses, are as follows:

- I. Terms and General Principles (ming li lü 名例律) (47)
- II. Administrative Law (li lü 吏律)
 - a. Administrative Regulations (zhizhi 職制) (15)
 - b. Standards of Official Behavior (gongshi 公式) (18)
- III. Civil Law (hu lü 戶律)
 - a. Family and Corvee Service (hu yi 戶役) (15)
 - b. Landed Property (tianzhai 田宅) (11)
 - c. Marriage (hunyin 婚姻) (18)

- d. Granaries and treasuries (cangku 倉庫) (24)
- e. Taxes and tariffs (kecheng 課程) (19)
- f. Money lending (qianzhai 錢債) (3)
- g. Public markets (shichan 市廛) (5)
- IV. Ritual Law (li lü 禮律)
 - a. State sacrifices (jisi 祭祀) (6)
 - b. Ceremonial regulations (yi zhi 儀制) (20)
- V. Military Law (bing lü 兵律)
 - a. Imperial palaces and guards (gong wei 宮衛) (19)
 - b. Administration of armed forces (junzheng 軍政) (20)
 - c. Frontier guard posts (guanjin 關津) (7)
 - d. Horses and cattle (jiumu 廐牧) (11)
 - e. Postal services and transport (yuyi 郵驛) (18)
- VI. Penal Law (xing lü 刑律)
 - a. Violence and theft (zeidao 賊盜) (28)
 - b. Homicide (ren ming 人命) (20)
 - c. Affrays and blows (dou ou 鬪毆) (22)
 - d. Abusive language (mali 罵詈) (8)
 - e. Accusations and suits (su song 訴訟) (12)
 - f. Bribery and squeeze (shou zang 受贓) (11)
 - g. Deception and fraud (zha wei 詐僞) (12)
 - h. Sexual violations (fan jian 犯奸) (10)
 - i. Miscellaneous offenses (zafan 雜犯) (11)
 - j. Arrests and escapes (bu wang 捕亡) (8)
 - k. Trial and imprisonment (duan yü 斷獄) (29)
- VII. Laws on Public Works (gong lü 工律)
 - a. Public construction (ying zao 營造) (9)

12.5 Translations. Most of the details of the Ming Code were carried over unchanged to the Qing code. Consequently translations of the latter provide ready access to much of the Ming law. The Korean and Vietnamese courts likewise made use of the Ming Code as a model; the former country providing one of the earliest versions of the Ming Code, the latter being the source of one of the best translations (into French).

(i) Staunton, George Thomas, trans., TA TSING LEU LEE, BEING THE FUNDAMENTAL LAWS, AND A SELECTION FROM THE SUPPLEMENTARY STATUTES OF THE PENAL CODE OF CHINA: ORIGINALLY PRINTED AND PUBLISHED IN PEKIN, IN VARIOUS SUCCESSIVE EDITIONS, UNDER THE SANCTION, AND BY THE AUTHORITY, OF THE SEVERAL EMPERORS OF THE TA TSIN, OR PRESENT DYNASTY (London: Cadell and Davies, 1810; reprinted Taipei: Ch'eng-wen Publishing Company, 1966), 2 vols.

(ii) Boulais, Gui, trans., MANUEL DU CODE CHINOIS (VARIETES SINOLOGIQUES series, No. 55; Shanghai, 1924).

(iii) Philastre, P.L.F., trans., LE CODE ANNAMITE, NOUVELLE TRADUCTION COMPLETE, COMPRENANT: LES COMMENTAIRES OFFICIELS DU CODE, TRADITS POUR LA PREMIERE FOIS: DE NOMBREUSES ANNOTATIONS EXTRAITES DES COMMENTAIRES DU CODE CHINOIS: DES RENSEIGNEMENTS RELATIFS A L'HISTOIRE DU DROIT, TIRES DE PLUSIEURS OUVRAGES CHINOIS: DES EXPLICATIONS ET DES RENBOIS (Paris: E. Leroux, 1876; 2d ed. 1909; reprinted, Taipei: Ch'eng-wen Publishing Company, 1967), 2 vols.

(iv) Nguyen Ngoc Huy and Ta Van Tai, THE LE CODE: LAW IN TRADITIONAL VIETNAM: A COMPARATIVE SINO-VIETNAMESE LEGAL STUDY

WITH HISTORICAL-JURIDICAL ANALYSIS AND ANNOTATIONS (Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press, 1987), 3 vols.

(v) Jones, William C., THE GREAT QING CODE (New York: Oxford University Press, 1993).

12.6 Essay on Punishments. A general account of the Ming legal system is contained in the essay on penal regulations (Xingfa zhi 刑法志) of the MINGSHI, juan 93-95. The first of these juan is translated into German and discussed in Frank Munzel, STRAFRECHT IM ALTEN CHINA NACH DEN STRAFRECHTSKAPITELN IN DEN MING-ANNALEN ("Penal law in old China according to the penal law in the Ming History"; Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz, 1968).

12.7 Index to Mingshi Essay on Punishments. Noguchi Tetsuro 野口鐵郎, MINSHI KEIHOSHI SAKUIN 明史刑法志索引 (Tokyo, 1981). This is an index to the law essay of the MINGSHI. In it you will find indexed entries of the following sorts: (1) eras and reign periods, (2) names of persons, (3) names of places, (4) titles of offices, and (5) legal terms.

13. GAZETTEERS

13.1 Gazetteers. Gazetteers (usually fangzhi 方志) are comprehensive accounts of the geography, administration, economy, religion, local customs, history, and local personalities, etc., of specific administrative jurisdictions. Spatially, they constitute a hierarchy from works of imperial scope down through province and prefecture to the district level. Chronologically, they span a range from rare works authored in the Song, through relatively numerous publications of the Ming and Qing to titles written in the twentieth century.

Even though they were ordinarily compiled by local scholars, gazetteers developed under strong official influence, reflecting the administrative divisions of the empire and the perspectives and preoccupations of the official class. They vary considerably in form, and their quality is uneven. Some appear to have been prepared casually or in haste, while others are comprehensive works of impressive scholarship. The total number of extant gazetteers has been estimated to be about 7,500, containing a total of 110,000 juan.

In selecting gazetteers for one's research it is necessary to remember two things. First, that they form a spatial hierarchy. Even though you are interested in a particular county, it is possible that the county's own gazetteers can be extensively supplemented by gazetteers of the "parent" prefecture or even province. Second, and even more important, although you are studying the Ming, a good Qing gazetteer may

contain more Ming material than any extant Ming gazetteer.

Also, there are many more Qing gazetteers than Ming, and in many instances the only gazetteer available for a given county or prefecture may be one published in the Qing. A number of guides are available to help locate and utilize gazetteers.

13.2 1985 Guide to Gazetteers. ZHONGGUO DIFANGZHI LIANHE MULU 中國地方志聯合目錄 (Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1985). This index is keyed to major Chinese libraries. The contents are arranged by province, with an index of titles arranged by the four-corner system and a stroke order index to the four-corner numbers and the pages on which they occur.

13.3 1958 Guide to Gazetteers. ZHONGGUO DIFANGZHI ZONGLU 中國地方志綜錄, comp. Zhu Shijia 朱士嘉 (Shanghai: Shangwu yinshuguan, 1958). An update of an earlier work by the great expert on Chinese local gazetteers, this work is arranged by province and indicates the holdings in mainland Chinese libraries. Titles are indexed by stroke.

13.4 1942 Guide to Gazetteers. Chu Shih Chia, A CATALOGUE OF CHINESE LOCAL HISTORIES IN THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS (GUOHUI TUSHUGUAN CANG ZHONGGUO FANGZHI MULU 國會圖書館藏中國地方志目錄; Washington: U. S. Government Printing Office, 1942). This is a photographic reproduction of a handwritten manuscript. The contents are arranged by province. Titles of the works are indexed by Wade-Giles romanization and by stroke.

13.5 Gazetteers in Japanese Libraries. CHUGOKU CHIHOSHI SOGO MOKUROKU 中國地方志總合目錄 (Tokyo: Kokuritsu Kokkai toshokan, Sanko shoshibu 國立國會圖書館參考書誌部, 1969). This is a union

catalogue of Chinese local gazetteers in fourteen major libraries and research institutes in Japan. The contents are arranged by province. Titles are indexed by the Japanese syllabary and by first characters in the Wade-Giles system.

13.6 Franke. Historians of the Ming should find useful the comprehensive list of extant Ming gazetteers in W. Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY, pp. 250-309. These titles are arranged by province and within each province by Wade-Giles romanization. Provincial gazetteers are excluded.

13.7 Ming Gazetteers in Japanese Collections. NIHON GENSON MINDAI CHIHOSHI MOKUROKU 日本現存明代地方志目錄 (Tokyo: Toyo Bunko, 1962), comp. by Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫, supplement published 1971. Arranged by province, these works list Ming gazetteers in Japanese collections. The index lists titles by reading in Japanese syllabary.

13.8 Biographies in Ming Gazetteers in Japan. NIHON GENSON MINDAI CHIHOSHI DENKI SAKUIN KO 日本現存明代地方志傳記索引稿 (Draft index to biographies in Ming period local gazetteers in Japanese libraries; Tokyo: Toyobunko Mindaishi kenkyushitsu, 1964), comp. by Yamane Yukio. This mimeographed guide contains: (1) a list of gazetteers arranged by province and (2) a list of biographies in alphabetical order in Wade-Giles romanization. Entries give the name in romanization and Chinese characters, degree, home of registration, the gazetteers and section in which the biographies occur.

13.9 Introductory Syllabus. Ch'ü T'ung-tsu, LOCAL GAZETTEERS: AN INTRODUCTORY SYLLABUS (Cambridge, Mass., 1962). This is a

mimeographed draft prepared for a class at Harvard University. It contains useful general remarks and definitions of terms.

13.10 Guide to Pre-Ming Gazetteers. ZHONGGUO GU FANGZHI KAO

中國古方志考, Compiled by Zhang Guokan 張國淦 (Shanghai: Zhonghua shuju, 1962). This contains works from the Qin through the Yuan dynasties. Its contents are arranged by province and the titles are indexed by stroke.

13.11 Gazetteer Dictionary. ZHONGGUO FANGZHI DACIDIAN

中國方志大辭典 (Hangzhou: Zhejiang renmin chubanshe, 1988). This work contains sections on terminology (traditional and modern), gazetteers (listed by province), organizations, tribal groups and much else. It is a good place to look for definitions of terminology relating to Chinese geography.

13.12 Organization and Contents. Gazetteers vary widely in scope and conform to no standard format. Nevertheless, the description of one example of the genre will serve to indicate the kind of things one might expect to encounter. For this purpose let us consider the SUZHOU FU ZHI 蘇州府志 (last preface 1883). This gazetteer's 150 juan constitute an extraordinarily rich source of materials, including essays, biographies, inscriptions, poems and official documents, for local history. It was written by a staff of some thirty-eight compilers, editors and researchers, and printed under the supervision of another twenty-two scholars. Among the listed participants in this project were education officials, ju ren, and government scholars. The great size and high quality of this work presumably owe much to the fact that the compilers

were able to build upon excellent earlier gazetteers of this prefecture, such as GUSU ZHI 姑蘇志 (last preface 1506; reprinted in Taiwan 1965).

The SUZHOU FU ZHI's table of contents suggests the range of information to be found in this and in other good gazetteers:

Prefatory matter: including maps of the prefecture and its counties, and accounts of Qing imperial visits. The body of the work is divided into numbered juan, as follows:

- 1: Stars and Terrain (xingye 星野) astrological correspondence between the Suzhou region and its governing lunar mansion.
- 2: The Region (jiangyu 疆域) a history of the administrative geography and the distinctive characteristics of the Suzhou area.
- 3: Local Customs (fengsu 風俗) surveys communal and familial festivals and rites, and local beliefs and local speech, etc.
- 4: Walls and Moats (chengchi 城池) a history of the walls and moats of the prefectural and county cities.
- 5: Wards and Lanes (fang xiang 坊巷) a directory of the internal subdivisions of the counties of the prefecture.
- 6,7: Mountains (shan 山) location, literary accounts.
- 8: Waters (shui 水) i.e. lakes and watercourses.
- 9-11: Water Benefits (shuili 水利) a regional history of water control.
- 12-19: Field Taxes (tianfu 田賦) a broadly inclusive treatise on the history of cadastral surveys, population

registration, currency and corvee service, as well as the collection and remission of various kinds of tax.

20: Local Products (wuchan 物產) includes natural, agricultural, textile, metallurgical, etc.

21-24: Public Offices (gongshu 公署) a survey of public buildings, residences and parks, etc.

25-27: Schools (xuexiao 學校) includes official schools, private academies, and community schools.

28: Military System (junzhi 軍制) covering local military history as well as Qing military organization.

29-32: Townships and Subdivisions (xiangdu 鄉都) with its appendices, a detailed inventory of the subbureaucratic hierarchies of the prefecture.

33,34: Fords and Bridges (jinliang 津梁)

35: Antiquities (guji 古蹟)

36-38: Altars and Temples (tanmiao 壇廟) a survey of the history of important official and private cult sites.

39-44: Buddhist and Taoist Establishments (siguan 寺觀)

45-48: Homes, Gardens and Woods (dizhai yuanlin 第宅園林)

49-51: Tombs of the Illustrious (zhongmu 冢墓)

52-58: Officialdom (zhiguan 職官) lists and tables of local officials.

59-67: Civil Examination (xuanju 選舉) lists of successful candidates.

68-73: Famous Officials (minghuan 名宦) accounts of officials who served in Suzhou.

74-108: Humankind (renwu 人物) biographies of Suzhou notables.

- 109-110: The Arts (yishu 藝術) biographies
- 111-112: Peripatetics (liuyu 流寓) biographies
- 113-133: Classified (biographies of) Women (lienü 列女)
- 134-135: Monks and Taoist Priests (shidao 釋道)
- 136-139: Literature (yiwen 藝文)
- 140-142: Metal and Stone (jinshi 金石) i.e. collected inscriptions.
- 143: Prodigies (xiangyi 祥異)
- 144-149: Assorted Narratives (zaji 雜記)
- 150: Prefaces of Old Gazetteers (jiuxu 舊序)

14. COLLECTANEA

14.1 Collectanea. A substantial proportion of extant Chinese literature of all periods and genres has been preserved in the form of congshu 叢書 or collectanea. Since the appearance of the first of them in 1202, more than 2,800 have been published, and more appear every year. Altogether they represent a major resource for historical scholarship. They contain, among other things, officially and privately compiled history, classical commentaries, essays, and the collected works of individual writers (i.e. wenji 文集). In any library, but especially in one with small or modest holdings, much of the material required for a given project will be found only in the collectanea. Moreover, editions reproduced in the collectanea are often rare or no longer extant in any other form.

Collectanea vary greatly in size; some are of only a few volumes, while others comprise thousands of volumes. In general, the larger and more comprehensive should be consulted first, then smaller ones that are particularly rich in the kinds of material sought. In this endeavor help is indispensable. Some major sinological libraries have analyzed their congshu on their catalog cards title by title. Ordinarily, however, it is necessary to consult an index.

14.2 Comprehensive Congshu Index. ZHONGGUO CONGSHU ZONGLU

中國叢書綜錄 (Shanghai: Guji chubanshe, 1986), 3 vols. This is the best and most comprehensive index available. It indexes 2,797 different titles. Volume I includes: (1) A

listing of works by category, pp. 1-956; (2) a chart of holdings of major libraries in the People's Republic of China, pp. 957-1134; (3) titles listed by four corner number, pp. 1135-81; and (4) first characters listed by number of strokes. Volume II indexes the titles under the four categories of jing 經 shi 史 zi 子 ji 集 and by dynasty within categories. The categories are set out in the table of contents. Volume III includes: (1) a stroke index of characters giving the four corner numbers; (2) a pinyin index of characters giving the four corner numbers; (3) an index of titles arranged by four corner numbers, pp. 1-344; and (4) an index of authors arranged by four corner numbers, pp. 345-791.

14.3 Taiwan Congshu Index. An index to the congshu in Taiwan is Wang Baoxian 王寶先, TAIWAN GE TUSHU GUAN XIANCUN CONGSHU ZIMU SUOYIN 台灣各圖書館現存叢書子目索引 (San Francisco, 1975).

14.4 ZHONGGUO CONGSHU MULU JI ZIMU SUOYIN HUIBIAN 中國叢書目錄及子目索引彙編 (Nanjing: Nanjing University, 1982), comp. Shi Tingyong. This guide indexes 977 works not covered by the 1959 catalogue of the Shanghai Library. The contents are divided into two main sections: a topical indexing of titles and a title index by stroke giving the page number of the title's occurrence in the topical index.

14.5 Sibu beiyao. SIBU BEIYAO 四部備要, principal compiler Lu Feikui 陸費逵 (1886-1941), was published in a typeset edition in Shanghai in 1936 in 2,500 volumes. The Sibu of the title indicates that the contents are distributed according to the traditional "four epitomes" system of bibliographic

classification. The four in order are: jing 經 "classics," shi 史 "history," zi 子 or various schools of thought or religion, and ji 集, collective works. The titles are further subdivided under headings that roughly correspond to those of the SIKU QUANSHU ZONGMU TIYAO 四庫全書總目提要, which is the most important single Chinese critical bibliography. This collection is provided with a separate work in four volumes, the SIBU BEIYAO SHUMU TIYAO 四部備要書目提要 which reproduces critical notes on each work from the SIKU QUANSHU ZONGMU TIYAO and adds short biographies of the authors. There is also William C. Ju's GUIDE TO THE SSU-PU PEI-YAO. This provides a table of contents and an author index, keyed to the 1966 Taiwan reprint of the collection.

14.6 Sibu Congkan. SIBU CONGKAN 四部叢刊 in 2,112 volumes was published in Shanghai 1922-1929. A first supplement, the XUBIAN 續編 in 500 volumes, and a second, the SANBIAN 三編 in 510 volumes, were published in 1934 and 1935. In this collection, the works are facsimile reproductions of rare editions. The use of this collection is facilitated by Karl Lo, A GUIDE TO THE SSU-PU TS'UNG-K'AN, which includes a table of contents, a subject index, and a romanized author and title index.

14.7 Congshu Jicheng. CONGSHU JICHENG CHUBIAN 叢書集成初編 (Shanghai, 1931-1939) in 4,100 volumes. This is mostly a modern typeset and punctuated edition, with some texts in facsimile. For a table of contents, see Wang Yunwu 王雲五, CONGSHU JICHENG CHUBIAN MULU. The CONGSHU JICHENG JIANBIAN 叢書集成簡編 is an

abridged version of this collection, in 860 volumes.

14.8 Baibu Congshu Jicheng. BAIBU CONGSHU JICHENG 百部叢書集成 (Taipei, 1964 ff.), 6,000 volumes. This is a collection of facsimile reproductions of 101 congshu originally published in Song or later. Use of this set is complicated by the fact that some titles have been dropped from one or more of the congshu in order to eliminate duplication. The BAIBU CONGSHU JICHENG FENLEI MULU 百部叢書集成分類目錄 provides a list of the constituent congshu, and a subject-head table of the entire contents. A separate table of contents is provided in the first volume of each congshu.

14.9 Siku Quanshu. SIKU QUANSHU ZHENBEN CHUJI 四庫全書珍本初集 (facsimile edition of 1935) in 1,600 volumes. Second and third collections of 400 volumes each have been published in Taiwan in 1971 and 1972. These are surviving portions of the huge manuscript sets prepared under imperial auspices in the Qing.

14.10 Franke. W. Franke's, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY describes seventeen collectanea important for the study of Ming history. Three noteworthy titles are: JILU HUIBIAN 紀錄彙編 in 216 juan, compiled by Shen Jiefu 沈節甫 (1533-1601); JIEYUE SHANFANG HUICHAO 借月山房彙鈔 in 283 juan, edited by Zhang Haipeng 張海鵬 (1755-1816); and XUANLANTANG CONGSHU 玄覽堂叢書, in three series published in Shanghai and Nanjing, 1941-1948, 272 volumes, edited by Zheng Zhenduo 鄭振鐸 (1897-1958).

15. WRITINGS OF INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS (WENJI AND BIJI)

15.1 Collected Writings (Wenji). Wenji 文集, "collected writings," is a venerable form of Chinese publication. Early examples include the collected poems of Qu Yuan 屈原 and Tao Yuanming 陶淵明, which were compiled in the Han and Six Dynasties periods. The form and subject matter of wenji are almost infinitely various, which makes them both difficult to use, and impossible to ignore as sources of historical documentation. Kinds of work one can expect to find in many wenji include letters, occasional pieces (prose or poetry), prefaces, spirit-path inscriptions, diaristic accounts, eulogies, and essays on any subject whatever.

In approaching the wenji, one may find it convenient to begin by listing individuals who might be expected to have left documentation of the kinds being sought. It is usually relatively easy to determine whether the persons chosen are represented by extant wenji, and where these may be found. The more difficult task is the unavoidable one of searching through the wenji to identify useful material. The contents are ordinarily arranged by genre, rather than chronologically or by subject.

15.2 Location. When you want to find out whether a given wenji has been published in one or more congshu, or when you want to find out which wenji are contained in a given congshu, you may want to consult the ZHONGGUO CONGSHU ZONGLU. (See under COLLECTANEA, above.) Note that this work includes a union list

of congshu in libraries of the People's Republic of China, and author and title indexes. Another useful general tool is the SIKU QUANSHU ZONGMU TIYAO (see above under COLLECTANEA), jibu 集部 "Collected Writings Section." Here one may find bibliographic information and authoritative critical essays on many of the wenji.

15.3 Mingshi Yiwenzhi. MINGSHI YIWENZHI BUBIAN FUBIAN

明史藝文志補編附編 (Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1959). This work contains a comprehensive list of Ming Dynasty wenji and is provided with an index.

15.4 Guide to Holdings in Japanese Libraries. MINJIN BUNSHU

MOKUROKU 明人文集目錄 (Tokyo, 1966; revised 1978), compiled by Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫 and Ogawa Sho 小川尚, is a listing of Ming authors' wenji held in ten major Japanese libraries. One may conveniently consult this reference to find titles and editions of wenji containing the work of the authors in whom one is interested. The information in it is presented in tabular form.

Column 1: Author's name

Column 2: Titles of wenji and editions of these with the number of juan

Column 3: The number of bound volumes in each edition

Column 4: The year of publication or original preface of each edition

Column 5: The coded name (see preface for explanation) of the library in which a copy of each edition was found and, if the library's catalog was published, the page on which each title appears

Column 6: Miscellaneous information including juan missing from the listed copy and, if the copy was found in a congshu, the title of the latter.

This work is also provided with an index of author's surnames arranged alphabetically by Wade-Giles romanization.

15.5 Mingren Zhuanji Ziliao Suoyin. MINGREN ZHUANJI ZILIAO SUOYIN 明人傳記資料索引 (Taipei: National Central Library, 1965). This work (See above under "Names of Persons.") is also of great value for identifying wenji of Ming authors. It notes the published writings, if any, of each person listed, including wenji of a given author.

15.6 National Central Library: Rare Books. GUOLI ZHONGYANG TUSHUGUAN SHANBEN SHUMU 國立中央圖書館善本書目 (Taipei, 1967). An additional resource is the rare book catalogue of the National Central Library in Taipei. Many of the titles have been microfilmed by the Library of Congress. Others may be filmed on request by the National Central Library. Note that the rare book catalogue lists the wenji in the chronological order of the authors, which greatly facilitates the identification of potentially useful titles.

15.7 Scholars' Notebooks. The scholar's notebook (biji 筆記) became an important literary form in Tang and Song times. These are collections of brief notes or essays by a single author on whatever subject he thought curious, entertaining or important enough to be worth writing down. Some of the items constitute important documentation on events or conditions of the author's lifetime, while others may be useful or stimulating

comments on historical questions. Taken together, they present a rich and eclectic sampling of an author's mentality and cultural milieu. The notebook was not a traditional bibliographical category, which makes it difficult to identify works of the type in such standard references as the SIKU QUANSHU ZONGMU TIYAO. More information may be found in E. Wilkinson, THE HISTORY OF IMPERIAL CHINA: A RESEARCH GUIDE, pp. 173-75. Notebooks important for the study of the Ming founding are discussed at length in H. Franke, "Some Aspects of Chinese Private Historiography in the Thirteenth and Fourteenth Centuries" in W. G. Beasley and E. G. Pulleyblank, eds., HISTORIANS OF CHINA AND JAPAN, esp. pp. 116-17 and 125-29. Important Ming biji are listed in Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY, pp. 98-118.

15.8 Xie Guozhen. Xie Guozhen 謝國楨, MING-QING BIJI TANCONG 明清筆記談叢 (Collection of Essays on Ming and Qing biji; Shanghai, 1962) reviews selected biji including twenty-four compiled from the writings of Ming authors. For each title, the compiler provides information on editions, the life of the author, and a sampling of the contents.

15.9 CHUGOKU ZUIHITSU SAKUIN 中國隨筆索引 (Index to Chinese essays; Kyoto, 1954). This reference work indexes by title the contents of 160 biji. The arrangement is by kana readings of the first characters of titles. A table of kana readings has been provided. After each title of a note or essay, there is a one-character abbreviation of the title of the biji in which it can be found. The table of abbreviations (on pp. 6-10) also

provides the dynasty in which the notebook was compiled and the name of the author, which should simplify the reader's task in selecting material. In addition, at the back of the volume, there is a stroke and radical index to the first characters of the titles.

15.10 Saeki Tomi. Saeki Tomi 佐伯 富, CHUGOKU ZUIHITSU ZASSHO SAKUIN 中國隨筆雜著索引 (Kyoto, 1960), designed as a sequel to index 15.9 above, indexes another 46 biji.

15.11 Gu Yanwu. The most famous example of the biji genre is Gu Yanwu 顧炎武, RIZHILU 日知錄. Readily available and a delight to read, its topical and chronological breadth and high quality make it an important general reference.

15.12 Biji Collections. BIJI XIAOSHUO DAGUAN 筆記小說大觀 (Taipei, 1962) is a modern set of reprinted biji with a general table of contents. BIJI CONGBIAN 筆記叢編 (Taipei, 1969) is another modern set. There are many sequels.

15.13 Works by Women. Hu Wen Kai 胡文楷, LIDAI FUNÜ ZHUZUO KAO 歷代婦女著作考 (Shanghai: Guji chubanshe, 1985), 1114 pages, is organized chronologically with a four-stroke appendix beginning on p. 977. The entries typically have biographical information about the author, and then list her works, including some which are no longer extant. There is an appendix beginning on p. 843 or congshu containing writing by women.

16. ESSAYS ON STATECRAFT

16.1 Statecraft. Given the bureaucratic nature of the Chinese state and the official character of the Chinese elite it is only natural that a substantial literature exists dealing with "statecraft" (jingshi 經世) which might also be called the management of affairs or simply government. Much of this literature grew out of contemporary problems, discussions among officials about how to deal with the problems that faced them. Issues were often most clearly focused in memorials or other papers recommending or describing official action.

The categories under which problems were classified, and the solutions offered for dealing with them, were strongly influenced by historical precedent and ideological convictions. Consequently, the documentation of Ming statecraft tends to fall into conventional categories reflecting the prevailing preoccupations and assumptions of their authors and compilers. It is well to keep the traditional Chinese categories in mind when designing a research strategy.

16.2 Guide to Ming Essays on Statecraft. MINDAI KEISEIBUN BUNRUI MOKUROKU 明代經世文分類目錄 (A classified index to Ming period literature on statecraft; Tokyo: Toyobunko, 1986). This guide indexes eleven of the most prominent collections of Ming essays on statecraft. The body of the text, pp. 1-259, consists of numbered entries giving the author, the title of the essay and its location in the collections designated by a letter code. An index lists the entries each author wrote. The

authors' names are listed in the index according to the order of the Japanese syllabary.

The contents are organized under twenty-five topical headings roughly as follows:

- A. Ceremony and Ritual
- B. Calendar and Music
- C. Government
- D. Examinations and Recommendation
- E. Official System, Evaluation, Ministry of Personnel
- F. Enfeoffment, Rewards, Honorary Titles
- G. Evil Officials
- H. Finance and Commerce
- I. Currency
- J. Agriculture
- K. Transportation and Trade
- L. Mining
- M. Water conservancy and Waterways
- N. Construction and Weaving
- O. Civil Administration and Law Enforcement
- P. Administration
- Q. Foreign Relations and Tribute
- R. Schools, Education, Morals, Customs and Religion
- S. Military Affairs
- T. Military System
- U. Border Affairs, Barbarians and Piracy
- V. Emperor, Princes and Imperial In-laws
- W. Eunuchs

X. Geography and Publications

Y. Miscellaneous

16.3 Franke. Wolfgang Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY, contains several sections relevant to writings on statecraft. Section 5, pp. 119-175, lists collections of memorials; Section 6, pp. 176-200, lists works on political institutions; and Section 7, pp. 201-232, is devoted to works on foreign affairs and military organization.

16.4 Huang Ming Jingshi Wenbian. HUANG MING JINGSHI WENBIAN 皇明經世文編 (Chongzhen, i.e., 1628-1644, edition; reprinted Taipei: Guofeng chubanshe, 1964), 30 vols. Compiled by Chen Zilong 陳子龍 (1608-1647), et al. At 508 juan this is the greatest single collection on Ming statecraft. Its compilation was inspired by the late Ming Neo-Confucian reform movement, known as the Fushe 復社, which stressed practical statecraft over the more introspective philosophical emphasis of the Wang Yangming school.

The contents are arranged by author in chronological order from the beginning of the Ming. The first table of contents, vol. 1, pp. 185-280, lists the authors and the juan in which their writings occur. The second table of contents, vol. 1, pp. 281-576, and all of vol. 2, pp. 1-575, gives a detailed breakdown of the essays by each author arranged by genre such as song 頌 (paean), biao 表 (memorial), xu 序 (preface), yi 議 (proposal), ji 記 (note or account), ming 銘 (inscription), tiba 題跋 (comment), and the like. One problem with this table of contents is that the authors are listed by their literary

names and thus are difficult to identify. The entries are not keyed to the first table of contents which indicates the juan. However, the Taiwan editors have keyed the second table of contents to the volume and page numbers of the body of the text. In light of these difficulties it is advised that one use the index described in 16.2, above, to locate things.

17. ENCYCLOPEDIAS

17.1 Classification of knowledge. Several contributing causes may be suggested for the early, strong and continuing development of the encyclopedia as a literary form in China. First, when they addressed present problems, Chinese commonly supposed that such problems had been encountered before, and perhaps solved, by people wiser than they presumed themselves to be. Records of the past, therefore, were held to have prescriptive value. Second, the amount of material preserved by the Chinese, given their solicitude for their literary heritage, was immense. Earlier than most of the world's peoples, therefore, they were compelled to solve the problem of convenient access to their abundant literature. Third, there was in China a widespread impulse toward self-improvement through study. But if such study was to be of practical value, it had to be systematic, well organized.

For all these reasons, Chinese not only created libraries and produced catalogs, bibliographies, anthologies and vast collectanea, they also compiled encyclopedias, both general and specialized. The Chinese term for encyclopedia, leishu 類書, which might reasonably be translated "written texts topically arranged," neatly describes this genre. Whole or excerpted texts were selected and reproduced verbatim and arranged according to some rational order. Unlike the great Western encyclopedias, such as the BRITANNICAS, in which topics are arranged alphabetically, many of the great Chinese general

encyclopedias in their organization expressed an entire, integral world view, starting with such large categories as Heaven, Earth and Man, and continuing down through successive levels of subcategories. Encyclopaedias of this kind served the purpose of preservation, convenience of access, and rational order on a grand scale.

17.2 References. Information on Chinese encyclopedias may be found in the following places:

a. Teng and Biggerstaff. S. Y. Teng and K. Biggerstaff, AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF SELECTED CHINESE REFERENCE WORKS, 3rd edition (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1971). Section II, pp. 83-128, is devoted to encyclopedias.

b. Wilkinson. Endymion Wilkinson, THE HISTORY OF IMPERIAL CHINA: A RESEARCH GUIDE (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1973).

c. Cole. James H. Cole, UPDATING WILKINSON: AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF REFERENCE WORKS ON IMPERIAL CHINA PUBLISHED SINCE 1973 (New York: James H. Cole, 1991).

d. Franke. Wolfgang Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY (Kuala Lumpur: University of Malaya Press, 1968).

17.3 Shitong. SHITONG 十通 (Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1935-36), 10 vols., and index under title SHITONG SUOYIN 十通索引 (Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1937). This is a collection of traditional encyclopedic works dealing with government. Originally there were nine works grouped as tongdian, tongzhi and tongkao. Subsequently, a tenth Qing work

was added to the collection destroying the symmetry. The works are as follows:

<u>3 tongdian</u>	<u>juan</u>
TONGDIAN 通典	200
XU TONGDIAN 續通典	150
QINGCHAO TONGDIAN 清朝通典	100
<u>3 tongzhi:</u>	
TONGZHI 通志	200
XU TONGZHI 續通志	640
QINGCHAO TONGZHI 清朝通志	126
<u>4 tongkao:</u>	
WENXIAN TONGKAO 文獻通考	348
XU WENXIAN TONGKAO 續文獻通考	250
QINGCHAO WENXIAN TONGKAO	300
QINGCHAO XUWENXIAN TONGKAO	400

17.4 Contents. For an indication of the contents of these works, their authorship and the period of time covered by them, see the table in the front of the Index volume. The Index lists terms under the four-corner system using the first character as a main entry. Each listing gives page numbers of entries in the ten works. Following the four-corner index there is a stroke-count index which refers back to the main index both by four-corner number and by page and column. For more information on these works, see Teng and Biggerstaff, AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY, pp. 107-14.

17.5 Topical Arrangement. Yang Jialuo 楊家駱, ed., ZHONGGUO XUESHU LEIBIAN 中國學術類編 SHITONG FENLEI ZONGZUAN 十通分類總纂

in 30 ci (Taibei: Dingwen shuju, 1975) is a topical rearrangement of the contents of 17.3, above. The volumes are organized as follows:

<u>No.</u>	<u>Topic</u>	<u>Volume title</u>
1.	Front matter	qianbian
	Supplements 1 & 2	fulu yi, er
2.	Taxes	fugong lei
3.	Coinage	qianbi lei
	Population	hukou lei
	Labor obligations	zhiyi lei
4.	Levies	zhengque lei
5.	Grain purchase	shidi lei
	National expenditure	guoyong lei
6.	Examinations	xuanju lei
7.	Schools	xuexiao lei
8.	Officialdom, A	zhiguan lei, shang
9.	Officialdom, B	zhiguan lei, xia
10.	Ritual, 1	li lei, yi
11.	Ritual, 2	li lei, er
12.	Ritual, 3	li lei, san
13.	Ritual, 4	li lei, si
14.	Music, A	yue, shang
15.	Music, B	yue, xia
16.	Military affairs, A	ping lei, shang
17.	Military affairs, B	ping lei, xia
18.	Punishments	xing lei

19. Literature, A	yiwen lei, shang
20. Literature, B	yiwen lei, zhong
21. Literature, C	yiwen lei, xia
22. Emperors	dixi lei
23. Nobility	fengjian lei
24. Astronomy	tianwen lei
25. Omens	xiangyi lei
26. Geography, A	yudi lei, shang
27. Geography, B	yudi lei, xia
28. Frontiers	siyi lei
29. Foreign relations	waijiao lei
Communications	youzhuan lei
30. Occupations	shiye lei
Constitution	xianzheng lei
Supplement 3	fulu san

17.6 Taiping Yulan. Research in later Chinese history

sometimes requires the pursuit of a topic far back in time. The TAIPING YULAN 太平御覽, compiled by Li Fang 李昉 in early Song, is an early example of the organization of texts under topic and sub-topic headings, and the materials cited are arranged chronologically within categories defined by the kinds of sources used. All the texts are reproduced from pre-Song editions, and many are from works that have otherwise been lost. It has been provided with a modern index (HARVARD-YENCHING INSTITUTE SINOLOGICAL INDEX SERIES, vol. 23, INDEX TO T'AI P'ING YÜ LAN).

17.7 Yongle Dadian. Compilation of the YONGLE DADIAN 永樂大典

was ordered by the Yongle emperor in 1403 and was completed five years later by an army of over 2,000 scholars. Whole works were selected and arranged under topics arranged in order of rhyme. Containing approximately 23,000 juan in about 11,000 bound volumes, this was probably the largest of all Chinese encyclopedias. Only a few manuscript copies were made, and fragments totalling fewer than 1,000 juan are still extant. Most of these have been reprinted in a facsimile edition with a table of contents. Apart from its historical interest as an extraordinary imperial project, it is still of some value as a reference work.

17.8 Gu jin Tushu Jicheng. Largest of all the extant encyclopedias, and by far the most important for general reference is the GUJIN TUSHU JICHENG 古今圖書集成 in 10,000 juan. Organization is by main topic and three levels of sub-topics. The materials cited are arranged chronologically under eight categories by kind of source. The detailed table of contents and the modern indexes make this relatively easy to use despite its great size. A good guide to the use of this work is Lionel Giles, AN ALPHABETICAL INDEX TO THE CHINESE ENCYCLOPAEDIA (London: British Museum, 1911). (For Ming names see 3.22.)

This encyclopedia was first undertaken by a Chinese scholar in the service of a Manchu prince, but it was completed under the patronage of the Kangxi emperor. The entire work was set in movable copper type and printed in sixty copies in 1726. Two more editions were printed in the late nineteenth century, and the palace edition was reproduced in a facsimile edition in 1934.

17.9 Peiwen Yunfu. PEIWEN YUNFU 佩文韵府 (Encyclopedia of Phrases; Shanghai: Commercial Press, 1937) does not reproduce whole texts, but like a historical dictionary, cites each phrase in a number of different contexts. Originally published in 115 bound volumes, the palace edition is available in a reduced reproduction in six volumes. The phrases are arranged by the rhymes of their last characters, but the index prepared for the modern reprint is keyed to the first characters. The main value of this work is its comprehensiveness, which makes it a useful second step beyond a good historical dictionary.

C. MODERN SCHOLARSHIP

18. MING HISTORY JOURNALS

18.1 Specialized Journals. Among the tens of thousands of academic journals there are a handful devoted primarily to Ming History. Their appearance in recent decades is a reflection of the growth of scholarly interest in the period. In the United States there are now small journals, newsletters, or yearbooks for every period of Chinese history. Specialization is not limited to the United States as journals in Japan, Taiwan and the People's Republic of China attest.

18.2 Ming Studies. MING STUDIES. Semi-annual since 1975. Edited by William S. Atwell, History Department, Hobart and William Smith Colleges, Geneva, NY 14456. It is now devoted to articles and reviews, but note that earlier issues carry reports of work in progress, conferences, lists of dissertations, and translations of summaries of Japanese scholarship from SHIGAKU ZASSHI.

18.3 Late Imperial China. LATE IMPERIAL CHINA is published twice a year by the Johns Hopkins University Press. The Editorial Office is at the California Institute of Technology, Pasadena, CA 91125. From its inception until January 1985, it was known as CH'ING SHIH WEN-T'I. The name change reflects an expansion of its range as well as an escape from the awkwardness of the Wade-Giles romanization. Ming scholars should be aware that it regularly carries translations of SHIGAKU ZASSHI's annual reports on Ming-Qing studies in Japan.

18.4 Mindaishi kenkyu. MINDAISHI KENKYU 明代史研究 . Annual

since 1974. Edited by Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫. Published by Mindaishi kenkyukai, 22-11, Motoyoyogi, Shibuya-ku, Tokyo, Japan. Yamane Yukio is an eminent figure in the field of Ming history. Over the years he has produced a long list of bibliographies and research guides. In addition to articles by Japanese Ming specialists this journal also carries contribution by Chinese and Korean scholars as well as reports of conferences and other news of the field.

18.5 Mingshi yanjiu zhuankan. 明史研究專刊 (JOURNAL OF MING STUDIES). Annual since 1978. Published by Wu Chih-ho 吳智和, Journal of Ming Studies, 50-3 Kuang-wu Street, Lo-tung, I-lan, Taiwan. This journal carries articles by Taiwan scholars, reviews of works on Ming history, and appendices and news reports on Ming studies internationally. Selected articles have been brought together and republished under the title MINGSHI YANJIU LUNCONG 明史研究論叢, also edited by Wu Chih-ho.

18.6 Mingshi Yanjiu luncong. MINGSHI YANJIU LUNCONG 明史研究論叢. Irregular since 1982. Ming History Section, History Institute, Chinese Academy of Social Sciences. Published by Jiangsu Province Jiaoyu shudian. These are collections of articles by mainland Chinese authors along with some news of the field notes.

18.7 Mingshi yanjiu. MINGSHI YANJIU 明史研究 is an academic journal that has appeared once per year commencing in 1991. This is the principal vehicle for Ming history publication in the People's Republic of China, replacing 18.6 which appears to have been discontinued. Its editorial offices are at No. 6

Ritan Road, Jianguomenwai, Beijing 100020, i.e. the History Institute of the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences. In addition to articles it carries listings of all the articles on Ming history published in China in the previous year.

18.8 Zhongguo mingshi xuehui tongxun. ZHONGGUO MINGSHI XUEHUI TONGXUN 中國明史學會通訊 is a newsletter published by the secretariat of the Chinese Society for Ming History. The Society has convened scholarly conferences on Ming history since 1989. The first number of the newsletter appeared in February, 1990. It carried brief reports of conferences and other activities in the field.

19. SECONDARY LITERATURE IN WESTERN LANGUAGES

19.1 Secondary Literature. The bulk of modern Western language scholarly literature on Ming history is written in English. This is true even of some work done by scholars in non-English speaking countries such as Germany. Most of what we say here will concern literature in English and particularly scholarship in the United States, but you should be aware that the universe is larger. After English, German is probably the European language with the most to offer on Ming history. Russian would probably come in third.

19.2 Bibliography of Asian Studies. The BIBLIOGRAPHY OF ASIAN STUDIES is issued annually by the Association for Asian Studies as part of its publications package (which includes the JOURNAL OF ASIAN STUDIES, DISSERTATIONS ON ASIA, and the NEWSLETTER of the Association). Up through 1969 the BIBLIOGRAPHY appeared as the fifth number of the JOURNAL. Beginning in 1970 it appeared as a separate publication including work on Asia in Western languages for the preceding year. The BIBLIOGRAPHY includes books, journal articles, dissertations and chapters in collections of articles. Its contents are arranged by country and then by subject. A listing of books and journals analyzed appears in the front and an author index in the back. The BIBLIOGRAPHY OF ASIAN STUDIES is probably the most systematic and thorough source of information about Western language scholarship but it is inconvenient to use: division of the contents into annual volumes requires you to search each volume

separately. In recent years it has fallen behind in its coverage so that it cannot tell you what has been published in the last five years. Plans are afoot to cumulate the contents of this bibliography and to make them available on disc or through terminals.

19.3 Sinological Review. The REVUE BIBLIOGRAPHIQUE DE SINOLOGIE carries abstracts in French or English of current books and articles on China in all languages. The first series was published from 1955 to 1970. A new series of annual volumes was begun in 1983. The contents are topically arranged under the following headings: bibliography, history and social sciences, art and archaeology, literature, philosophy and religion, and history of science. This is a good place to get an international overview of significant scholarship. Indexes of authors and key words appear at the back. About 500 items are covered in each issue.

19.4 Historical Abstracts. A general sampling of articles, books, and dissertations in a wide range of languages including Chinese and Japanese can be found encapsulated in HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS. PART A: MODERN HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS 1450-1914. This work describes itself as a "bibliography of the world's historical literatures." It covers the world outside of North America. Its contents are organized geographically by country and alphabetically by author under each country heading. Subject and author indexes appear at the back of each volume. Indexes are cumulated every five years. HISTORICAL ABSTRACTS is available on CD ROM or online through computer networks.

19.5 Humanities Index. The HUMANITIES INDEX is a guide to periodical literature that has appeared in annual volumes since 1975. From 1966 to 1974 it appeared under the title SOCIAL SCIENCES AND HUMANITIES INDEX. Material for the years 1907-1965 is contained in 18 volumes entitled INTERNATIONAL INDEX. The contents of HUMANITIES INDEX consists of topically arranged citations of articles. Book reviews are listed in the back under the name of the author of the book, followed by the journal citation and the name of the reviewer. The SOCIAL SCIENCES INDEX is organized in the same manner as the HUMANITIES INDEX from which it was separated in 1975. It is far less useful for Ming history than the HUMANITIES INDEX.

19.6 Citation Indexes. The ARTS AND HUMANITIES CITATION INDEX is published annually. It is divided into three parts: a Source Index to authors and publications analyzed, a Citation Index listing all the articles and reviews cited, and a Subject Index arranged by key words. A citation index can tell you what works and authors are most frequently mentioned in the secondary literature. A SOCIAL SCIENCES CITATION INDEX is organized on the same principles. Entries are cumulated every five years. These materials are now available electronically through FIRST SEARCH.

20. SECONDARY LITERATURE IN JAPANESE

20.1 Japanese scholarship. Because of the close proximity and long cultural interaction of their country with China, Japanese scholars have paid particular attention to Chinese history. Outside of China itself the study of Ming history is most developed in Japan. Fortunately for scholars everywhere the Japanese have made strenuous efforts to make the fruits of their studies available to others by publishing numerous guides and bibliographies.

20.2 Books and Articles on Oriental Subjects. Begun in 1954 BOOKS AND ARTICLES ON ORIENTAL SUBJECTS (subtitled PUBLISHED IN JAPAN IN 19XX) has been issued annually by the Toho Gakkai (東方學會 Institute of Eastern Culture) in Tokyo. It is designed for the information of non-Japanese scholars. The contents are divided into books and articles. Entries are classified by subject matter and listed alphabetically under the subject headings. Authors names are given in romanization and characters and titles of works are given in Japanese with a rough English translation. For books, a table of contents or listing of chapters is provided. Festschrift contents are listed separately as articles. An author index is provided at the end.

20.3 Yamane Yukio: 1960. Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫 MINDAISHI KENKYU BUNKEN MOKUROKU 明代史研究文獻目錄 (Bibliography of research works on Ming History; Tokyo, 1960), 258 pp., is a broad overview of the secondary literature by one of the leading

authorities on Ming history. It included virtually all the important books and articles in Chinese and Japanese up to the time of its publication. More than 5,000 items arranged in subject categories make up the main body of the text. Five valuable indexes are included at the end: (1) a character index of Japanese author's names, (2) a romanized index of Japanese authors, (3) a romanized index of Chinese authors, (4) a romanized index of eminent Chinese of the Ming period, and (5) a romanized index of eminent Europeans. In all cases these indexes include Chinese characters in parentheses. Consequently this work is both an essential bibliography and a useful tool for looking up and converting names.

21.4 Yamane Yukio: 1993. Yamane Yukio, MINDAISHI KENKYU BUNKEN MOKUROKU 明代史研究文獻目錄 (A Classified Bibliography of Ming Studies in Japan; Tokyo, 1993) by including the Japanese entries in the preceding work offers a comprehensive bibliography of Japanese scholarship on Ming history from the end of the nineteenth century to 1992. The contents are classified under categories quite similar to those in the earlier work. Authors names are indexed according to their hiragana pronunciations pp. 257-292. A bibliography of Korean studies of Ming history follows, pp. 293-313.

20.5 Ming Studies in Japan 1961-1981. Richard T. Wang, MING STUDIES IN JAPAN 1961-1981: A CLASSIFIED BIBLIOGRAPHY, Ming Studies Research Series, No. 2 (Minneapolis: Ming Studies, 1985) is an effort to update the Japanese listings in Yamane Yukio's 1960 bibliography. The contents are topically arranged with an

alphabetically arranged index of author names at the back.

20.6 Shigaku Zasshi. The Japanese journal SHIGAKU ZASSHI 史學雜誌 has for a number of years carried annual essays on Japanese studies of Ming and Qing history in the preceding year. These essays, by leading historians, provide an invaluable entry into the Japanese scholarship. English translations of the essays have been carried by MING STUDIES and LATE IMPERIAL CHINA.

20.7 Fogel. Joshua A. Fogel, RECENT JAPANESE STUDIES OF MODERN CHINESE HISTORY (II): TRANSLATIONS FROM SHIGAKU ZASSHI FOR 1983-1986 (Armonk, New York: M.E. Sharpe, 1989). This volume brings together Fogel's translations from CH'ING-SHIH WEN-T'I and LATE IMPERIAL CHINA, adding characters and other material excluded from some of the journal versions.

20.8 Classified Bibliography. TOYOGAKU BUNKEN RUIIMOKU 東洋學文獻類目(Classified bibliography of literature on East Asian studies) has been published annually since 1940 by Institute of Humanistic Studies of Kyoto University 東京大學人文科學研究所. Recent issues include a comprehensive selection of items in Chinese, Japanese, Russian and Western European languages. Western language materials and entries include the location of review articles dealing with the books cited.

20.9 Collected Articles in Japanese. CHUGOKU KANKEI RONSETSU SHIRYO 中國關係論說資料 (Collected articles on China) has been issued annually since 1963. It comprises four volumes of photoreproduction of selected journal articles on China in

Japanese. Part 1 concerns philosophy and religion, 2 literature and language, and 3 and 4 history and social studies. The index lists the articles by title arranged in the order of the Japanese syllabary value of the reading of the first character. Pagination proceeds in both directions to accommodate articles printed in either direction. The index distinguishes between the two ends of the volume by using Chinese characters for one and Arabic numerals for the other.

20.10 Current Articles in Japanese. For recent articles in Japanese see ZASSHI KIJI SAKUIN 雜誌記事索引 (Japanese periodical index: humanities and social science; National Diet Library, quarterly). This publication offers continuous coverage of Japanese scholarship since 1947, topically arranged.

21. SECONDARY LITERATURE IN CHINESE

21.1 Chinese Secondary Literature. The scholarly literature on Ming history in Chinese reflects the changes in Chinese society in the twentieth century. Work from the early republican period shows a strong kinship in perspective and style to Classical Chinese. As academic journals appeared in the decades after 1911 Western scholarly conventions came into vogue. After 1949 scholarship on the mainland was radically transformed by Marxist perspectives and the influence of Russian academic practices. Scholarship on Taiwan during the same years reflected both a desire to preserve traditional practices (vertical text, right to left pagination) at the same time the content and perspective of research was being influenced by foreign, particularly American, models. As the century draws to a close Ming history scholarship appears to be moving in the direction of an international discourse.

21.2 Ming History to 1979. ZHONGGUO JIN BASHI NIAN MINGSHI LUNZHU MULU 中國近八十年明史論著目錄 (Bibliography of books and articles on Ming history in China for the last eighty years; Jiangsu: People's Publishing House, 1981), was prepared under the sponsorship of the History Institute of the Chinese Academy of Social Sciences. Its contents are arranged in the following sections: articles listed topically (1-314), books listed topically (314-334), surnames of authors and translators listed by stroke (334-341), index of authors and translators (342-387), table of periodicals covered listed by stroke (388-398),

supplement (399-434), Table of Contents in English (435-449).

21.3 Books to 1980. BASHI NIAN LAI SHIXUE SHUMU 八十年來史學書目 (Index of historical books in the last eighty years, 1900-1980; Beijing: Chinese Academy of Social Sciences, 1982 covers books published in China during the first eight decades of the twentieth century. The contents include more than 12,400 items listed according to topic. Each entry includes an entry number, the book title, author, publisher and year of issue. A stroke order list of authors is appended at the end, keyed to the entry number.

21.4 Yamane Yukio: 1960. Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫, MINDAISHI KENKYU MOKUROKU 明代史研究文獻目錄 (Bibliography of research works on Ming History; Tokyo, 1960), 258 pp., is a broad overview of the secondary literature by one of the leading authorities on Ming history. It included virtually all the important books and articles in Chinese and Japanese up to the time of its publication. More than 5,000 items arranged in subject categories make up the main body of the text. Five valuable indexes are included at the end: (1) a character index of Japanese author's names, (2) a romanized index of Japanese authors, (3) a romanized index of Chinese authors, (4) a romanized index of eminent Chinese of the Ming period, and (5) a romanized index of eminent Europeans. In all cases these indexes include Chinese characters in parentheses. Consequently this work is both an essential bibliography and a useful tool for looking up and converting names.

21.5 Union Catalogue to 1968. GENDAI CHUGOKU KANKEI CHUGOKU

BUNKEN SOGO MOKUROKU 現代中日關係中國語文獻總合目錄 (Union catalogue of Chinese literature on modern China; Tokyo, 1967), 8 vols., includes 36,000 books in major Japanese collections published between 1912 and 1965. The supplement, 1969-1970, 2 vols., brings the coverage up to 1968. The contents are arranged according to the Japanese on reading of the first character of the title. The volumes are divided as follows: 1-3, social science; 4, natural science; 5-6, humanities; 7, author index; 8, various indexes to characters in titles.

21.6 Articles to 1962. Ping-kuen Yu 余秉權, CHINESE HISTORY: INDEX TO LEARNED ARTICLES, 1902-1962 中國史學論文引得 (Hong Kong, 1963), is a two volume set. The first volume is based on works available in Hong Kong. The core of the work (41-411) are entries of historical articles by 3,392 authors listed by stroke order in the author's name and providing location in a periodical. Other items included are: a list of periodicals by stroke (1-22), periodicals by romanized title (23-40), an index of periodicals showing dates of issues (413-475), a subject index (477-567), an index to pen names (569), and a list of Chinese names of Western authors of articles in Chinese. The second volume provides similar information based on the holdings of American and European libraries covering the years 1905-1964. It gives romanized and character entries and dates of runs for 599 periodicals (26-60) and a list of works in Chinese by Japanese, Korean and Western authors (673-690). Both volumes contain explanatory material in both Chinese and English.

21.7 Pre-1937 Articles. ZHONGGUO SHIXUE LUNWEN SUOYIN

中國史學論文索引 (Index to Chinese historical literature; Beijing, 1957), 2 vols., is the product of collaboration between institutions in Beijing under the leadership of the Chinese Academy of Sciences. It contains material from the period 1900-1937. More than 30,000 items are classified and entered by title. The entries lack page numbers.

21.8 Taiwan Index to 1970. ZHONGGUO JIN ERSHI NIAN WENSHIZHE LUNWEN FENLEI SUOYIN 中國近二十年文史哲論文分類索引 (Classified index to Chinese literature in the humanities in the last twenty years; Taipei, 1970), was issued by the National Central Library 中央圖書館 covering journals in Taiwan and Hong Kong. Its contents include: listing of 23,626 items under topical categories (1-732), an index of surnames (732-733), an author index by stroke (733-830), and journal titles by stroke showing years covered (831-852).

21.9 Current Articles: Taiwan. For access to recent periodical literature on Ming history in Taiwan periodicals see ZHONGHUA MINGUO QIKAN LUNWEN SUOYIN 中華民國期刊論文索引 (Index to Chinese periodical literature; Taipei: National Central Library, quarterly since 1970). The contents are topically arranged.

21.10 Current Articles: PRC. For listings of articles in mainland publications see BAKAN ZILIAO SUOYIN: LISHI, DILI 報刊資料索引: 历史, 地理 (Index to periodical literature: history, geography; Beijing: People's University, annual volumes). The entries are classified topically and include: author, title, periodical (place of publication), date, number, pages. Parallel series exist for other academic disciplines.

22. DISSERTATIONS

22.1 Dissertations. Doctoral dissertations define the frontiers of knowledge in the sense that each is intended to make an original contribution to knowledge. By the time a dissertation is completed the author usually knows more about the topic than anyone else in the world. In order to avoid duplication of effort topics of proposed dissertations are registered by students at the time the work is undertaken.

After completion, dissertations are often revised and printed as articles or monographs. The acceptance of a dissertation by a degree granting institution and the deposit of a copy in its library or archives makes the author's scholarly contribution available to the world. Copies of dissertations can normally be obtained by interested scholars at a minimal cost.

22.2 Dissertations 1945-1970. Leonard H.D. Gordon and Frank J. Shulman, comp. and ed., DOCTORAL DISSERTATIONS ON CHINA: A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF STUDIES IN WESTERN LANGUAGES, 1945-1970, Association for Asian Studies Reference Series, No. 1 (Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1972) gives a comprehensive listing, including Russian language titles, for the period indicated. Historical entries are listed by period, others topically. The back matter includes information on how to obtain copies, an author index, an institutional index, and a subject index. A listing of titles relevant to the study of Ming history may be found in Roland L. Higgins, "Doctoral

Dissertations on the Ming Dynasty," MING STUDIES 1: 36-59 (1975).

22.3 Dissertations 1971-1975. Frank Joseph Shulman, comp. and ed., DOCTORAL DISSERTATIONS ON CHINA, 1971-1975: A BIBLIOGRAPHY OF STUDIES IN WESTERN LANGUAGES (Seattle: University of Washington Press, 1978) was published as a supplement to 21.2, above. Ming history titles are excerpted in MING STUDIES 8: 9-17 (1979).

22.4 Doctoral Dissertations on Asia. Following the publication of the two volumes above Frank Joseph Shulman undertook to compile and edit DOCTORAL DISSERTATIONS ON ASIA: AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHICAL JOURNAL OF CURRENT INTERNATIONAL RESEARCH (Published for the Association for Asian Studies) starting in 1975. Later issues include dissertations in non-Western languages, most notably Chinese titles from Taiwan and the People's Republic of China. The 1991 issue (copyright 1992) lists as forthcoming a volume by Shulman entitled DOCTORAL DISSERTATIONS ON CHINA AND ON INNER ASIA, 1976-1990: BIBLIOGRAPHY OF STUDIES IN WESTERN LANGUAGES.

22.5 Dissertation Abstracts. For comprehensive listings of doctoral dissertations see DISSERTATION ABSTRACTS and DISSERTATION ABSTRACTS INTERNATIONAL. These titles are published by University Microfilms at the University of Michigan which acts as a general clearing house. Dissertations are assigned numbers by which they may be ordered. The abstracts are brief descriptions of the contents which can help you decide if the dissertation is worth ordering. Much of this information

is now available on computer discs (CD ROM) and can be searched by author, title, subject or key words at a work station.

22.6 Microfilms. Microfilms and bound xerox copies of most American dissertations are available from University Microfilms International, Dissertation Information Service, 300 North Zeeb Road, Ann Arbor, MI 48106.

23. LIBRARIES AND ARCHIVES

23.1 Searching for Sources. Identifying relevant sources is one part of any research project, finding them is quite another. In most cases the wonders of the modern information age - interlibrary loans, microfilm, xerox, online computer networks, and fax - may make it easy to obtain needed books and documents. In some cases, however, it may be necessary to travel to archives, to encamp for weeks or months, to earn the confidence of archivists and gain access to the treasures they guard.

For a big project, such as a dissertation, you should think globally and be prepared to travel any distance to obtain the materials you need. Here we can only mention a few of the obvious places to think about. This is by no means an exhaustive list. Often the contents of the collection may be surveyed locally through a printed catalog, specialized bibliography, or, increasingly, a computer terminal linked to an on-line catalogue of holdings.

23.2 Library of Congress. The Library of Congress has the largest collection of traditional Chinese sources in the United States. Its published catalog, FAR EAST LANGUAGES CATALOG (Boston: G.K. Hall, 1972), 22 vols., consists of large pages reproducing the catalogue cards, alphabetically arranged in Wade-Giles romanization. Despite the wealth of its collection the Library of Congress is neither convenient nor cheap to use. The best strategy is to find out what the L.C. has, but to turn

to it last for those things you cannot locate elsewhere. The person to write to there for help is: Mi Chu Wiens, Area Specialist, Chinese and Korean Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20540. For microfilms write directly to the Photoduplication Services at the Library.

23.3 Harvard. The Harvard Yen-ching Library at Harvard University is the strongest East Asian collection after the Library of Congress. The card catalogue of the collection has been published as the CATALOG OF THE HARVARD-YENCHING LIBRARY: CHINESE CATALOG (New York: Garland Publishing, 1986), 28 vols. Its cards, too, are in the Wade-Giles romanization. For microfilms contact Ms. C.Y. Hu, Harvard Yen-ching Library, 2 Divinity Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02138.

23.4 Princeton. Because Princeton has long been the leading center of Ming studies in the United States its library is particularly strong in Ming materials. It is the best place to go if you want access to a complete set of Ming gazetteers, for instance. For information contact C.K. Wang, Chinese Bibliographer, Gest Oriental Library, 317 Palmer Hall, Princeton University, Princeton, NJ 08544.

23.5 Chicago. The University of Chicago Library has the strongest sinological collection in the Midwest. Its catalogue has appeared in several pieces under the title CATALOGS OF THE FAR EASTERN LIBRARY, UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO: AUTHOR-TITLE CATALOG OF THE CURRENT COLLECTION (Boston: G.K. Hall, 1973), 7 vols., FIRST SUPPLEMENT (1981), 4 vols.; JAPANESE COLLECTION: AUTHOR-TITLE (1973), 4 vols., FIRST SUPPLEMENT (1981) 4 vols.;

SUBJECT INDEX (1973), 6 vols. The current curator of the East Asian Collection, Tai-loi Ma is a Ming scholar and an authority on Ming bibliography.

23.6 Michigan. The University of Michigan Library is one of the largest collections in the Midwest. For a partial list of holdings see CATALOG OF THE ASIA LIBRARY, THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, ANN ARBOR: CHINESE CATALOG (Boston: G.K. Hall, 1978), 25 vols. The Michigan collection is particularly strong in Japanese works. For some years Michigan has given grants to assist scholars traveling there to use the collection.

23.7 Berkeley The University of California at Berkeley has the best collection of traditional Chinese materials on the west coast. The catalog of its collection is somewhat confusing to use. The first part, EAST ASIAN LIBRARY, UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY: SUBJECT CATALOGUE (Boston: G.K. Hall, 1968), 6 vols., is alphabetically arranged. The AUTHOR-TITLE CATALOGUE (1968), 12 vols., is arranged by radical of Chinese characters. There are later supplements.

23.8 National Central Library. The National Central Library in Taiwan is located in a new building in the heart of Taipei. The address is 20 Chung-shan South Road, Taipei, Taiwan, Republic of China. It houses a major collection of traditional Chinese books as well as strong holdings of modern scholarship. It has an on-line catalogue.

23.9 Center for Chinese Studies. The Center for Chinese Studies 漢學研究中心, 20 Chung-shan South Road, Taipei, Taiwan, Republic of China publishes a Newsletter for Research in

Chinese Studies as well as bibliographies and guides useful to scholars. Telephone: 886-2-314-7321; Fax: 886-2-371-2126. The Center offers aid to scholars wishing to do research in Taiwan.

23.10 Academia Sinica. The Academia Sinica 中央研究所, i.e. the Chinese Academy of Sciences, is located in Nankang on the outskirts of Taipei. It is divided into specialized institutes of which the Institute of History and Philology 歷史語言研究所 is most relevant to the study of Ming history. The Institute's Fu Ssu-nien Library 傅斯年圖書館 has many resources worth exploring.

23.11 National Palace Museum. The National Palace Museum 故宮博物院, located in the suburbs of Taipei houses the bulk of the Qing Dynasty imperial art collection. In addition to art treasures this collection is rich in rare books and manuscripts such as illustrated gazetteers, surviving calligraphy of the Ming founder and the archives of the Qing Grand Council (junji chu 軍機處). The Museum receives millions of visitors from around the world and is used to handling requests from scholars.

23.12 Diet Library. Japan's equivalent of the Library of Congress is the Kokuritsu kokkai toshokan. Its catalogue, KOKURITSU KOKKAI TOSHOKAN ZOSHO MOKUROKU 國立國會圖書館藏書目錄 (Tokyo, 1960-66), 4 vols., covers the years 1948-58. Humanities topics are covered in volumes 1 and 4. An earlier catalogue from the same library (under its former name) is the TEIKOKU TOSHOKAN, KOKURITSU TOSHOKAN WA-KAN TOSHO BUNRUI MOKUROKU

帝國圖書館國立圖書館和漢圖書分類目錄 (Classified Catalogue of

Japanese and Chinese Books in the Imperial Library; Tokyo, 1964) covering the years 1941-49. Of course there are more recent catalogues. Requests for microfilm copies should be sent to: Ichio Hasegawa, Takahashi Information System Co. Ltd., 2-3-1 Shinkawa, Shuo-ku, Tokyo 104 Japan. Fax: 03-3351-6428.

23.13 Naikaku Bunko. The Naikaku Bunko (Cabinet Library) in Japan has a catalogue of Chinese books: NAIKAKU BUNKO KANSEKI BUNRUI MOKUROKU 内閣文庫漢籍分類目錄 (Catalogue of Chinese books in the Naikaku Bunko; Tokyo, 1956; revised 1971).

23.14 Toyo Bunko. The Toyo Bunko 東洋文庫 is a specialized research library in Tokyo. Its collection of Chinese works is separately catalogued as KANSEKI BUNRUI MOKUROKU 漢籍分類目錄 (Tokyo, 1967), divided into the four classic categories of Chinese literature.

23.15 Kyoto. Sinological scholarship in Japan tends to be organized around Tokyo and Kyoto. The heart of Chinese studies in Kyoto is the Jimbun Kagaku kenkyujo 人文科學研究所 at Kyoto University. It is a specialized research institute with its own library and reading rooms. Its catalogue is KYOTO DAIGAKU JIMBUN KAGAKU KENKYUJO KANSEKI BUNRUI MOKUROKU 京都大學人文科學研究所漢籍分類目錄 (Catalogue of the Chinese books in the Research Institute for Humanistic Studies of Kyoto University; Kyoto, 1964-65), 2 vols.

23.16 Beijing Library. The Beijing Library 北京圖書館 is the major central library of the People's Republic of China. It has recently moved into a new building. The rare book collection is catalogued in BEIJING TUSHUGUAN GUJI SHANBEN SHUMU 北京圖書館

古籍善本書目 (Beijing, 1987), 5 vols., divided into the classic four categories. Be aware, as well, that there is a national bibliography of rare books, the QUANGUO GUJI SHANBEN SHUMU 中國古籍善本書目 .

23.17 Ming-Qing Archives. The Ming-Qing dang'anbu 明清檔案部, also known as the Number One Archives, is the primary repository for government documents from the Ming and Qing dynasties. The archives are housed in a complex of buildings along the western side of the Palace (Gugong 故宮) in Beijing. The bulk of this collection concerns the Qing Dynasty. For more details see Frederic Wakeman, Jr., ed., MING AND QING HISTORICAL STUDIES IN THE PEOPLE'S REPUBLIC OF CHINA, China Research Monograph No. 17 (Berkeley: University of California Center for Chinese Studies, 1980), pp. 45-60.

23.18 Shanghai. The Shanghai Library 上海圖書館 was the recipient of many of the traditional books brought together from private libraries after Liberation. Many of these holdings are listed in its GUJI ZONGMULU (古籍總目錄 General catalogue of old books, 1958).

23.19 Genealogical Library. In Utah the Mormon Church has inspired an effort to collect genealogical information on the whole world. This has led to comprehensive filming of Chinese clan records, local gazetteers and many other types of records on a scale never seen before. Much of the contents of these collections is classified in a microfilm card catalogue (MCC) and efforts to automate the Chinese portions of the Asian catalogue have been underway for some time. More information is

available from the Family History Library, 35 N. West Temple, Salt Lake City, UT 84150. See also Ted A. Terford, Melvin Thatcher, and Basil Yang, CHINESE GENEALOGIES AT THE GENEALOGICAL SOCIETY OF UTAH: AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY (Tokyo: Kondo shuppansha, 1988).

23.20 Bell Collection. Mention should be made here of non-Chinese sources for the study of Ming history. One case in point is the James Ford Bell Library, a special collection of works on European travel and exploration prior to 1800 housed on the fifth floor of O. Merideth Wilson Library at the University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, MN 55455. The Bell Library contains a number of rare books and manuscripts in Latin and other Western languages describing early European impressions of China. Students should be aware that many more such materials remain to be exploited, particularly in the Vatican in Rome. Descriptions of Ming China are also known to exist in Asian languages, particularly in Arabic.

23.21 On-line Access. Access to the catalogs of most North American, European, Taiwan and Japanese libraries is available through the Internet, via Gopher, the World Wide Web, and other systems.

23.22 On-line Discussion Groups. There are several on-line discussion groups of interest to Ming historians. As of this writing (1994) one could subscribe to Chinanet by sending a request to LISTPROC@LISTS.PRINCETON.EDU. You may send messages to the list at CHINA@LISTS.PRINCETON.EDU. A second list, H-ASIA, may be subscribed to at LISTSERV@uicum.uic.edu.

D. VOCABULARY AND NOTES

DOCUMENT 1. A Month in 1378 (MING TONGJIAN).

This first selection is taken from a chronological account of political history during the Ming Dynasty. It is not a primary source, but a nineteenth century compilation of excerpts from other works. The entries cover a wide range of subjects. The advantage of this text is its accessibility: it is typeset, punctuated, names and book titles are marked, and the nearest Western year is indicated in the margin. Furthermore, the kaoyi 考異 (investigation of variations) can alert you to problems and the citation of sources used can give you an idea of where to go for additional information. The original work compiled by Xia Xie 夏燮 (1799-1875?), ca. 1870, 90 juan with supplements of 4 juan at the front and 6 juan at the back to cover the periods before and after the dynasty, has been reprinted in a modern edition, XIN JIAO MING TONGJIAN 明通鑑 (Taipei: Shijie shuju, 1962), 6 vols. This passage is taken from volume 1, pp. 358-62, covering the eleventh year of the first emperor's reign.

明通鑑	Ming tongjian	<u>Comprehensive mirror of the Ming</u> , a Ming chronological history by [Qing] Xia Xie, 90 <u>juan</u>
卷六	juan liu	sixth <u>juan</u>
紀六	ji liu	sixth "basic annals"
太祖	Taizu	Ming Taizu, Zhu Yuanzhang (1328-98), founding emperor of the Ming
洪武	Hongwu	Ming Taizu's reign title (1368-98)

戊午	wuwu	the cyclical characters for the eleventh year of the Hongwu period (January 29, 1378-January 18, 1379)
正月	zhengyue	first month of the year
甲戌	jiaxu	eleventh in the cycle of sixty pairs. Here it designates the first day of the month.
朔	shuo	first day of the month
封	feng	enfeoff, grant a title (action by the emperor). Important ceremonial and political events were frequently reserved for the beginning of a new year.
皇子	huangzi	emperor's son
椿	Chun	Zhu Chun, Ming Taizu's eleventh son. Note that the names of all his sons are written with the wood radical.
蜀王	Shuwang	Prince of Shu whose fief was at Chengdu
柏	Bo	Zhu Bo, Taizu's twelfth son
湘王	Xiangwang	Prince of Xiang with fief at Jingzhou
桂	Gui	Zhu Gui, Taizu's thirteenth son
豫王	Yuwang	Prince of Yu. In 1392 he was redesignated the Prince of Dai and enfeoffed at Datong
模	Ying	Zhu Ying, Taizu's fourteenth son
漢王	Hanwang	Prince of Han. In 1392 his fief was

		moved to Gansu and his title changed to Su.
植	Zhi	Zhu Zhi, Taizu's fifteenth son
衛王	Weiwang	Prince of Wei. In 1392 he became the Prince of Liao at Guangning. All of these early shifts were part of a program to strengthen border defenses.
改封	gaifeng	change the enfeoffment of
吳王	Wuwang	Prince of Wu, originally enfeoffed 1370
楠	Su	Zhu Su, Taizu's fifth son
周王	Zhouwang	Prince of Zhou, fief at Kaifeng
罷	ba	disband, do away with
護衛	huwei	Escort Guard, assigned to protect a princely establishment
己卯	jimao	sixth day of the month (February 3)
進封	jinfeng	raise (promote) the enfeoffment of
湯和	Tang He	an important general (1326-1395)
信國公	Xin Guogong	Xin Dynastic Duke. <u>Xin</u> implies a virtue like trustworthiness. <u>Guogong</u> implies a close tie to the ruling house. This title does not refer to a fief as in the case of the princes.
是月	shiyue	this month
徵	zheng	summon
天下	tianxia	empire, realm (lit. all under heaven)

布政使	buzheng shi	Provincial Administration Commissioner
知府	zhifu	Prefect
來朝	laichao	come to pay court
上	shang	the emperor
謂	wei	say to
廷臣	tingchen	court officials
古	gu	in antiquity
方伯	fangbo	Regional Earl
職	zhi	official post
刺史	cishi	Regional Inspector
所以…者	suoyi...zhe	those are the persons who are placed for the purpose of
承流宣化	chengliu xuanhua	carry on the cultural tradition and spread education
撫安吾民	fuan wumin	placate our people
然	ran	however
得人	deren	get the right men
則	ze	then. The particle <u>ze</u> creates a logical relationship between the preceding and following phrases on the order of "if A then B"
治	zhi	achieve great order
不	bu	otherwise (<u>deren</u> is implied)
察官尸位	guanguan shiwei	neglect official duties and occupy a position like a corpse
病吾民	bing wumin	harm my people

多	duo	very much
朕	zhen	I [the emperor]
之	zhi	them
使識	shi shi	make (them) know
朝廷	chaoting	court, imperial government
治體	zhiti	fundamental principles
以	yi	in order to
傲	jing	warn against
玩愒之心	wanjie zhixin	any thought of frittering away time
且	qie	moreover
以	yi	by means
詢察言行	xuncha yanxing	investigate and inquire (their) words and deeds
考其治績	kao qi zhiji	examine their administrative achievements
覘其能否	zhan qi nengpi	observe their capability and incompetence
苟	gou	if
治效有成	zhixiao youcheng	efficacy in governing has been achieved
何憂不治	heyou buzhi	What worry is there that (the world) will not be well governed?
以…爲…	yi...wei...	appoint ... as ...
寶鈔司	baochao si	Paper Money Bureau
提舉	tiju	Supervisor
費震	Fei Zhen	person's name
戶部	hubu	Ministry of Revenue

侍郎	shilang	Vice Minister
禮部	libu	Ministry of Rites
員外郎	yuanwai lang	Vice Director of a bureau (<u>si</u>)
朱夢炎	Zhu Mengyan	person's name
本部	benbu	this (same, original) ministry
兵部	bingbu	Ministry of War
郎中	langzhong	Director of a bureau
陳銘	Chen Ming	person's name
吏部	libu	Ministry of Personnel
尚書	shangshu	Minister
諭	yu	issue an imperial edict
懸爵祿	xuan jue lu	offer noble rank and emolument
待	dai	await; treat
士	shi	able persons, gentlemen, scholars
資格	zige	seniority, regular official promotion system based on service time
爲…設	wei...she	established for...
常流	changliu	ordinary people
賢才	xiancai	worthy and talented persons
豈	qi	How could it be...? (an interrogative particle implying a conflicting or dissenting view or answer)
拘	ju	confined, restricted, restrained
常例	changli	regular regulations
一時	yishi	for a moment
超擢者	chaozhuo zhe	those who are promoted exceptionally
尋	xun	soon

進	jin	promote
考異	kaoyi	investigation of variants
按	an	note
明史	Ming shi	the official <u>Ming History</u>
傳	zhuan	biography
孫氏	Sun shi	Sun Chengze (1593-1675), from Yidu, Shandong
春明夢餘錄	Chunming mengyu	
	lu	A work in 70 <u>juan</u> , consisting of notes on the Ming capital, Beijing
並	bing	also
引	yin	cite, quote
張江陵集	Zhang Jiangling	
	ji	<u>Collected Works of Zhang Jiangling</u> , i.e. the Grand Secretary Zhang Juzheng (1525-1582)
證之	zhengzhi	verify it (from)
潛菴史稿	Qian'an shigao	<u>Draft History by Qian'an</u> , 20 <u>juan</u> , a Ming history by [Qing] Tang Bin
披沙	pisha	spread the sand
將以	jiangyi	about to
求金	qiujin	pick (seek) the gold
掘井	juejing	dig a well
在于	zaiyu	(the purpose) lies in
獲泉	huoquan	get a spring
薦士	jianshi	recommend talented persons
期于	qiyu	expect to

得賢	dexian	obtain worthies
名實不副	mingshi bufu	reputation and reality do not match
視為具文	shiwei juwen	regard as mere empty words
豈	qi	Could it be that ...?
昧于識人	meiyu shiren	blind in appraising persons
抑	yi	or
果	guo	really, if really
難得	nande	hard to obtain
令	ling	order
有司	yousi	responsible offices
悉心	xixin	with one's entire mind
詢訪	xunfang	investigate, look for
務求真才	wuqiu zhencai	be sure to seek true talents
以禮敦遣	yili dunqian	earnestly urge with rituals
茂州	Maozhou	a subprefecture in Chengdu Prefecture, Sichuan
蠻	Man	"barbarians" in the south (contemptuous term applied to southern ethnic minorities)
作亂	zuoluan	rebel, start an uprising
指揮	zhihui	Commander
胡淵	Hu Yuan	person's name
討平	taoping	quell, suppress
初	chu	previously
土酋	tuqiu	local chieftain
楊者七	Yang Zheqi	person's name
來貢	laigong	come to pay tribute

權	quan	provisional, acting
知州	zhi zhou	subprefectual magistrate
事	shi	duties
會	hui	at that time
都司	dusi	Regional Military Commission
遣兵	qianbing	send troops
修	xiu	repair
灌縣	Guanxian	a district in Chengdu Prefecture
橋梁	qiaoliang	bridges
至	zhi	arrive at
陶關	Taoguan	a pass to the north of Guanxian
汶川	Wenchuan	a district of Maozhou, near Taoguan in the north
孟道貴	Meng Daogui	person's name
集	ji	gather
部落	buluo	tribes
邀阻	yaozu	intercept and block
關道	guandao	road through the pass
童勝	Tong Sheng	person's name
分兵二道	fenbing erdao	divide troops into two parts [one from north, one from south]
擊	ji	attack
由	you	via, through
石泉	Shiquan	a district of Longan Prefecture, Sichuan, to the north of Maozhou
灌口	Guankou	a place in Guanxian
進次	jinci	arrive at, reach

伏…間	fu...jian	lie in ambush in...
投石崖下	toushi yaxia	throw stones off a cliff
適	shi	it happened that
土官	tuguan	tribal officials
來降	laixiang	come to surrender
間道	jiandao	out-of-the-way path, short cut
大破	dapo	completely destroy
敗	bai	defeat
迎降	yingxiang	come out and surrender
承制	chengzhi	receive the imperial decree
置	zhi	establish
茂州衛	Maozhou wei	Maozhou Guard
留	liu	detain, remain, stay
楚華	Chu Hua	person's name
壬午	renwu	tenth day of the month (April 7, 1378)
奏事	zoushi	represent matters to the throne
毋	wu	shall not
關白	guanbai	report
中書省	zhongshu sheng	Secretariat
于是	yushi	at this
始	shi	begin
疑	yi	suspect
胡惟庸	Hu Weiyong	Grand Councilor of the Secretariat
秦王	Qinwang	Prince of Qin, enfeoffed at Xi'an
煥	Shuang	Zhu Shuang, Taizu's second son
晉王	Jinwang	Prince of Jin, enfeoffed at Taiyuan

綱	Gang	Zhu Gang, Taizu's third son
之	zhi	go to
國	guo	princely establishment
賜	ci	bestow
璽書	xishu	sealed letter
關內	guannei	area to the west of [Tong] Pass
自	zi	since
元氏	Yuanshi	the Yuan ruling house
失政	shizheng	misrule
不勝其敝	busheng qi bi	cannot bear the maladministration
定	ding	pacify
轉輸之勞	zhuanshu zhilao	hardship of transportation
休息	xiuxi	rest
爾	er	you
宮室	gongshi	palaces
完	wan	finished
不急之務	buji zhiwu	no urgent matter
悉	xi	all
已	yi	stop
就藩	jiufan	go to the princely establishment
中道	zhongdao	on the way
答	chi	beat
膳夫	shanfu	cook
馳	chi	(send an emissary) swiftly on horseback
諭	yu	instruct
率	shuai	lead

群英	qunying	a host of heroes
平	ping	pacify
禍亂	huoluan	disastrous disorder
姑息	guxi	lax, indulgent
獨	du	only
徐興祖	Xu Xingzu	person's name
事	shi	serve
未嘗	weichang	never
折辱	zheru	humiliate
怨	yuan	hatred, enmity, resentment
在	zai	determined by, dependent on
小子	xiaozhi	young man, my boy
識	shi	know, realize, have ... in mind
時	shi	at that time
燕	Yan	Prince of Yan, Zhu Di (1360-1424), Taizu's fourth son, enfeoffed at Beiping. He seized the throne in 1402, with the reign title of "Yongle."
楚	Chu	Prince of Chu, Zhu Zhen, Taizu's sixth son, enfeoffed at Wuchang
齊	Qi	Prince of Qi, Zhu Fu, Taizu's seventh son, enfeoffed at Qizhou
駐	zhu	stay
鳳陽	Fengyang	seat of Fengyang Prefecture. The Ming founder's home, site of his ancestral tombs.

俟命	siming	wait for order
定制	dingzhi	establish the regulation
詣辭	yici	pay a visit and say good-bye to
皇陵	huangling	imperial mausoleums
…而后	... erhou	after ...
行	xing	leave
各官	geguan	each official
朝覲	chaojin	come to pay court
課	ke	rank
殿最	dianzui	low and high ratings
稱職無過	chenzhi wuguo	fill the post with credit and make no mistakes
賜	ci	bestow [the privilege]
坐	zuo	sit in the emperor's presence
宴	yan	dine (with the emperor)
不預宴	bu yuyan	do not attend the feast
序立	xuli	stand in order
畢	bi	over
…始退	... shitui	do not leave until...
考察	kaocha	examination, check
自此始	zici shi	begin from this
元嗣君	Yuan Sijun	Yuan pretender
阿裕實哩 達喇	Ayushilidala	person's name = Ayusiridara
殂	cu	die
特古斯特 穆爾	Tegusitemuer	person's name
嗣	si	succeed, inherit
舊作	jiuzuo	formerly called (referred, rendered

脫古思帖 木兒	Tuogusitiemuer	person's name = Torus Temür
丞相	chengxiang	Grand Councilor
魯爾	Luer	person's name
驢兒	Lüer	person's name
哈刺章	Halazhang	person's name
曼濟	Manji	person's name
蠻子	Manzi	person's name
寇	kou	invade, pillage, plunder
塞下	saixia	(northern) border, south of the passes
本紀	benji	basic annals
紀事本末	jishi benmo	<u>Mingshi jishi benmo</u> , 80 <u>juan</u> , by [Qing] Gu Yingtai, an important unofficial history of the Ming
從	cong	follow
江陰侯	Jiangyin hou	Marquis of Jiangyin
吳良	Wu Liang	(1324-1381) originally named Wu Guoxing. "Liang" was bestowed by the throne.
督田	dutian	supervise military farming
修葺	xiurong	repair
至是	zhishi	until now
成	cheng	finished
詔	zhao	imperial decree
皇堂	huangtang	imperial hall
新造	xinzhao	newly built
予	yu	I

時	shi	when, often
秉鑑窺形	bingjian kuixing	hold the mirror to look at the appearance
蒼顏皓首	cangyan haoshou	aged face and hoary head
忽思	husi	suddenly think of (remember)
往日	wangri	in old days, in the past
艱辛	jianxin	hardship, difficulty
竊	qie	a self-derogatory way of saying "I"
恐	kong	fear
前此	qianci	before this, previous
碑記	beiji	stele inscription
出自	chuzi	written by, derived from
儒臣	ruchen	Confucian officials
粉飾	fenshi	cosmetic
不足	buzu	cannot, insufficient
以爲…戒	yiwei...jie	serve as a caution
後世子孫	houshi zisun	sons and paternal grandsons of later generations
特	te	specifically
述	shu	recount, narrate
艱難	jiannan	hardship
明	ming	carry forward, develop
昌運	changyun	prosperous destiny
自制	zizhi	write himself
碑文	beiwen	stele text
督工	dugong	supervise artisans
刻	ke	inscribe, engrave, carve, cut

重建	chongjian	reestablish
不載	buzai	do not record
具	ju	write, record
郎氏	Langshi	Lang Ying (1487-?), from Renhe, Zhejiang
七修類稿	Qixiu lei gao	a work dealing with Ming history to the middle of the sixteenth century
前引	qianyin	quoted before
自述	zishu	write himself
俾	bi	make (somebody to do something)
世代	shidai	from generation to generation
碑詞	beici	inscription on a tablet
通體	tongti	the whole
陽韻	yangyun	manly tones (<u>yang</u> sounds)
本末	benmo	whole course of an events (from beginning to end)
徐氏	Xushi	Xu Xueju (1583 <u>jinshi</u>), Vice Censor-in-chief
典彙	Dianhui	<u>Guochao dianhui</u> , 200 <u>juan</u> , an historical work
前建	qianjian	formerly built
代草	daicao	writers
文飾	wenshi	gloss, falsify
復	fu	again
親	qin	personally, by oneself
秦氏	Qinshi	[Qing] Qin Huitian
五禮通考	Wuli tongkao	<u>General verifications of five rites,</u>

本	ben	based on
就	jiu	accordingly
迨	dai	until, by the time when
齊王府	Qiwang fu	mansion of Prince of Qi
青州	Qingzhou	a prefecture in Shandong
據此	juci	according to this
誤	wu	error, mistaken
滁陽王廟	Chuyang wang	
	miao	temple of Prince of Chuyang
序語	xuyu	preface
大略	dalüe	outline
丁酉	dingyou	twenty-sixth day of the month (June 21)
存問	cunwen	send a messenger to inquire after
蘇	Su	Suzhou Prefecture of Nanjing
松	Song	Songjiang Prefecture of Nanjing
嘉	Jia	Jiaxing Prefecture of Zhejiang
湖	Hu	Huzhou Prefecture of Zhejiang
被水	beishui	suffer from floods
災民	zaimin	victim of natural disasters
戶	hu	each household
蠲	juan	forgive
逋賦	bufu	delinquent taxes
有奇	youji	more than
先是	xianshi	before this
請	qing	petition

論	lun	punish
官吏	guanli	officials
不許	buxu	do not consent
逮	dai	arrest
責	ze	demand
傾貲	qingzi	exhaust one's wealth (property)
輸官	shuguan	submit (hand in) to the government
困	kun	difficulty
壬子	renzi	twelfth day of the month (July 6)
祭	ji	sacrifice to
故	gu	deceased
己巳	jisi	twenty-ninth day of the month (July 23)
五開	Wukai	a guard in Liping Prefecture, Guizhou
吳面兒	Wu Mianer	person's name
靖州衛	Jingzhou wei	a guard in Jingzhou (adjoining to Liping), Huguang
過興	Guo Xing	person's name
辰州衛	Chenzhou wei	a guard in Chenzhou Prefecture (to the north of Jingzhou), Huguang
楊仲名	Yang Zhongming	person's name
總兵官	zongbing guan	Regional Commander
丁丑	dingchou	seventh day of the month (July 31)
振…饑	zhen...ji	relieve the famine distress of, feed the hungry of
平陽	Pingyang	a prefecture in Shanxi; a district of Wenzhou prefecture, Zhejiang

蘇	Su	Suzhou
松	Song	Songjiang
台	Tai	Taizhou Prefecture of Zhejiang
揚	Yang	Yangzhou Prefecture of Nanjing
海溢	haiyi	tidal wave
溺死	nisi	drowned
存恤	cunxu	give comfort and relief
免	mian	exempt
應天	Yingtian	a prefecture in Nanjing
太平	Taiping	a prefecture in Nanjing
鎮江	Zhenjiang	a prefecture in Nanjing
寧國	Ningguo	a prefecture in Nanjing
廣德	Guangde	a prefecture in Nanjing
秋糧	qiuliang	autumn grain tax
丙申	bingshen	twenty-seventh day of the month (October 18)
追封	zhweifeng	confer posthumously
劉繼祖	Liu Jizu	person's name
義惠侯	Yihui hou	Marquis of Yihui
丙辰	bingchen	seventeenth day of the month (November 7)
河	He	Yellow River
決	jue	breached, burst dikes (at)
蘭陽	Lanyang	a district in Kaifeng Prefecture, Henan
甲子	jiazi	twenty-fifth day of the month (November 15)

大祀殿	Dasi dian	Hall of Great Sacrifices
西番	Xifan	Western barbarians, a derogatory term referring to the ethnic groups to the west of Shaanxi
數	shu	for many times
爲邊患	wei bianhuan	make troubles on the frontiers
庚午	gengwu	first day of the month (November 21)
授	shou	confer (a title)
西平侯	Xiping hou	Marquis of Xiping
沐英	Mu Ying	(1345-1392), from Dingyuan, Taizu's foster son (<u>yizi</u>)
征西將軍	zhengxi jiangjun	General of the Western Expedition
都督	dudu	Commissioners-in-chief, heads of five Chief Military Commissions (<u>dudu fu</u>) in the central government
藍玉	Lan Yu	an important general, given title Dynastic Duke of Liang
王弼	Wang Bi	given title Marquis of Dingyuan
討平	taoping	suppress, quell
遁	dun	run away, escape
內臣	neichen	eunuch official
吳誠	Wu Cheng	person's name
觀軍	guanjun	inspect military troops
尚履奉御	shanglü fengyu	Chief Steward for Imperial Shoes
呂玉	Lǔ Yu	person's name
視捷	shijie	observe the triumph
嘗	chang	once

侍臣	shichen	officials in attendance
唐書	Tang shu	official <u>Tang History</u>
至	zhi	get to the place
魚朝恩	Yu Chaoen	(722-770) a powerful eunuch
觀軍容使	guan junrong shi	Inspector of the Armies, full title: guan junrong xuanwei chuzhi shi [lit., commissioner to arrange and dispose of matters concerning conditions in the armies and manifestations of imperial conciliation]
未嘗不嘆	weichang butan	deeply sigh [lit., not without sighing]
此曹	cicao	these persons [officials]
掌兵	zhangbing	control troops
遂	sui	eventually, consequently, then
恣肆至此	zisi zhici	licentious up to such a point
然	ran	however
代宗	Daizong	Li Yu [r. 763-779]
苟	gou	if
一旦	yidan	once, someday, one day
去	qu	eliminate, get rid of
孤雛腐鼠	guchu fushu	vulgar persons or worthless things [lit., orphaned chicks and rotten mice]
斷	duan	resolution, determination
漢	Han	Han Dynasty (206 B.C.-8 A.D., 25-220)

唐	Tang	Tang Dynasty (618-907)
宦官	huanguan	eunuch officials
禍	huo	disaster
鑒	jian	take ... as a lesson (lit. mirror, <u>jian</u> is often used in the titles of historical works because they are thought to teach a lesson.)
左右	zuoyou	bodyguards
服役	fuyi	serve
…之外	...zhiwai	besides
重	zhong	important mission
傳命四方	chuanming sifang	transmit imperial orders to the four directions
而已	eryi	merely, only, and that is all
是役	shiyi	this campaign
兩遣	liangqian	send twice
內臣	neichen	eunuch officials
出使	chushi	be sent out as his emissary
預兵事	yu bingshi	get involved in military matters
大同	Datong	a prefecture in Shanxi
白羊鎮	Baiyangzhen	Place name
巡檢	xunjian	Police Chief
張文煥	Zhang Wenhuan	person's name
遇	yu	come across
焦山	Jiaoshan	place name
戰沒	zhanmo	die in the battle
貧寒	pinhan	poor, destitute

十指	shizhi	ten fingers
俱墜	juzhui	all fall
終其身	zhong qi shen	to the end of his life
佛經	fojing	Buddhist sutra
遺佚	yi yi	lost
僧	seng	Buddhist priest
宗泐	Zongle	person's name
偕	xie	together with
徒	tu	disciples
西域	Xiyu	West Territories, areas to the west of Shaanxi
凡	fan	totally, all together
國子	guozi [jian]	<u>guozi[jian]</u> , Directorate of Education
助教	zhu jiao	Instructor
貝瓊	Bei Qiong	person's name
致仕	zhishi	retire from official post
清江	Qingjiang	district name, seat of Linjiang Prefecture of Jiangxi
張美和	Zhang Meihe	Zhang Jiushao, Junior Compiler (<u>bianxiu</u>) of Hanlin Academy. Meihe was his courtesy name (<u>zi</u>).
聶鉉	Nie Xuan	Archivist (<u>dianji</u>) in the Directorate of Education
齊名	qiming	enjoy equal popularity, be equally famous
時稱	shicheng	in those days [they are] called

成均	chengjun	an archaic term for the highest school, here the <u>guozijian</u>
宋訥	Song Ne	from Huaxian of Beiping, Chancellor (<u>jijiu</u>) of the Directorate of Education in early Ming
彭亨	Pengheng	Pahang, a place in present Malaysia
百花	Baihua	country name
來貢	laigong	come to pay tribute
暹羅	Xianluo	Thailand
西南洋	Xi Nan yang	areas which cover South and Southeast Asia [lit., west and south oceans]
宴勞	yanlao	feast (entertain)

DOCUMENT 2. The Land System (MING HUIYAO).

This selection on the Ming land system (tianzhi 田制) views agricultural land is taken from the perspective of the imperial government. It is taken from the MING HUIYAO 明會要, a Qing Dynasty work by Long Wenbin 龍文彬, in 80 juan. Available in identical typeset editions from the mainland and Taiwan, the MING HUIYAO (Taipei: Shijie shuju, 1963), 2 vols., is a handy reference tool. See section 11.2, above. This passage is found in volume 2, pp. 982-87.

明會要	Ming huiyao	<u>Collected institutions of the Ming</u>
食貨	Shihuo	"Food and Money," a title referring to a dynasty's economic institutions
一	yi	part one
田制	Tianzhi	"Land System"
洪武	Hongwu	reign period of the Ming founder, 1368-1398
甲申	jiashen	13th day of that month = Feb. 1, 1368
帝	di	the emperor, i.e., Ming Taizu
謂	wei	speak to
中書省	Zhongshu Sheng	Secretariat, a top-echelon agency of the central government
臣	chen	officials
兵革	bingge	war
郡縣	junxian	commanderies and districts, a generic reference to the regional and local units

版籍	banji	register of population
亡	wang	lost
田賦之制	tianfu zhi zhi	system of land and taxation
增損	zengsun	change, to increase and decrease
今	jin	now, today
遣	qian	send
周鑄	Zhou Zhu	person's name
浙西	Zhexi	a Yuan circuit [<u>dao</u>] including Zhe River Valley and the region around Lake Tai
覈實	heshi	check, verify
田畝	tianmu	cultivated lands
定	ding	decide, set
賦稅	fushui	taxes
無令	wuling	not to let (something happen)
妄有增擾	wangyou zengrao	recklessly increase and disrupt
昭代典則	Zhaodai dianze	<u>Ming annals</u> by Huang Guangsheng
以	yi	because
中原	zhongyuan	central plain
荒蕪	huangwu	lie in waste
命	ming	order
省臣	shengchen	officials of the Secretariat
議	yi	discuss
計民授田	jimin shoutian	calculate population and farm land
設	she	establish
司農司	Sinong si	Court for Agriculture
開置	kaizhi	cultivate, to open up waste lands

臨濠	Linhao	prefecture with Zhongli as its seat; later its name was successively changed to Zhongdu, Zhongli, Fengyang
驗	yan	inspect, to examine, to verify
丁力	dingli	able-bodied male
計畝	jimu	calculate the land
兼并	jianbing	annex
北方	beifang	the north
近城	jincheng	near cities
不治	buzhi	not to be tilled
召民	zhaomin	summon people
耕種	gengzhong	plow and sow
人給	rengji	each person was provided with...
畝	mu	measure of land
蔬地	shudi	vegetable land
免租	mianzu	remit land taxes
通典	Tongdian	<u>[Expanded] general institutional history</u> [see 17.3]
詔	zhao	proclaim [as an emperor]
流民	liumin	uprooted people
復業者	fuye zhe	those who took up their old occupations
就丁力	jiu dingli	according to the manpower
毋	wu	do not
以...爲限	yi...weixian	limited to ...
舊田	jiutian	former land
同上	tongshang	same [source] as above [i.e.]

Tongdian]

戊子	wuzi	7th day of that month [Feb. 25, 1387]
國子生	guozi sheng	students of the Directorate of Education
武淳	Wu Chun	person's name
分行	fenxing	go to [somewhere] respectively
隨糧定區	suiliang dingqu	divide regions according to grain taxes (10,000 <u>shi</u> of grain tax equals one region)
區設…	qushe…	be appointed in each region
糧長	Liangzhang	Tax Captain
量度	liangduo	to measure
方圓	fangyuan	squares and circles, all round
次	ci	assign serial numbers [according to the <u>Thousand Character Classic</u>]
字號	zihao	a serial number
悉	xi	all
書	shu	write
主名	zhuming	owners' names
丈尺	zhangchi	measurements
編類	bianlei	categorize
冊	ce	register book
號	hao	call
魚鱗圖冊	yulin tuce	fish-scale register
食貨志	shihuo zhi	Essay on Food and Money in the <u>Ming History</u>
凡	fan	in all cases [the first word of an

		article in a law code]
典賣田土	dian mai tiantu	mortgage or sale of land
過割稅糧	guoge shuiliang	transfer of taxes [lit. tax-grain]
年終	nianzhong	at the end of a year
通行	tongxing	all, general
造冊解府	zaoce jiefu	establish registers and transmit [them] to the prefecture
毋令	wuling	do not allow
產去稅存	chanqu shuicun	property is gone and tax liability remains with the original owners
大明令	Daming ling	<u>Great Ming Commandment</u> , 145 articles
永樂	Yongle	Ming Chengzu's reign title, 1403-24
元年	yuannian	the first year [1403]
發	fa	dispatch, send
流罪以下	liuzui yixia	[those who are punished by] life exile or below [lighter punishments]
墾	ken	open up, reclaim
兗州	Yanzhou	name of a prefecture
東昌	Dongchang	a district of Yanzhou
定陶	Dingyao	a district of Yanzhou
地廣民稀	diguang minxi	a sparsely populated area [lit. area vast, population sparse]
令	ling	order
青	Qing	Qingzhou Prefecture, Shandong
登	Deng	Dengzhou Prefecture, Shandong
萊	Lai	Laizhou Prefecture, Shandong
諸	zhu	various

郡	jun	informal term for prefecture
擇	ze	select
丁多者	dingduo zhe	[households with] many able-bodied males
分居耕種	fenju gengzhong	live separately and till land
	juanyi sannian	remit corvee service for three years
王圻	Wangyin	the author of <u>Tongkao</u>
通考	Tongkao	book title [lit. <u>General</u> <u>Verifications</u>]
正統	Zhengtong	Ming Yingzong's reign title, 1436-1449
各處	gechu	wherever
入額納種	rue naliang	
田地	tiandi	land that has been entered into the [tax] quota to pay the tax
不堪	bukan	unable to
另	ling	elsewhere
自	zi	on one's own
開墾	kaiken	till, open up waste land
補數	bushu	make up the required amount [of land]
有司	yousi	the responsible government offices
勘實	kanshi	investigate and verify
不許	buxu	it is not allowed
重起科	chong qike	make double collection
奏准	zouzhun	assent to a memorial
并	bing	and
直隸	Zhili	Nan Zhili, i.e., the Southern Capital

蘇	Su	Suzhou Prefecture, Nan Zhili
松	Song	Songjiang Prefecture, Nan zhili
有…去處	you...quchu	there are places such as...
因水塌漲	yinshui ta zhang	[the land which] collapsed or is inundated because of flood
所在	suozaì	local
逐一丈量	zhuyi zhangliang	measure one by one
給與	jiyu	give to
附近	fujin	nearby
小民	xiaomin	commoners
承種	chengzhong	till, plough
照	zhao	in accordance with
塌沒無田者	tamo wutian zhe	those whose land is collapsed or inundated
悉與	xiyu	[they shall] all be
開豁稅糧	kaihuo shuiliang	exempted from grain taxes
北直隸	Bei Zhili	Northern Capital
富豪軍民	fuhao junmin	
人等	ren deng	the military personnel and civilians who are wealthy and powerful
包耕田地	baogeng tiandi	the land whose plough is monopolized [by somebody]
除…外	chu...wai	except
原	yuan	original, former
其餘	qiyu	other
均撥	junbo	allocate equally
貧民	pinmin	poor people

衝塌	chongta	collapse, burst
照例	zhaoli	in accordance with regulations
典當	diandang	mortgage
田宅	tian zhai	land and residence
年久	nianjiu	for years, for a long time
無錢取贖	wuqian qushu	no money to redeem
占種	zhanzhong	take [the land] by force to till
逃民	taomin	those who run away
待…之日	dai...zhiri	await the time of...
照舊	zhaojiu	in accordance with the former [ownership]
斷還原主	duanhuan yuanzhu	[the land and residence to be] judged and returned to original owners
寺觀僧道	si guan seng dao	Buddhist and Taoist priests at Buddhist monasteries and Taoist temples
置買	zhimai	purchase
有…者	you...zhe	there are those who...
續置	xuzhi	continue to purchase
查照	chazhao	take official notice
散還於民	sanhuan yu min	disperse [the land] and return to people
若	ruo	if
廢弛	feichi	obsolete, abandoned
遺下	yixia	leave
田莊	tianzhuang	estate
踏勘	takan	investigate

招還無業	zhaohuan wuye	[those who] have been summoned back but still do not have property (land)
每戶	meihu	each household
三丁以下	sanding yixia	three able-bodied males or less
係	xi	to be
官田	guantian	official land
照依	zhaoyi	follow
減輕則例	jianqing zeli	regulations concerning "reduction"
改科	gaike	change to collect
正糧	zhengliang	principal grain[-tax]
石	shi	picul
俱爲官田	juwei guantian	make them all official land
本戶絕	benhu jue	original household does not have an heir
私自	sizi	on one's own, without authority
景泰	Jingtai	Ming Daizong's reign title, 1450-56
量存…爲業	liangcun...weiye	retain approximately...as [its] property
其餘	qiyu	the rest
佃種	dianzhong	rent and cultivate [land]
已上	yishang	all the above [sources]
天順	Tianshun	Ming Yingzong's second reign title, 1457-1464
敕	chi	imperial edict
皇親	huangqin	imperial relatives
公侯伯	gong hou bo	titles of nobility: Duke, Marquis, Earl

文武大臣	wenwu dachen	high civil and military officers
強占	qiangzhan	seize by force or influence
起蓋房屋	qigai fangwu	build houses
事發	shifa	[in case that] the matter is discovered
坐以重罪	zuo yi zhongzui	[they shall be] punished by severe penalties
家人	jiaren	families
投托者	toutuo zhe	those who place [themselves] in the care of [others]
發邊衛	fa bianwei	banish to frontier garrisons
永遠充軍	yongyuan chongjun	military exile forever
新開無額 田地	xinkai wue tiandi	fields that have recently been put under cultivation and have not been entered into tax record
願…者	yuan...zhe	those who are willing to [do]
荒閑	huangxian	deserted, unoccupied
成化	Chenghua	Ming Xianzong's reign title, 1465-87
巡視	xunshi	inspect
戶部侍郎	hubu shilang	Vice Minister of Revenue
原傑	Yuan Jie	person's name
奏	zou	memorialize
間	jian	during the period of
恩例	enli	gracious regulation
常稅	changshui	regular taxes

至今	zhijin	up to the present
奸民	jianmin	evil persons
互相告訐	huxiang gaojie	inform against each other
徵斂日重	zhenglian rizhong	tax collection becomes heavier each day
請	qing	petition
如	ru	follow
舊例	jiuli	former regulations
不聽	buting	do not listen [i.e. accept and hear the case]
考	Kao	i.e., <u>Tongkao</u>
遼東地方	Liaodong difang	places in Liaodong Regional Military Commission
軍人	junren	military personnel
拋荒土田	paohuang tutian	discarded land
分…三等	feng...sandeng	divide...three grades
上中下	shang zhong xia	upper, middle, and lower
覈	he	verify
天下	tianxia	the realm
總	zong	in total
頃	qing	one hundred <u>mu</u>
弘治	Hongzhi	Ming Xiaozong's reign title [1488-1505]
內	nei	including
官田	guantian	government land
順天	Shuntian	the prefecture in Zhili where the Capital was located

入官田地	ruguan tiandi	land confiscated by the government
每名	meiming	each person
嘉靖	Jiajing	Ming Shizong's reign title [1522-66]
板荒	banhuang	unregistered [land]
積荒	jihuang	long abandoned land
不拘	buju	not limited to
本府	benfu	local prefecture
別府	biefu	other prefecture
匠	jiang	craftsmen
鹽	zao	salt-makers
儘力	jinli	do one's utmost
田帖	tiantie	land certificate
管業	guanye	hold the property
霍韜	Huo Tao	person's name
奉命	fengming	receive the imperial order
脩	xiu	compile, edit
會典	Huidian	<u>Collected statutes of the great Ming</u>
自…迄	zi...qi...	from...to...
強半	qiangban	more than half
湖廣	Huguang	a province
廣東	Guangdong	a province
失額	shie	lose the "quota land"
尤多	youduo	much more
非…則	fei...ze	either...or
王府	wangfu	princely establishments
欺隱	qiyin	conceal with fraudulent intent
猾民	huamin	crafty persons

藩府	fanfu	feudatory establishments [i.e., <u>wangfu</u>]
委棄	weiqi	discard, throw away
寇賊	kouzei	bandits
司國計者	si guoji zhe	those who take charge of the dynastic economy
可不	kebu	how can [they] not
究心	jiuxin	concerned, worried
是時	shishi	at this time
桂萼	Gui E	Grand Secretary in Jiajing reign
郭宏化	Guo Honghua	a censor
唐龍	Tang Long	(1477-1546), Censor-in-Chief
簡霄	Jian Xiao	person's name
先後	xianhou	one after another
疏請	shuqing	petition [the throne] in memorials
而	er	but
顧鼎臣	Gu Dingchen	Grand Secretary in Jiajing reign
屢畝丈量	limu zhangliang	measure the fields <u>mu</u> by <u>mu</u>
議	yi	controversy, debate
由此起	youci qi	arise out of this
安福	Anfu	a district in Ji'an Prefecture, Jiangxi
裕州	Yuzhou	a subprefecture in Nanyang Prefecture, Henan
首行之	shou xingzhi	practice it first
法	fa	rules
未詳具	wei xiangju	have not yet been meticulous

多	duo	very much, many, most
疑憚	yidan	be suspicious and frightened
其後	qihou	after that
經	jing	warp register, land register like the "fish-scale" register
緯	wei	woof register, population register like the "yellow-book" register
頗詳	poxiang	very meticulous
然	ran	but
率	shuai	all
以地爲主	yidi weizhu	base [the method] on the land
田多者	tianduo zhe	those who have more land
猶得	youde	still can
上下其手	shangxia qi shou	practice fraud
神宗	Shengzong	Wanli emperor, 1573-1619
初	chu	the early period of
建昌	Jianchang	prefecture in Sichuan Province
知府	Zhifu	Prefect
許孚遠	Xu Fuyuan	Censor-in-Chief in Wanli reign
歸戶冊	guihu ce	register on the basis of household
則	ze	instead
以田從人	yitian congren	take land to follow people
法簡而密	fa jian er mi	rules are concise but close
是年	shinian	that year
召募	zhaomu	recruit
稅銀	shuiyin	tax money
輕糧	qingliang	light [reduced] grain [tax]

自種	zizhong	plough one one's own
不徵	buzheng	do not levy
題准	tizhun	assent to a routine memorial [<u>tiben</u>] through the Grand Secretariat
堪種	kanzhong	[the land that] can be ploughed
聽	ting	it is allowed
招	zhao	summon
地主	dizhu	[original] landowners
成熟	chengshu	ripe, mature
復業爭種	fuye zhengzhong	return to farming one's land
赴官告明	fuguan gaoming	go to the authorities and report the case clearly
三分之一	sanfeng zhi yi	one third
方行	fangxing	[not until how much time] can they do something
均分	junfen	divide equally
敢有…者	ganyou...zhe	if there is someone who dares to
恃強奪占	shiqiang duozhan	seize by force
問罪	wenzui	inflict punishments
衛所	weisuo	military guards and battalions
官舍餘丁	guan she yuding	
人等	rendeng	[military] officers, their relatives, supernumerary men, and other persons
一體	yiti	all together, uniformly
坐派糧差	zuopai liangchai	send grain tax collectors
抗拒	kangju	resist

違者	weizhe	violators
奪田入官	duotian ruguan	seize the land for the government
隆慶	Longqing	Ming Muzong's reign title, 1567-72
巡按御史	Xunan yushi	Regional Inspector
董堯封	Dong Yaofeng	person's name
查出	chachu	have found out
常	Chang	Changzhou Prefecture in Nan Zhili
鎮	Zhen	Zhenjiang Prefecture in Nan Zhili
投贖田	touguitian	land placed under the care of privileged household
花分田	huafentian	land sporadically placed under the care of relatives or tenants
因	yin	therefore
條上	tiaoshang	memorialize a list [of affairs] to the throne
便宜八事	bianyi bashi	eight practical proposals
酌行	zhuoxing	carry out after consideration [or as one sees fit]
萬曆	Wanli	Ming Shenzong's reign title [1573-1619]
閣臣	gechen	Grand Secretary
張居正	Zhang Juzheng	a high court official
遂	sui	then
開方法	kaifang fa	method of dividing fields into square <u>mu</u>
徑圍	jingwei	circumference
乘除	chengchu	multiply and divide

畸零	jiling	bits, odds and ends
截補	jiebu	cut off from the long to supply the deficiency of the short
豪猾	haohua	powerful and crafty persons
里甲	li jia	community self-monitoring system [lit. communities and tithings]
免	mian	avoid, escape
賠累	peilei	incur liabilities and make up deficiency
虛糧	xuliang	taxes they do not owe
視	shi	look at, compare
贏	ying	more, surplus
頗	po	very much
以溢額為功	yi yie weigong	regard increasing the amount of land registered as meritorious
短縮步弓	duansuo bugong	shorten the land measure [which is five feet]
掇克見田	pouke xiantian	exact from existing land
以充虛額	yichong xue	make up the deficiency
按…增賦	an...zengfu	increase taxes on the basis of ...
三編	sanbian	<u>Gangmu sanbian</u> ,
沈一貫	Shen Yiguan	person's name
山東營田疏	Shandong yingtian shu	a memorial concerning managing agricultural colonies
迤東	yidong	toward the east
海上	haishang	along the coast

自選	zixuan	select on one's own
廉幹官員	liangan guanyuan	honest and experienced officials
逐一	zhuyi	one by one
的數	dishu	accurate amount
多方	duofang	many places, by all means, in every way
徽	Hui	Huizhou Prefecture in Nan Zhili
池	Chi	Chizhou Prefecture in Nan Zhili
不問遠近	buwen yuanjin	regardless of distance
入籍	ruji	to be registered [in a given place]
報名	baoming	register their names
擇便	zebian	select convenient [places]
官	guan	government
爲之	weizhi	for them
正疆定界	zhengjiang	
	dingjie	regularize parcels and fix boundaries
署置安插	shuzhi ancha	settle and arrange
積逋	jibu	taxes in arrears
一切蠲貸	yiqie juandai	[they will] all be remitted
與之更始	yuzhi gengshi	give them a new beginning
和買	hemai	purchase with consent
分種	fenzhong	rent out
新籍之民	xinji zhi min	those who newly registered
編戶	bianhu	registered households
排年	painian	annual rotation
里	li	community head

甲	jia	tithing head
循阡履畝	xunqian lūmu	follow the path between plots and walk around the cultivated fields
勸耕	quangeng	encourage ploughing
勸織	quanzhi	encourage weaving
毋籍爲兵	wu ji wei bing	do not enlist them as soldiers
重其科	zhong qike	do not levy heavy taxes
相生	xiangsheng	keep each other alive
相養	xiangyang	nourish each other
不出數年	buchu shunian	do not exceed several years
天府	tianfu	the land of paradise
農政全書	Nongzheng	
	quanshu	the <u>Complete Book on Agriculture</u> , by Xu Guangqi, 60 <u>juan</u>

DOCUMENT 3. Biography of Wang Shouren (MINGSHI).

This is a sample biography from the official MINGSHI (Ming History), comp. Zhang Tingyu, et. al., typeset, punctuated edition, Beijing: Zhonghua shuju, 1974. Note that biographies (liezhuan 列傳), the fourth but largest category of a dynastic history, are separately numbered within the larger work. Better known in Western scholarship as Wang Yangming, Wang Shouren is recognized as the greatest philosophical thinker of the Ming period. He is credited with developing the School of Mind (xinxue 心學) within Neo-Confucianism. As his biography reveals, however, his official career was distinguished by military service in south China. Thus his biography appears in juan 83 (page 5159) with those of other officials, not with those classified as Confucians (rulin 儒林) whose biographies begin with MING SHI juan 282, Liezhuan juan 170.

明史	Ming shi	official <u>Ming History</u>
列傳	lie zhuan	collected biographies
第八十三	di bashisan	number 83
冀元亨	Ji Yuanheng	Wang Shouren's disciple. His biography is attached to Wang's.
字	zi	adult name, courtesy name
餘姚	Yuyao	place in Zhejiang
人	ren	a native
成化	Chenghua	reign name of Xianzong, 1465-1487
進士第一	jingshi diyi	optimus, first place graduate in metropolitan examination

授	shou	to confer
修撰	xiuzhuan	Senior Compiler (in Hanlin Academy)
弘治	Hongzhi	reign name of Xiaozong, 1488-1505
累官	leiguan	successively appointed to
學士	xueshi	Chancellor (in Hanlin Academy)
少詹事	shao zhanshi	Vice Supervisor of the Household of Heir Apparent
器度	qidu	unusual capacities
在講幄	zai jiangwo	in the lecture hall, to serve as imperial tutor
眷	juan	fond of
李廣	Li Guang	person's name
貴幸	guixing	favored (by the ruler)
大學衍義	Daxue yanyi	<u>Elaboration of meanings of the Great Learning</u> (by Zhen Dexiu of Song)
李輔國	Li Fuguo	powerful eunuch at the Tang court
張后	Zhanghou	a Tang empress
表裏用事	biaoli yongshi	outside and inside conspiracy
指陳甚切	zhichen shenqie	rebuke severely
中官	zhongguan	eunuch officials
賜	ci	bestow
勞	lao	to reward
正德	Zhengde	reign name of Wuzong, 1506-21
進	jin	promoted
禮部	libu	Ministry of Rites
左侍郎	zuo shilang	Left Vice Minister
以	yi	for the reason of

忤	wu	disobedient
劉瑾	Liu Jin	powerful eunuch at the Ming court (?-1510)
出	chu	banished
南京	Nanjing	Southern Capital
吏部	libu	Ministry of Personnel
尚書	shangshu	Minister
坐事	zuoshi	implicated in a legal case
罷	ba	removed from office
旋	xuan	before long
會典	Huidian	<u>Collected Statutes of the Great Ming</u>
降	jiang	demoted
敗	bai	ruined
復故	fugu	assume the former office
無何	wuhe	not long
卒	zu	die
性	xing	nature
孝	xiao	filial piety
岑	Cen	person's name
年	nian	age
踰	yu	to be over
猶	you	still
寢苦蔬食	qinshan shushi	to sleep on a mat and eat no meat
士論	shilun	opinion of the gentry class
多	duo	praise
娠	shen	pregnant
祖母	zumu	paternal grandmother

夢	meng	dream
神人	shenren	spirit
異人	yiren	one with extraordinary powers
拊	fu	pat
訪客	fangke	visit
居庸	Jurong [guan]	a pass through the Great Wall
山海關	Shanghai guan	easternmost pass in the Great Wall
時	shi	often
闌	lan	without permission, recklessly
出塞	chuse	to cross the frontiers
縱觀	zonguan	take a wide survey
弱冠	ruoguan	young man, one not yet capped
舉	ju	go up for
鄉試	xiangshi	provincial civil service examination
學	xue	scholarship, learning
大進	dajin	made good progress
顧	gu	and yet, adversative particle implying that what follows is contrary to what you would expect
益	yi	more and more
好	hao	love, be fond of
言兵	yanbing	talk about military affairs
善射	shanshe	good at archery
登	deng	obtain
使	shi	sent on a mission
治…葬	zhi...zang	manage someone's funeral

前	qian	former
威寧伯	Weining Bo	Marquis of Weining
王越	Wang Yue	person's name
還	huan	[when he] returned
朝議	chaoyi	court discussion
急	ji	urgent
西北邊	xibei bian	northwest frontier
條	tiao	list
上	shang	memorialize
刑部	xingbu	Ministry of Punishments
主事	zhushi	Secretary
決囚	jueqiu	review sentences
引疾	yinji	retire on account of sickness
歸	gui	return (home)
起	qi	be recalled
補	bu	fill a vacancy
兵部	bingbu	Ministry of War
逮	dai	arrest
給事中	jishizhong	Supervising Secretary
御史	yushi	Censor
戴銑	Dai Xian	person's name
抗章	kangzhang	remonstrance to the throne
救	jiu	rescue
廷杖	tingzhang	beat with stick at court
謫	zhe	be demoted
龍場驛	Longchang yi	postal relay station of Longchang
丞	cheng	aide

萬山叢薄	wanshan congbo	myriad mountains and dense undergrowth
苗	Miao	an ethnic group
僚	Liao	an ethnic group
雜居	zaju	interspersed
因俗化導	yinsu huadao	use their customs to transform them
夷人	yiren	barbarians
相率	xiangshui	follow one another
伐木	famu	cut trees
栖	qi	to shelter
誅	zhu	executed
量移	liangyi	transferred
廬陵	Luling	seat of Ji'an Prefecture, Jiangxi
入覲	rujin	go to Capital for an audience
遷	qian	be promoted
楊一清	Yang Yiqing	(1454-1530) a high court official
驗封	yanfeng	Bureau of Honors
屢遷	lūqian	to be promoted succesively
考功郎中	kaogong	
	langzhong	Director of Bureau of Evaluations
擢	zhuo	be promoted, be selected
太僕少卿	taipu shaoqing	Vice Minister of Court of the Imperial Stud
鴻臚卿	honglu qing	Chief Minister of State Ceremonial
王瓊	Wang Qiong	person's name
素	su	always, usually
奇	qi	consider ... to be unusual

才	cai	talent
右僉都御史	you qian	
	du yushi	Right Assistant Censor-in-chief
巡撫	xunfu	coordinator and supervise as a Grand Coordinator
南	Nan	Nan'an Prefecture, Jiangxi
贛	Gan	Ganzhou Prefecture, Jiangxi
南中	nanzhong	south central
盜賊	daozei	rebels
蜂起	fengqi	swarm up like bees
謝志山	Xie Zhishan	person's name
據	ju	occupy
橫水	Hengshui	place name
左溪	Zuoxi	place name
桶岡	Tonggang	place name
池仲容	Chi Zhongrong	person's name
涘頭	Litou	place name
稱王	chengwang	claim to be a king
與	yu	with
大庾	Dayu	place name
陳曰能	Chen Yueneng	person's name
樂昌	Lechang	place name
高快馬	Gao Kuaima	person's name
郴州	Chenzhou	prefecture in Huguang
龔福全	Gong Fuquan	person's name
攻剽	gongpiao	attack
大帽山	Damaoshan	place name

詹師富	Zhan Shifu	person's name
又起	youqi	rise again
文森	Wen Sen	person's name
托疾	tuoji	plead sickness as an excuse
避去	biqu	run away
合	he	join together
掠	lüe	plunder
贛縣	Ganxian	seat of Ganzhou Prefecture
主簿	zhubu	Assistant Magistrate
吳玘	Wu Pin	person's name
戰死	zhansi	die in battle
至	zhi	arrive
左右	zuoyou	attendants
多	duo	many
耳目	ermu	spies
呼	hu	summon
老黠者	laoxia li	old crafty minor functionary
詰	jie	interrogate
戰栗	zhanli	tremble with fear
隱	yin	conceal
賞	shi	pardon
訶	xiong	spy, watch and report
動靜	dongjing	movements
無	wu	nothing
勿知	wuzhi	do not know
於是	yushi	at that time
檄	xi	give an urgent order

會兵	huibing	assemble troops
討	tao	supress rebellions
督副使	du fushi	Vice Commandant-in-chief
楊璋	Yang Zhang	person's name
破	po	break down
長富村	Changfucun	place name
逼	bi	compel, press
象湖山	Xianghushan	place name
指揮	zhihui	Commander
覃桓	Tan Huan	person's name
縣丞	xiancheng	Vice Magistrate
紀鏞	Ji Yong	person's name
親率	qin shuai	to lead personally
銳卒	ruizu	well-drilled troops
屯	tun	to station
上杭	Shanghang	place name
佯	yang	pretend, feign
退師	tuishi	retreat, withdraw troops
出不意	chu buyi	take by surprise
搗	dao	attack
連破	lianpo	destroy successively
寨	zhai	walled village
俘	fu	capture
斬	zhan	kill
有奇	youji	more than
王鎧	Wang Kai	person's name
擒	qin	seize

疏言	shu yan	state in a memorial
權	quan	authority
輕	qing	light, unimportant
無	wu	nothing
以	yi	by means of
令	ling	order
將士	jiangshi	generals and soldiers, troops
請	qing	petition, request
給	gei	give, offer
旗牌	qipai	flag, ensign
提督	tidu	control
軍務	junwu	military affairs
得	de	be able to
便宜從事	bianyi congshi	take action according to circumstances
奏	zou	memorialize
從其請	cong qiqing	approve his petition
更兵制	geng bingzhi	change the troop organization
爲	wei	to form
伍	wu	squad
小甲	xiaojia	Squad Captain
隊	dui	platoon
總甲	zongjia	Platoon Commander
哨	shao	company
長	zhang	commander
協哨	xieshao	Assistant Company Commander
佐	zuo	assist

營	ying	division
官	guan	officer
參謀	canmou	Counselor
陣	zhen	brigade
偏將	pianjiang	Brigade General
軍	jun	army
副將	fujiang	Army General
臨事	linshi	when the matter is at hand
委	wei	appoint
命於朝	ming yu chao	appointed by the court
遞相罰治	dixiang fazhi	each discipline the one below
進兵	jinbing	advance troops to the attack
乘間	chengjian	take advantage of the chance
急攻	jigong	attack swiftly
南安	Nan'an	prefecture in southern Jiangxi
知府	zhifu	Prefect
季攷	Ji Xiao	person's name
擊敗	jibai	to defeat
亦	yi	also
生擒	shengji	capture alive
遂	sui	then
議討	yitao	discuss the attack
都指揮	duzhihui	Regional Military Commissioner
許清	Xu Qing	person's name
贛州	Ganzhou	prefecture in southern Jianxi
寧都	Ningdu	district in Ganzhou
王天與	Wang Tianyu	person's name

各一軍	ge yi jun	each [led] one contingent of troops
會	hui	join
守備	shoubei	Commandant
郊文	Jia Wen	person's name
汀州	Tingzhou	prefecture in Fujian
唐淳	Tang Chun	person's name
舒富	Shu Fu	person's name
吉安	Jian	prefecture in the middle of Jiangxi
伍文定	Wu Wending	person's name
程鄉	Chengxiang	district in Guangdong
張戩	Zhang Jian	person's name
遏	e	check, hold back
奔軼	benyi	escape, run away
自駐	zi zhu	station himself
去	qu	away, from
先遣	xianqian	send first
伏	fu	lie in ambush
賊巢	zeichao	rebels' den
左右	zuo you	left and right sides
進軍	jinjun	to advance troops
方迎戰	fang yingzhan	meet head-on
兩山	liangshan	mountains on both sides
舉幟	juzhi	raise banners
大驚	dajing	astounded
謂	wei	say, think
官軍	guanjun	government troops
已	yi	already

盡犁	jinli	plough up completely, destroy
潰	kui	routed
乘勝	chengsheng	follow up a victory
克	ke	occupy
黨	dang	followers
蕭貴模	Xiao Guimo	person's name
走	zou	run away
險固	xiangu	strongly defended
移營	yiying	move troops
近地	jindi	get close to the place
諭	yu	proclaim, announce, notify
禍福	huofu	disasters and blessings
賊首	zeishou	rebel chief
藍廷鳳	Lan Tingfeng	person's name
震恐	zhenkong	astonished
使	shi	emissary
至	zhi	arrive
大喜	daxi	with great rejoicing
期	qi	make an appointment
仲冬	zhongdong	eleventh month of lunar year
朔	shuo	first day of lunar month
降	xiang	surrender
冒雨	maoyu	brave the rain
奪險入	duoxian ru	breach the barrier and enter
阻	zu	block
水障	shuizhen	water forces
直前	zhiqian	go straight ahead

搏戰	bozhan	fight, attack
自右出	zi you chu	come out [to attack] from the right
倉卒	cangcu	hurried
遇	yu	come across
諸軍	zhujun	every contingent of troops
面縛	mianfu	to be bound themselves
時	shi	at that time
湖廣	Huguang	the province
巡撫	xunfu	Grand Coordinator
秦金	Qin Jin	person's name
突至	tuzhi	arrive suddenly
擒	qin	capture
設	she	establish
崇義縣	Chongyixian	district name
控	kong	control
諸瑤	zhu Yao	various Yao tribes
初	chu	before this time
之…也	zhi...ye	when
平	ping	pacify
龍川	Longchuan	place name
盧珂	Lu Ke	person's name
鄭志高	Zheng Zhigao	person's name
陳英	Chen Ying	person's name
咸	xian	all
請降	qingxiang	request to surrender
征	zheng	attack, subjugate
黃金巢	Huang Jinchao	person's name

以…降	yi...xiang	surrender with
獨	du	only
未下	weixia	not yet defeated
來歸	laigui	come to surrender
屢	yan	intensively
為戰	weizhan	for war
守備	shoubei	defend
詭言	guiyan	lie
讐	chou	enemy, rival
將	jiang	about to
襲	xi	attack
杖繫	zhangji	beat and bind up
陰	yin	secretly
使	shi	ask [someone to do something]
集兵	jibing	assemble troops
待	dai	wait
下令	xialing	give an order
散兵	sanbing	disperse troops
歲首	suishou	at the beginning of the year
大張	dazhang	display on a grand scale
燈樂	dengle	lantern festival
信且疑	xin qie yi	half believing and half doubting
節物	jiewu	festival objects
誘	you	induce, entice
入謝	ruxie	come to give thanks
教場	jiaochang	parade ground
以…入謁	yi...ruye	have an audience with

數人	shuren	several persons
呵	he	berate, excoriate
若	ruo	you
吾民	wumin	my people
屯於外	tun yuwai	station outside
疑	yi	distrust
悉	xi	all
引入	yinru	lead into
祥符宮	Xiangfugong	palace name
厚	hou	generously
飲食	yinshi	provide with food and drink
大喜過望	daxi guowang	pleased beyond expectation
益	yi	more
自安	zian	feel at ease
留	liu	ask to stay
觀	guan	watch
正月	zhengyue	first month of the lunar year
大享	daxiang	a great ceremony or sacrifice
甲士	jiashi	soldiers in armour
以次	yici	in order, one by one
擒戮	qinlu	seize and kill
自將	zijiang	personally lead troupes
抵	di	reach, arrive at
連破	lianpo	destroy successively
斬馘	zhanguo	cut off the left ears of the slain
餘賊	yuzei	remaining rebels
奔	ben	escape toward

九連山	Jiulianshan	name of a mountain
橫亘	henggen	lie across
陡絕	doujue	precipitous
不可攻	buke gong	unassailable
簡	jian	select
壯士	zhuangshi	strong soldiers
衣賊衣	yi zeiyi	dress in rebel clothes
崖下	yaxia	at the foot of the precipice
招	zhao	beckon
內外合擊	neiwai heji	joint attack from inside and outside
無遺	wuyi	without anyone left
和平縣	Hepingxian	district name
置戍	zhishu	establish a garrison
自是	zishi	from now on
境內	jingnei	under one's jurisdiction
大安	daan	great peace
勢	shi	strength, power
發…兵	fa...bing	dispatch troops
合剿	hejiao	jointly exterminate
上疏	shangshu	memorialize
止之	zhizhi	stop it
不及	buji	too late
既滅	jimie	after [the rebels] were exterminated
始至	shizhi	have just arrived
尚未	shangwei	not yet

承檄	chengxi	receive the order
守仁所將	Shouren suojiang	what Shouren led
文吏	wenli	civil officials
偏裨小校	pianpi xiaoxiao	lower-rank officers and commandants
巨寇	jukou	powerful insurgents
遠近	yuanjin	far and near
神	shen	a god
右副都御史	you fu duyü shi	Right Vice Censor-in-chief
予	yu	give, grant
世襲	shixi	hereditary
錦衣衛	jinyi wei	Embroidered Uniform Guard
百戶	baihu	Company Commander
副千戶	fu qianhu	Vice Battalion Commander

Note: The vocabulary skips the following lines and picks up the text again with line 6 on page 5168.

天資異敏	tianzi yimin	naturally endowed with exceptional intelligence
上饒	Shangrao	seat of Guangxin Prefecture, Jiangxi
婁涼	Lou Liang	person's name
輿論	yulun	discuss with
朱子	Zhuzi	Zhu Xi (1130-1200), a philosopher
格物	gewu	investigation of things
大指	dazhi	gist
日	ri	daily
端坐	duanzuo	sit up straight

講讀	jiangdu	discuss and read
五經	wujing	<u>Five Classics</u> : Book of Changes (<u>Yijing</u>), Odes (<u>Shijing</u>), Book of Documents (<u>Shujing</u>), Book of Rites (<u>Liji</u>), and Spring and Autumn Annals (<u>Chungiu</u>)
不苟言笑	bugou yanxiao	not frivolous in speech and manner
九華	Jiuhua	famous Buddhist mountain in Anhui
築室 . . 中	zhushi..zhong	build a house in
陽明洞	Yangming dong	Yangming Ravine
泛濫	fanlan	immerse oneself in
二氏學	ershi xue	two teachings [Buddhism and Taoism]
無所得	wusuode	nothing has been gained
窮荒無書	qionghuang wushu	poor, desolate and without books
日繹舊聞	riyi jiuwen	daily ponder over what he learned before
忽悟	huwu	suddenly realize
致知	zhizhi	extend knowledge
自	zi	by oneself
求	qiu	seek
諸	zhu	it in (contraction of <u>zhiyu</u> 之於)
心	xin	one's mind
事物	shiwu	things
喟然	kuiran	sigh deeply
道在是	dao zaishi	the Way lies in this
篤信不疑	duxin buyi	sincerely believe in [it] and have no doubts

爲教	weijiao	what he taught
專	zhuan	emphasize
以…爲主	yi..weizhu	take ... as the principal thing
致良知	zhi liangzhi	extending innate knowledge of the good
周	Zhou	Zhou Dunyi (1017-1073), a philosopher
程	Cheng	Cheng Hao (1032-1085), a philosopher
惟	wei	only
象山	Xiangshan	mountain in Guangxin Prefecture
陸氏	Lushi	Lu Jiuyuan (1139-1193), also known as Lu Xiangshan
簡易直捷	jianyi zhijie	simple, easy, and direct
有以接	youyi jie	that can be taken to connect
孟氏之傳	Mengshi zhichuan	transmission of [the learning] from Mencius
集註	Jizhu	book title
或問	Huowen	book title
中年	zhongnian	middle age
未定之說	weiding zhishuo	uncertain teaching
學者	xuezhe	students
翕然	xiran	in a crowd
從之	congzhi	follow him
世	shi	in subsequent generations
有…云	you..yun	there is the expression
擅離職守	shanli zhishou	leave one's post without permission
廷臣	tingchen	court officials
事不是古	shi bushigu	in doing things do not follow the

		past
言不稱師	yan buchenshi	in speaking do not follow teachers
立異	liyi	create something different
以爲高	yiweigao	to elevate himself
非…之論	fei..zhilun	contradict the theory of
衆論	zhonglun	public opinion
不予	buyu	do not approve, do not consent
爲…之書	wei...zhishu	write the essay of
晚年定論	wannian dinglun	final judgement during one's later years
號召門徒	haozhao mentu	appeal to disciples
互相倡和	huxiang changhe	encourage each other
才美者	caimei zhe	gifted ones
樂其任意	leqi renyi	pleased with its freedom
庸鄙者	yongbi zhe	mediocre ones
借其虛聲	jieqi xusheng	make use of its empty reputation
傳習轉訛	chuanxi zhuan'e	[it] spreads and is studied mistakenly
背謬彌甚	beimiu mishen	[it] becomes more fallacious
討捕	taobu	attack and seize
奉	Fan	a southern minority people
擒獲	qinhuo	capture
叛藩	pan fan	rebel prince
功	gong	merits
足錄	zulu	complete records
免	mian	avoid
追奪	zhuiduo	retroactively [posthumously] deprive

		of
伯爵	bojue	title of earl
以章大信	yizhang daxin	in order to manifest the imperial sincerity
禁邪說	jin xieshuo	prohibit heretical doctrines
以正人心	yizheng renxin	in order to rectify people's minds
停世襲	ting shixi	stop the hereditary (transmission of titles
卹典	xudian	ceremonies for honoring the dead
不行	buxing	not be carried out
隆慶	Longqing	Ming Muzong's reign title, 1567-1572
頌	song	praise
贈	zeng	confer posthumously
新建侯	Xinjian hou	Marquis of Xinjian
諡	shi	confer the posthumous title of
文成	Wencheng	Wencheng
既	ji	shortly
又有…者	youyou...zhe	again there was...
薛宣	Xue Xuan	a philosopher (1389 or 1392-1464)
陳獻章	Chen Xianzhang	a philosopher (1428-1500)
從祀	congshi	admitted as a secondary object of worship
文廟	Wenmiao	Confucian temple
獨允	du yun	only agree with
配	pei	admitted
萬曆	Wanli	Ming Shenzong's reign title (1573-1619)

御史	yushi	censor
詹事講	Zhan Shijiang	person's name
申前請	shen qianqing	put forward the previous petition
大學士	daxueshi	Grand Secretary
申時行	Shen Shixing	person's name
出	chu	derive from
大學	Daxue	the <u>Great Learning</u>
孟子	Mengzi	the <u>Mencius</u>
主靜	zhujing	advocate tranquility
沿	yan	follow
宋儒	Song ru	scholars of the Song
孝友	xiaoyou	filial piety and friendship
出處	chuchu	service and retirement
氣節	qijie	moral courage, integrity
文章	wenzhang	literary works
功業	gongye	merits
不可謂禪	bukewei chan	cannot be called Zen [Buddhism]
誠	cheng	sincerely
崇祀	chongsi	worship in reverence
胡居仁	Hu Juren	a philosopher (1434-1484)
純心篤行	chunxin duxing	pure mind and sedulous practice
衆論所歸	zhonglun suogui	be inclined by the public opinion [?]
終明之世	zhong Ming	
	zhishi	throughout the history of the Ming
始	shi	at first
育	yu	raise
弟子	dizi	son of younger brother

正憲	Zhengxian	person's name
後	hou	heir
晚年	wannian	in his later years
正億	Zhengyi	person's name
孤	gu	become orphaned
長	zhang	grow up
承勛	Chengxun	person's name
督	du	supervise
漕運	caoyun	transport grain by water
先進	Xianjin	person's name
將	jiang	be about to
先達	Xianda	person's name
業弘	Yehong	person's name
伯	bai	husband's elder brother
自傳	zichuan	hand down
吾夫	wufu	my husband
由父及子	youfu jizi	skip the father and go to the son
爵	jue	noble title
安往	anwang	how can [it be] be conferred [in this way?]
族子	zuzi	son of paternal male third cousin
業洵	Yexun	person's name
以…嗣	yi...si	inherit with the status of
非嫡	feidi	not a son of the wife
終	zhong	eventually
歸爵	guijue	return the noble title to
虞	yu	worry; expect

争	zheng	fight
谤	bang	slander, vilify, defame
乞养	qiyang	adoption
别推	bietui	recommend [someone] else
先通	xiantong	person's name
屡争于朝	luzheng yuchao	contend again and again at the court
不决	bujue	do not settle
崇禎	Chongzhen	Ming Sizong's reign title, 1628-1644
疏辨	shubian	argue to distinguish in a memorial
兄	xiong	elder brother
業浩	Yehao	person's name
總督	zongdu	Supreme Commander
所司	suosi	responsible government offices
懼忤	juwu	fear [that they will] offend
竟	jing	to one's surprise, unexpectedly
憤	fen	be resentful
持疏	chishu	carry memorial
入禁門訴	ru jinmen su	enter palace gate to complain, accuse
自刎	ziwen	commit suicide by cutting one's throat
不殊	bushu	do not die
執下獄	zhi xiayu	be seized and put in prison
尋釋	xunshi	be released soon
流賊	liuzei	bandits
陷	xian	capture

DOCUMENT 4. Turpan (MINGSHI).

This document is an example of the treatment of a region beyond the reach of Ming administration. The text is taken from the Xiyu 西域 (Western regions) section of the MINGSHI, juan 329, toward the end of the biographies (liezhuan 列傳). Turfan, or Turpan, is located in the northeastern part of present day Xinjiang. In the Ming period it was the seat of a sultanate subordinated to Yelibali. See Tan Qixiang, ZHONGGUO LISHI DILI TUJI, map of Yelibali, 88-89.

西域	Xiyu	western regions, generic term for territories beyond Jiayu Pass of Gansu
土魯番	Tulufan	Turfan or Turpan, a regime within the area of Yelibali [Ilbalik]
火州	Huozhou	Karakhoja, a place in present Halahezhuo, Xinjiang
在 . . . 西 去	zai...xi qu	on the west of away from
哈密	Hami	a Ming garrison on the western frontier
嘉峪關	Jiayu guan	a pass at the west end of the Ming Great Wall
車師前王 高昌國	Cheshiqianwang Gaochangguo	a state annexed by Gaochangguo in 450 state established in the Turfan Basin in 450
滅	mie	destroy, annex

置	zhi	establish
西州	Xizhou	a subprefecture of the Tang which was seized by Tubo in 790
交河縣	Jiaohexian	a district of the Tang which was seized by Tubo in 790
安樂城	Anlecheng	a city name
復名	fuming	resume the name
爲...所據	wei...suoju	to be occupied by
回鶻	Huihe	Uighur
嘗	chang	once
入貢	rugong	present tribute to the Court
設	she	establish
萬戶府	Wanhu fu	Brigade, a military unit theoretically comprising 10,000 soldiers under a Brigade Commander (Wanhu)
永樂	Yongle	Ming Chengzu's reign name, 1403-1424
遣官	qianguan	send officials
使	shi	be sent somewhere as an emissary
別失八里	Bieshibali	Beshbalik, a government which was established in 1370 by the descendants of Chagetai [Chagadai] Khan on the north of Tulufan
道	dao	pass through, by way of
以...賜之	yi...cizhi	bestow ... to them
采幣	caibi	colored silk
賽因帖木兒	Saiyintiemuer	Saiyintimur, person's name
貢玉璞	gong yupu	present uncut jade

明年	mingnian	the next year
達	da	reach
京師	jingshi	the Capital
番僧	fanseng	"barbarian" Buddhist priest
清來	Qing Lai	person's name
率徒	shuaitu	lead disciples
法泉	Fa Quan	person's name
朝貢	chaogong	go to the Court with tribute
天子	tianzi	son of Heaven, the emperor
欲令	yuling	desire to have [them do something]
化導番俗	huadao fansu	transform "barbarian" custom
授	shou	confer [a title]
灌頂慈慧圓	Guanding cihui	
智普通國師	yuanzhi putong	
	guoshi	a Buddhist title [lit. ordained mercy intellegent kind wise generous preceptor of the state]
僧綱司	Senggang si	Prefectural Buddhist Registry, an agency responsible for monitoring the numbers, qualifications and conduct of Buddhist monks in a prefecture
賜賚	cilai	gift, reward, what was bestowed by the throne
甚厚	shenhou	very abundant
由是	youshi	from then on
來者不絕	laizhe bujue	visitors come in an endless stream
貢	gong	pay the tribute of

名馬	mingma	famous horse
海青	haiqing	gerfalcon; Buddhist priest robe
他物	tawu	other items
亦	yi	also
數	shu	for several times
獎勞	jianglao	reward in recognitions of services rendered
首	qiu	chief
尹吉兒察	Yinji'ercha	person's name
共	gong	together, in total
有加	youjia	be increased
已而	yier	for a while
歪思	Waisi	person's name
逐	zhu	expel
走歸	zougui	flee to
憫	min	commiserate, pity
命	ming	appoint
都督僉事	dudu qianshi	Assistant Commissioner-in-Chief
遣還	qianhuan	send back to
故土	gutū	one's native place
德	de	be grateful to
洪熙	Hongxi	Ming Yingzong's reign title [r. 1425]
躬率	gongshuai	lead personally
部落	buluo	aboriginal tribe
來朝	laichao	come to pay audience
宣德	Xuande	Ming Xuanzong's reign title, 1426-35
如之	ruzhi	do the same

待之甚厚	daizhi shenhou	treat them very generously
還國	huanguo	return to one's country
病卒	bingzu	die of illness
滿哥帖木兒	Mangetiemuer	person's name
都督	Dudu	Commander-in-Chief
鎖格	Suoke	person's name
猛哥帖木兒	Menggetiemuer	person's name
指揮僉事	zhihui qianshi	Assistant Commander
都指揮僉事	duzhihui qianshi	Assistant Military Commissioner
也先帖木兒	Yexiantiemuer	person's name
正統	Zhengtong	Ming Yingzong's first reign title, 1435-49
朝議	chaoyi	court discussion
久失貢	jiu shigong	have not paid tribute for a long time
因	yin	by means of, because
米昔兒	Mixi'er	Misr, a term for Egypt
齎鈔幣	zhai chaobi	bring paper money
巴剌麻兒	Balamaer	Tulufan's chief
初	chu	formerly
其地	qidi	its [Tulufan's] territory
于闐	Yutian	an ancient government in the south of Yelibali, at present Hetian, Xinjiang
諸大國	zhu daguo	various big countries
…間	...jian	between, among
勢	shi	situation, power, condition
微弱	weiruo	weak
後	hou	later on

侵掠	qinlüe	invade and plunder
柳城	Liucheng	Lukchak, a place southeast of Tulufan and Huozhou
爲所并	weisuobing	be annexed
日強	riqiang	become ever stronger
也密力	Yemili	person's name
火者	huozhe	the one who is castrated
僭稱	jiancheng	falsely claim
景泰	Jingtai	Ming Daizong's reign title, 1450-56
偕	xie	together with, in the company of
部下頭目	buxia toumu	subordinate chiefs
天順	Tianshun	Ming Yingzong's second reign title, 1457-64
復	fu	return to the original condition
進秩	jinzhi	get promoted
先後	xianhou	one after another, successively
指揮	zhihui	Commander
白全	Bai Quan	person's name
都指揮	duzhihui	Regional Military Commissioner
桑斌	Sang Bin	person's name
成化	Chenghua	Ming Xianzong's reign title, 1465-87
禮官	liguan	ritual official
姚夔	Yao Kui	person's name (See DMB 1557-59)
定議	dingyi	make up a decision
…一貢	...yigong	there should be one tribute [for a given time]
不得過	bude guo	may not exceed

阿力	Ali	Hajji'Ali, (DMB 479-81)
自稱	zicheng	call himself
速檀	sutan	Sultan
奏求	zouqiu	request in a memorial
鞍馬	anma	saddled horse
蟒服	mangfu	python robe
器用	qiyong	[ritual] utensils
物多違禁	wu duo jinwei	most of the items are prohibited
盡從	jincong	completely meet [the demands]
布帛	bubo	cottons and silks
忽撥思箏	Hubosi zheng	a kind of stringed musical instrument
鼓鐸	gu luo	drums and gongs
鞞鐙	chan deng	saddle-flaps and stirrups
高麗布	Gaoli bu	Korean cloth
廷議	tingyi	court decision
不許	buxu	do not allow
時	shi	at that time
愈強	yuqiang	get stronger
以無主削弱	yi wuzhu xueruo	become weaker because there is no ruler
襲破	xipo	attack and break through
執王母	zhi wangmu	capture the king's mother, Nuwendashili
奪金印	duo jinyin	seize the gold seal
分兵守之	fenbing shouzhi	divide the forces to defend it
去	qu	leave
朝廷	chaoting	the Court

李文	Li Wen	Vice Commissioner-in-chief
經略	jinglue	take command
無功而還	wugong erhuan	return without any achievement
修貢如故	xiugong rugu	pay tribute as before
一歲	yisui	one year
善待之	shandai zhi	treat them benevolently [kindly]
未嘗	weichang	never
一語嚴詰	yiyu yanjie	interrogate [them] with one word
貢使	gongshi	tribute emissary
益傲	yiao	become more arrogant
馴象	xunxiang	trained elephants
兵部	Bingbu	Ministry of War
以備儀衛	yibei yiwei	be prepared for ceremonial guard
進獻	jinxian	prescribe
求索	qiusuo	solicitation
却	que	refuse
復言	fuyan	say again
城池	chengchi	city [lit. wall and moat]
瓦剌	Wala	Oirats, a government established by Mongols on the north of Yelibali
奄檀王	Yantanwang	person's name
人馬	renma	men and horses [troops]
收捕	shoubu	capture
曲先	Quxian	a Ming guard [<u>wei</u>] on the south of Tulufan
亦思渴	Yesike	place name
倒刺火只	Daolahuo zhi	person's name

乞	qi	beg for, ask for
通道	tongdao	open [clear] roads
往來	wanlai	relations [lit. coming and going]
和好	hehao	restore good [relationship]
迤西	yixi	towards the west
無阻	wuzu	without hindrance
果	guo	[if...] indeed
誠心	chengxin	sincerely
不計前愆	buji qianqian	do not take into account of the past faults
以禮待	yili dai	treat [somebody] with courtesy
赤斤	Chijin	a Ming guard [of surrendered Mongols] southeast of Tulufan
素與有仇	su yu youchou	always have feud with
將士	jiangshi	troops
護行	huxing	escort
且	qie	still, besides
止	zhi	only
以物產充貢	yi wuchan	
	chonggong	pay tribute with the local products
願	yuan	hope
質	zhi	make [sb.] a hostage
家屬	jiashu	families
邊	bian	frontier
賜敕	cichi	issue an imperial decree
歸諭	guiyu	go back and inform [his ruler] with the imperial proclamation

獻還	xianhuan	return
城印	chengyin	the city seal
從其 . .	cong qi..	
之請	..zhi qing	follow his request of
如初	ruchu	as before
甘州	Ganzhou	five Ming guards at the seat of Shaanxi Branch Regional Military Commission [<u>xing dusi</u>]
守臣	shouchen	garrison commander
俱存	jucun	both exist
俟	si	wait for, until, as soon as
往諭	wangyu	go to proclaim
俾	bi	ask, make
大臣	dachen	high officials
專務姑息	zhuanwu guxi	devote special attention to appeasement
致..無顧忌	zhi...wuguji	have no scruples towards ...
還方小丑	xiafang xiaochou	wretches from afar
阿黑馬	Aheima	person's name (DMB 1-2)
嗣	si	succeed to
罕慎	Hanshen	person's name
潛師	qianshi	move troops secretly
擣	dao	attack
克之	kezhi	capture it
賊將	zejjiang	rebel general
牙蘭	Yalan	person's name
遁走	dunzou	flee away

頗懼	poju	be very frightened
功	gong	merit
將	jiang	be about to
立	li	establish
聞之	wenzhi	hear of it
怒	nu	be angry
忠順	Zhongshun	an ethnic group
僞與結婚	weiyu jiehun	have connections with him through marriage under false pretense
弘治	Hongzhi	Ming Xiaozong's reign title, 1488-1505
誘...盟	you...meng	lure ...to form an alliance
執殺之	zhisha zhi	seize and kill him
稱	cheng	claim
與...締姻	yu...diyin	connect ... through marriage
九龍潭金 膝襪	jiulong hunjin xilan	a kind of apron made of unpurified gold with design of nine dragons
變	bian	incident
不罪	buzui	do not put the blame on
歸我侵地	gui wo qindi	return our [Chinese] land that had been occupied
易與	yiyu	easy to cope with
奉命	fengming	follow the order
薄其賞	bo qi shang	reduce the amount of gift given in return
拘	ju	detain

稍懼	shaoju	be a little frightened
撒馬兒罕	Samaerhan	person's name
獅子	shizi	lion
勿納	wuna	do not accept [the petition]
及	ji	when
內官	neiguan	eunuch
張芾	Zhang Fei	person's name
內閣	neige	Grand Secretariat
草敕	caochi	draft imperial decree
閣臣	gechen	Grand Secretary
劉吉	Liu Ji	person's name
背負天恩	beifu tianen	turn his back on Heavenly grace
宜	yi	be proper to [do]
大將	dajiang	high-ranking officer
直搗	zhidao	go straight and attack
巢穴	chaoxue	lair, den, nest
滅其種類	mie qi zhonglei	exterminate their race
始足	shizu	until [that is done] be it enough
雪...之憤	xue...zhi fen	wreak one's vengeance
或	huo	or, in other case
即	ji	right away
討	tao	send a punitive expedition against
亦當如	yidang ru	should follow [the example of]
古帝王	gu diwang	ancient rulers
封	feng	close
玉門關	Yumen guan	Yumen Pass, a pass at Ming Left Guard of Handong [<u>handong zuo wei</u>] on the

		southwest of Tulufan and Hami
絕	jue	refuse
猶	you	still
不失大體	bushi dati	will not lose the cardinal principle
寵	chong	show special favor to
厚加優待	houjia youdai	generously give preferential treatment
中使	zhongshi	eunuch emissary
伴送	bansong	escort, company
此何理哉	ci heli zai	What is the reason for this?
陛下	bixia	Your Majesty
事遵成憲	shi zun chengxian	every matter should follow the established law
乃	nai	but, however
無故	wugu	without reason
召	zhao	call together, summon
大內	danei	imperial palace
戲獅子	xi shizi	play lion
大賚御品	dalai yupin	generously bestow imperial articles
誇耀	kuayao	flaunting
都下	duxia	the Capital
咸為駭嘆	xianwei haitan	all become startled and sigh with regret
祖宗以來	zuzong yilai	since [the time of] ancestors
從無此事	congwu cishi	there has never been such a thing
奈何	naihe	why

屈萬乘之尊	qu wansheng	
	zhi zun	diminish the dignity of a ten thousand-chariot country
爲奇獸之玩	wei qishou	
	zhi wan	engage in appreciation of play with rare animals
異言異服	yiyan yifu	different language and bizarre dress
雜遝	zata	mess up, pollute
清嚴之地	qingyan zhi di	pure and forbidden place
况	kuang	besides, in addition
滿刺都兒	Manlatuer	person's name
外舅	waijiu	wife's father
忘主事警	wangzhu shichou	forget the master [ruler] and serve the enemy
逆天無道	nitian wudao	act against Heaven and not follow the right way
聚集	juji	gather together
謀犯	moufan	plot to attack
肅州	Suzhou	a Ming guard on the west border of Shaanxi Branch Regional Military Commission
名	ming	in name
奉貢	fenggong	present tribute
意	yi	intention
叵測	poce	unfathomable, unpredictable
羈	ji	detain
正合事宜	zhenghe shiyi	[it is] exactly suitable to the

		matter concerned
若	ruo	if
不停..之行	buting...zhi	
	xing	not stop the trip
彼	bi	his, their
必謂	biwei	must say
中土帝王	zhongtu diwang	ruler of the central land
通情希寵	tongqing xichong	get through to his emotions and hope to restore his favor
謀國	mouguo	plan [manage] the government
其奈我何	qi naiwohe	How can they do anything to me?!
長..之志	zhang...zhi zhi	enhance [one]'s aspiration
損..之威	sun...zhi wei	damage [one]'s prestige
天朝	tianchao	the Heavenly [imperial] court
莫甚于此	mo shen yu ci	nothing could be more serious than this
疏入	shu ru	the memorial enters [the imperial palace]
興師	xingshi	move troops [to send punitive expedition against]
時勢未能	shishi weineng	time is not ripe
飼獅	sishi	feed lion
日用	riyong	use daily
守獅	shoushi	guard lion
日役	riyi	employ daily
校尉	xiaowei	Commandant
餵養	weiyang	feed and raise

自斃	zibi	die themselves [naturally]
傳之千載	chuanzhi qianzai	spread it for thousand years
實為美談	shiwei meitan	indeed it is a favorite tale
不能用	buneng yong	cannot follow [the advice]
從海道	cong haidao	via sea
朝	chao	the court
潛詣	qianyi	secretly visit
治...罪	zhi...zui	punish [one's] crime
沿途有司	yantu yousi	responsible officials along the route
中外乂安	zhongwai yian	all is at peace both inside and outside China
馬文升	Ma Wensheng	Minister of War and Personnel successively at Ming Xiaozong's Court, good at dealing with military affairs (DMB 1027-29)
耿裕	Geng Yu	Minister of Rites and Personnel successively in Ming Xiaozong's Court, well-known for being honest and upright (DMB 713)
輩	bei	people of a certain kind, the like
知國體	zhi guoti	know the principles of government
多所裁損	duosuo caisun	reduce many
稍知	shaozhi	begin to know
有人	youren	there are [able] persons
邊臣以聞	bianchen yiwen	frontier officers memorialize it
果	guo	really, as expected
陝巴	Shanba	person's name

封	feng	confer, enfeoff
納	na	accept
先所拘者	xian suoju zhe	those who are detained before
盡釋還	jin shihuan	all are released
前使	qianshi	early group of emissaries
出境	chujing	leave the country
後使	houshi	later group of emissaries
襲陷	xixian	attack and occupy
侍郎	shilang	Vice Minister
張海	Zhang Hai	Right Vice Minister of War at Ming Xiaozong's Court
進見	jinjian	come to pay audience
諫	jian	admonish, remonstrate
取外番	yu waifan	drive [control] outside barbarians
惜大體	xi dati	treasure the cardinal principles
入都	rudu	enter the Capital
宣召	xuanzhao	summon to court
至再	zhizai	many times
謾書	manshu	deceiving [exaggrated] documents
投入	touru	send in
小人	xiaoren	mean persons
何知	he zhi	how [can they] know
將謂	jiang wei	be going to say
恩禮	enli	grace and courtesy
視昔有加	shixi youjia	be increased than before
乃畏我而然	nai weiwo erran	it is because [China] fears us
事干國體	shi gan guoti	the matter is concerned with the

		dynastic principle
不可不慎	buke bushen	cannot be incautious
倔強無禮	juejiang wuli	be stubborn and rude
久蓄	jiuxu	cherish for long time
不庭之心	buting zhixin	intention of being unrespectful to the [central] court
	qinxin fuxin	trusted followers and reliable agents
	jinye	forbidden palace
略無防閑	lüewu fangxian	generally there is no precaution [guard against]
萬一	wanyi	just in case
奸宄	jiangui	the treacherous and the villain
窺伺	kuici	lie in wait for, be on watch for
潛逞逆謀	qiancheng nimou	secretly succeed in the treacherous plot
雖悔何及	suihui heji	be too late to repent [lit. though want to repent, how can get it]
寫亦滿速兒	Xieyemansuer	Mansur (DMB 1037-39)
宴賚	yanlai	feast
竣	jun	be over, finished
不肯行	buken xing	be not willing to go
恐	kong	fear
不寶遠物	bubao yuanwu	do not treasure distant materials
遠人格	yuanren ge	visitors from a distant land will be stopped
野獸	yeshou	beast
不足為奇	buzu wei qi	nothing suprising, not worth

		wondering
何至	hezhi	how can it come to the point that
上煩鑿輿	shangfan luanyu	bother the throne [lit. imperial charriot] on high
屢加臨視	lujia linshi	come to inspect many times
荒徼	huangjiao	from far distance
覲聖顏	jin shengyan	have an audience with the emperor
藉爲口實	jiwei koushi	be used as an excuse [a cause for gossip]
抵	di	reach
甘肅	Gansu	a Ming frontier garrison, seat of Shaanxi Branch Regional Military Commission (present Zhangye, Gansu)
遵	zun	follow
永絕貢道	yongjue gongdao	forever close the tribute road
巡撫	xunfu	Grand Coordinator
許進	Xu Jin	person's name
走	zou	drive out
漸懼	jianju	begin to fear
鄰邦	linbang	neighbor countries
獲貢	huogong	obtain [the opportunity to pay] tribute
胥怨	xuyuan	all blame
款關求貢	kuanguan qiugong	knock at [the door of] the pass and entreat to pay tribute
安置	anzhi	settle
廣東	Guangdong	a Ming Administrative Commission in

		south China
爭立	zhengli	struggle for the throne
相仇殺	xiang chousha	kill each other for revenge
長子	zhangzi	the eldest son
拜牙即	Baiyaji	person's name
襲	xi	succeed, inherit
昏愚失道	hunyu shidao	be stupefied and foolish and lose the Way
益亂	yiluan	be more chaotic
桀黠變詐	jiexia bianzha	be cruel, crafty and deceitful
踰於父	yu yu fu	exceed his father
復有...之志	fuyou...zhi zhi	again have the ambition of
吞	tun	swallow, capture

DOCUMENT 5: Summer 1366 (MING SHILU).

This document is a selection from the MING SHILU or Veritable Record of the Ming. A separate Veritable Record was compiled for the reign of each emperor after his death. Zhu Yuanzhang, posthumously known as Ming Taizu, ruled from 1368 to 1398 under the era name Hongwu but because he was the dynastic founder his veritable record covers some events from the time before he took the throne. The selection presented here covers a month from juan 20 near the end of the Yuan Dynasty. Despite the fact that the Ming Dynasty had not yet been founded Zhu Yuanzhang is referred to in the text as "the Emperor."

明太祖實錄	Ming Taizu shilu	<u>Veritable records of Ming Taizu</u>
丙午	bingwu	the year Zhizheng 26 of Yuan Xundi, February 10, 1366 to January 30, 1367
四月	siyue	the fourth month (May 10-June 8)
壬子	renzi	a date (May 10)
朔	shuo	the first day of a month
		the circle indicates the starting point of an entry
癸丑	guichou	a date (May 11)
夏主	Xia zhu	ruler of Xia. Xia was an empire founded by Ming Yuzhen in Sichuan, 1360-1371
明昇	Ming Sheng	the second ruler of Xia who succeeded the throne at the age of ten in 1361

		and surrendered to the Ming in 1371
學士	xueshi	academician
虞某	Yu mou	Yu so-and-so
聘	pin	give one's regards and foster a friendly relationship
乙卯	yimao	a date (May 13)
上	shang	the Emperor (Note: that this is anacronistic usage since at this point Zhu Yuanzhang is only a regional power holder)
閱	yue	look up, read, review
車制	chezhi	carriage design
至	zhi	when, get to the place of
周禮	Zhouli	<u>Rites of Zhou</u> , a Confucian ritual text
五輅	wulu	five carriages
玉輅	yulu	jade carriage
太侈	taichi	too luxurious, too extravagant
何若	heruo	How about...? Why not...?
止	zhi	only
木輅	mulu	wooden carriage
詹同	Zhan Tong	an official and scholar
對	dui	reply, respond
昔	xi	(in) olden times
顏淵	Yan Yuan	a disciple of Confucius
爲邦	weibang	rule a country
孔子	Kongzi	Confucius (551-479 B.C.)

乘	cheng	ride
殷	Yin	Yin [Shang] Dynasty
樸素	pusu	simple, unadorned
渾堅	hunjian	sturdy
質	zhi	simple
得中	dezhong	achieve the mean nature
取	qu	advocate
飾	shi	decorate
攷	kao	look up, investigate
祀天	sitian	worship Heaven
未備	weibei	not prepared
未爲不可	weiwei buke	not impossible
參政	canzheng	(Yuan) Assistant Grand Councilor; (Ming) Administration Vice Commissioner
張昶	Zhang Chang	former Yuan official, executed 1367
戎車	rongche	military vehicle
萬世帝王 之師	wanshi diwang zhishi	teacher of rulers for ten thousand generations
斟酌	zhenzhuo	consider, deliberate
四代	sidai	four ages (of Yu, and the Xia, Shang, and Zhou dynasties)
禮樂	liyue	ritual and music
實	shi	truly, indeed
法	fa	model, law
何損	hesun	How it can harm...?

祭祀	jisi	sacrifices (to spirits)
况	kuang	furthermore
祀事	sishi	sacrificial affairs
誠	cheng	sincerity
敬	jing	respect
儀文	yiwen	liturgical elegance
頓首	dunshou	bow one's head
謝	xie	apologize
左相國	Zuo xiangguo	Grand Councilor of the Left
徐達	Xu Da	an important Ming general
淮安	Huaian	a route (<u>lu</u>) of Henan Jiangbei Branch Secretariat (<u>xingsheng</u>)
聞	wen	hear of, get the information that
張士誠	Zhang Shicheng	rebel leader who founded Zhou empire
徐義	Xu Yi	person's name
馬騾港	Maluogang	a place in Huaian (lit. horse mule harbor)
率兵	shuaibing	lead troops
往	wang	go
襲	xi	attack
破	po	destroy
水寨	shuizhai	a stockaded village surrounded by water
泛海	fanhai	sail on the sea
遁去	dunqu	escape
獲	huo	capture
俘	fu	seize

院判	yuanpan	Administrative Assistant
錢富	Qian Fu	person's name
舟師	zhoushi	water troops
進薄	jinpo	approach
城下	chengxia	under [at the root of] the city wall
右丞	youcheng	Assistant Director of the Right
梅思祖	Mei Sizu	person's name
副樞	fushu	Vice Military Affairs Commissioner
唐英	Tang Ying	person's name
蕭成	Xiao Cheng	person's name
籍	ji	register
軍馬	junma	troops and horses
府庫	fuku	offices and warehouses
出降	chuxiang	come out to surrender
得	de	obtain
糧	liang	grain
宿兵	subing	order troops to stay at night
城上	chengshang	at the city wall
按堵	andu	live in peace
指揮	zhihui	Commander
蔡仙	Cai Xian	person's name
華雲龍	Hua Yunlong	person's name
守	shou	(stay there to) defend
丁巳	dingsi	a date (May 15)(Note scribal error: ji is written for si)
沂州	Yizhou	a prefecture of Yidu Route [<u>lu</u>], Secretariat [<u>zhongshu sheng</u>]

王宣	Wang Xuan	person's name
海州	Haizhou	a prefecture of Huaian Route, Henan Jiangbei Branch Secretariat, to the south of Yizhou
揚州	Yangzhou	a route of Henan Jiangbei Branch Secretariat
興化縣	Xinghua xian	a district name
長安鄉	Changan xiang	a township name
人	ren	a native of...
元末	Yuan mo	at the end of Yuan Dynasty; the triangle indicates a textual variant. See companion volume <u>jiaokanji</u>
司農椽	sinong yuan	Clerk for the Agricultural Promotion Office
會	hui	it happens that
黃河	Huanghe	the Yellow River
決	jue	breached
省部	shengbu	Secretariat
募	mu	recruit
淮揚	Huai Yang	routes of Huaian and Yangzhou
才能之士	caineng zhi shi	talented and able persons
俾	pi	make, have
召集	zhaoji	summon
民丁	minding	able-bodied males
疏濬	shujun	dredge
挺身	tingshen	step forward bravely

自薦	zijian	volunteered
以爲	yiwei	appoint as
淮南淮北	Huainan Huaibei	south and north of the Huai River
都元帥府	du yuanshuai fu	Chief Military Command
都事	dushi	Office Manager
賚	lai	grant, bestow
楮幣	chubi	paper money made of mulberry bark paper
市	shi	buy, exchange
竹蔑	zhumie	thin and flat slips of bamboo used for weaving
丁夫	dingfu	able-bodied males
就	jiu	thereupon
統領	tongling	lead
治河	zhihe	regulate the Yellow River
工成	gong cheng	work is accomplished
時	shi	at that time
徐州	Xuzhou	a prefecture of Guide Superior Prefecture [<u>fu</u>], Henan Jiangbei Branch Secretariat
芝麻李	Zhima Li	Li Er, a rebel leader who got the name (lit. Sesame Li)
起	qi	rise up
據	ju	occupy
州城	zhou cheng	prefectural seat
招討使	zhaotao shi	Pacification Commissioner
總兵	zongbing	Regional Commander

知樞密院	zhi shumiyuan	Administrator of the Bureau of Military Affairs
也速	Yesu	Yuan general, Grand Councilor of the Right
復	fu	recapture
授	shou	confer
義兵	yibing	"righteous troops" [i.e., local militia that suppressed the rebellion]
都元帥	du yuanshuai	Commander-in-Chief
馬陵	Maling	Maling Mountain in Yidu Route
調	diao	transfer, move
滕州	Tengzhou	prefecture in Yidu Route
鎮禦	zhenyu	Defense Commander
且…且…	qie...qie...	while, as
耕	geng	plough, till
戰	zhan	fight
給	ji	supply
軍儲	junchu	military provisions
移	yi	transfer, move
鎮	zhen	defend
益都	Yidu	route name
田豐	Tian Feng	former Yuan official who surrendered to Red Turban rebels and Yuan army succesively
兵	bing	station the troops in
子	zi	son

信	Xin	person's given name
察[罕]帖木兒	Cha[hān] Tiēmuer	Cayan Temür, a Yuan general
平章	pingzhang	Administrator (lit. to deliberate and decide)
于是	yushi	at this point
權勢	quanshi	authority, influence
日重	rizhong	become heavier and heavier daily
乘隙	chengxi	take advantage of a crack (chance)
攻掠	gonglüe	attack and plunder
遂	sui	subsequently
竊據	qiejū	occupy without authority
戊午	wuwu	a date (May 16)
先是	xianshi	before this
圖	tu	draw a map
海安	Haian	place in Yangzhou Route
通州	Tongzhou	prefecture in Yangzhou Route (present Nantong in Jiangsu)
高郵	Gaoyou	seat of Gaoyou Superior Prefecture
山川	shanchuan	mountains and rivers
地勢	dishi	terrain, topography
要害	yaohai	strategic area, important place
進	jin	to present (to the throne)
覽	lan	to read, look at
孤子角	Huzijiao	a place in Gaoyou
寇兵	koubing	bandits
絕	jue	cut off, sever
隘	ai	strategic pass

如旨	ruzhi	follow the imperial decree
至是	zhishi	up to this point (echoing <u>xianshi</u>)
淮地	Huai di	Huai area
平	ping	pacified, conquered
己未	jiwei	a date (May 17)
太史令	taishi ling	(predynastic Ming) Director of Directorate of Astrology [<u>taishi</u> <u>jian</u>]
劉基	Liu Ji	Ming high official
起居注	qiju zhu	Imperial Diarist
王禕	Wang Wei	Ming official
兵戈	bingge	war
靖	jing	pacify, quell
四方	sifang	four directions, the whole realm
凋瘵	diaozhai	destitute, straightened circumstances
軍旅之需	junlū zhi xu	military supplies
一出于民	yi chuyu min	all come from the people
紓其力	shu qi li	spare their effort, i.e. lighten demands for service
奈何	naihe	how can we do it?
用師之日	yongshi zhi ri	time to use military forces
資財用	zi caiyong	rely on procurement
出民所貢	chumin suogong	supplies which come from the people
均節	junjie	equalize and economize
必也…乎	biye...hu	It is essential that
制	zhi	establish the system of
常賦	changfu	regular taxation

國家	guojia	the dynasty
愛養	aiyang	love and nurture
生民	shengmin	the people
正猶	zhengyou	exactly like
抱保	baobao	hold in arms and protect
赤子	chizi	infant
惟恐	weikong	for fear that, lest
傷	shang	injure
苟	gou	if
掬斂	poulian	exact high taxes
朘	juan	exort, fleece
脂膏	zhigao	fat and grease, flesh and blood
慈父	cifu	loving father
收	shou	get, win (the heart)
愛子	aizi	beloved children
計	ji	plan
定	ding	fix
困	kun	hard, difficult
崇本	chongben	exalt the root (i.e. agriculture)
祛末	qumo	denigrate (lit. dispel) the branch (i.e. commerce)
國計	guoji	dynastic finances
恒殊	hengshu	continuously in comfortable circumstances
上下兼足	shangxia jianzu	both the government and commoners can be provided for
道	dao	way

仁政	renzheng	benevolent government
庚申	gengshen	a date (May 18)
濠州	Haozhou	prefecture in Anfeng Route
李濟	Li Ji	Zhang Shicheng's general
韓政	Han Zheng	former Yuan militia Marshal who became Zhu Yuanzhang's general
水濂洞	Shuilian dong	place name
月城	yuecheng	crescent shaped outer wall of city gate
相當	xiangdang	on both sides
拒守	jushou	resist, defend
堅	jian	firmly, stubbornly
督	du	supervise
顧時	Gu Shi	military officer
雲梯	yunti	scaling ladder
砲石	paoshi	(catapult throwing) stones
孫德崖	Sun Deyai	Red Turban rebel leader (Note: due to a split this group was no longer friendly to Zhu Yuanzhang)
度	duo	consider
支	zhi	disburse
知州	zhizhou	Prefect
馬麟	Ma Lin	person's name
戰艦	zhanjian	warship
艘	sou	numery adjunct for ships
辛酉	xinyou	a date (May 19)
朱文忠	Zhu Wenzhong	i.e. Li Wenzhong, Zhu Yuanzhang's

		sister's son
會議	huiyi	jointly discuss
…事宜	…shiyi	matters concerning ...
諭	yu	instruct (by the emperor)
大軍	dajun	large contingent of troops
既	ji	already
克	ke	conquer
足	zu	sufficient
保障	baozhang	safeguard
控制	kongzhi	control
齊魯	Qi Lu	term referring to Shandong (lit. ancient states of Qi and Lu)
新附	xinfu	newly submitted
移戍	yishu	moved (to other places) to guard
留鎮	liuzhen	garrison, stay to defend
于其屬	yu qi shu	among the followers
選將簡卒	xuanjiang jianzu	select generals and choose soldiers
望	wang	hope, want to
長	zhang	command
易怨	yi yuan	liable to resent
將軍	jiangjun	commanding troops
處置	chuzhi	deal with, manage
得所	desuo	properly
安	an	peaceful
闕外	kunwai	commanding troops outside (the Capital area)
憂	you	concern, worry

壬戌	renxu	a date (May 20)
齋書	zaishu	bring letter
宿州	Suzhou	prefecture in Guide
吏民	limin	officials and commoners
失政	shizheng	misrule
豪杰	haojie	heroes
並起	bingqi	rise up altogether
奸詭之徒	jiangui zhi tu	crafty and cunning persons
假	jia	use as a pretext, take advantage of
向義	xiangyi	turn to (support) righteousness
名	ming	name, reputation
濟其私	ji qi si	benefit one's own end, serve one's selfish purpose
浙西	Zhe xi	western part of Jiangzhe Branch Secretariat
張九四	Zhang Jiusi	Zhang Shicheng's infant name
亂	luan	throw (the realm) into chaos
乍臣乍叛	zhachen zhapan	now submit, now betray (the Yuan Dynasty)
視	shi	look on
勢	shi	influence, power
強弱	qiangruo	strong and weak, strength
向背	xiangbei	support or oppose
專利自私	zhuanli zisi	solely benefit one's own interest
近	jin	recently
丞相	chengxiang	Councilor
南臺大夫	nantai dafu	an unofficial reference to the

		Censor-in-chief [<u>yushi dafu</u>]
誑誘	kuangyou	deceive and lure, delude and entice
浙右	Zhe you	i.e., Zhe xi, the western part of Jiangzhe (in ancient times, <u>xi</u> was called <u>you</u>)
擾	rao	harass, disturb, make trouble
邊民	bianmin	people on the frontier
詭詐多端	guizha duoduan	have a whole bag of tricks
討	tao	send a punitive expedition against
去年	qunian	last year
十月十一日	shiyue shiqiri	October 31, 1365
四月初九日	siyue chujiuri	i.e., the date of <u>gengshen</u> (May 18)
報	bao	report
鹽場	yanchang	saltworks
次第	cidi	one by one
安東	Andong	prefecture in Huaian Route
守臣	shouchen	defending commander
梅	Mei	surname
蕭	Xiao	surname
封	feng	seal up
府庫	fuku	offices and warehouses
甲兵	jiabing	armor and weapons
歸	gui	follow, pledge allegiance to
復其職	fu qi zhi	resume one's post
復其業	fu qi ye	resume one's occupation, reestablish one's business
實	shi	in fact

親戚	qinqi	relatives
故鄉	guxiang	hometown
安得	ande	how can (we not) ...
桑梓之邦	sangzi zhibang	hometown (lit. place planted with mulberry and Chinese catalpa trees)
不忍	buren	cannot bear to
卽	ji	immediately, without further consideration
興師旅	xing shilü	mobilize troops
鄉里	xiangli	village, rural community
是用	shiyong	therefore
遣使	qianshi	send emissary
告諭	gaoyu	proclaim
本州	benzhou	said prefecture
體	ti	realize, show understanding for
予懷	yu huai	my concern
毋	wu	do not
爲自絕	wei zijue	seek self-destruction
同知	tongzhi	Associate Administrator
陸聚	Lu Ju	an official
詣	yi	go to
請降	qing xiang	petition to surrender
事聞	shi wen	(When) the matter is memorialized (to the throne)
文綺	wenqi	patterned silk
白金	baijin	silver
勞	lao	reward (with bounties)

興	xing	rise, thrive, succeed
除暴救民	chubao jiumin	weed out the wicked and rescue the people
成湯	Cheng Tang	founder of the Shang Dynasty
放	fang	exile, banish
桀	Jie	last king the legendary Xia Dynasty
周武	Zhou Wu	King Wu, founder of the Zhou Dynasty
紂	Zhou	last king of the Shang Dynasty
民庶	minshu	commoners, the people
不驚	bu jing	not be frightened
由	you	by means of
行	xing	move
律	lǜ	discipline
加	jia	add, impose
王	wang	king, prince, ruler
師	shi	troops
胡元	Hu Yuan	the barbarian Yuan Dynasty
失政	shizheng	lost legitimacy, rule declined
汝	Ru	Ruzhou Prefecture
穎	Ying	Yingzhou Prefecture where Liu Futong started his rebellion
奮興	fenxing	rise with force and spirit
太平	taiping	great peace
致	zhi	achieve, realize
彼	bi	they
妖言	yaoyan	heretical talk, heresy
惑衆	huozhong	mislead the multitude

上順天意	shangshun tianyi	above, follow Heaven's will
下順民心	xiashun minxin	below, follow the people's hearts
是用	shiyong	so that
自底滅亡	zidi miwang	take the road to one's doom
雲集	yunji	gathered in clouds
老將舊臣	laojiang jiuchen	old generals and former ministers
握兵之權	wobing zhi quan	the authority to command the troops
戡亂之略	kanluan zhi lue	the strategy to suppress the rebellion
甚于	shenyu	worse than
群盜	qundao	a host of robbers
致使	zhishi	causing
中原	zhongyuan	Central Plain, the Chinese heartland
板蕩	bandang	turmoil, upheaval
城郭	chengguo	the inner and outer city walls, the cities
丘墟	qiuxu	empty, laid waste
極	ji	to the extreme extent
成功	chenggong	succeed
害民者	haimin zhe	those who harm the people
速禍	suhuo	suffer disaster promptly
兢兢業業	jingjing yeye	cautious and conscientious
敬畏	jingwei	revere and fear
天命	tianming	the Heavenly Mandate
修律	xiulü	make laws
治兵	zhibing	control the troops
教民耕種	jiaomin	

	gengzhong	teach people how to till
訪賢才	fang xiancai	visit worthies
定名爵	ding mingjue	establish official titles and noble ranks
命執法	ming zhifa	appoint law enforcement officials
伸冤枉	shen yuanwang	redress injustice
紀綱	jigang	net-ropes, fundamental principles of government
布	bu	declare, announce
政化	zhenghua	political transformation
周	zhou	spread, consolidate
納	na	accept
叛將	panjiang	turncoat general
爰	yuan	an introductory particle
屢	lǔ	frequently
捷報	jiebao	report of victory
削平	xueping	conquer, put down
當	dang	at the time of
嘉	jia	appreciate
乃志	naizhi	such an aspiration
咨	zi	an interjection (implies someone is being addressed)
罹	li	suffer
妖黨	yaodang	heretical cliques
遭	zao	suffer
毒	du	torment
供饒	gongkui	supply military provisions

轉輸	zhuanshu	transport to one place after another
勞苦	laoku	experience hard labor
日久	rijiu	for a long time
自…爲始	zi...weishi	begin from...
民間	minjian	among the people
稅糧	shuiliang	grain taxes
差役	chaiyi	corvee services
寬減	kuanjian	lenient and simple
安生業	an shengye	live and work in peace and contentment
毋或	wuhuo	have no cause to, no occasion
驚疑	jingyi	frightened and bewildered
癸亥	guihai	a date (May 21)
侍臣	shichen	attendant official
孔克仁	Kong Keren	person's name
壬辰	renchen	a year (January 18, 1352 to February 4, 1353)
亂	luan	rebellion
生民塗炭	shengmin tutan	the people are plunged into an abyss of misery (lit., mud and charcoal fire)
孛羅帖木兒	Boluo Tiemuer	a Yuan general
擁重兵	yong zhongbing	maintain a large military force
犯城闕	fan chengque	attack the imperial palace
亂倫干紀	luanlun ganji	confuse human relationships and violate cardinal principles
行已	xingyi	already
夷滅	yimie	exterminate, perish

擴麻帖木兒	Kuokuo Tiemuer	a Yuan general, i.e., Wang Baobao, Chahan Tiemuer's adopted son
挾太子	xie taizi	have the Heir Apparent in his power
抗	kang	fight against, defy
急于	jiyu	be impatient for
私仇	sichou	personal grudge
敵愾	dikai	hatred towards the enemy
糜爛	milan	oppress
終	zhong	in the end
成就	chengjiu	achievement
李思齊	Li Siqi	a Yuan general who surrendered to the Ming in 1369
張思道	Zhang Sidao	person's name
…輩	...bei	persons like, all their ilk
固	gu	although
碌碌	lulu	mediocre, commonplace
不足取	buzu shu	do not deserve mentioning, insignificant
一方	yifang	a region
受其敝	shou qibi	suffer their misrule
外	wai	outward appearance
內	nei	inner intention
寇心	kouxin	bandit heart
反覆	fanfu	change repeatedly
兩端	liangduan	two sides (the Yuan Dynasty and the rebels)
情狀	qingzhuang	such a state of affairs

可見	kejian	it is thus evident that
川蜀	chuanshu	Sichuan area
僭稱	jiancheng	usurp the title of
大號	dahao	grand title
喜于	xiyu	be pleased at
自用	ziyong	willful, always gets his own way
遠謀	yuanmou	long range plan
所爲	suowei	what (they) have done
擾擾	raorao	state of disorder
孰	shu	who
拯	zheng	save
揆天時	kui tianshi	judge Heaven's seasons
審人事	shen renshi	consider human affairs
有…之機	you...zhi ji	there is the opportunity to
可定	keding	can be settled
襄	Xiang	seat of Xiangyang Route, Henan Jiangbei Branch Secretariat
樊	Fan	Fancheng, a place close to Xiangyang
踰	yu	go forth from
淮	Huai	seat of Huaian Route
泗	Si	Sizhou, a prefecture in Huaian Route
首尾相[應]	shouwei	
	xiang[ying]	head and tail correspond with each other [ying missing in text]
擊	ji	attack
理	li	delete this word from text
必勝	bisheng	be sure to win

伐敵制勝	fadi zhisheng	attack the enemy and subdue [them]
貴	gui	the important thing
謀	mou	plan, strategy
舉	ju	effected, carried out
無不	wubu	none (can) not, i.e. any can
固不	gubu	although not
民物	minwu	people and property
凋喪	diaosang	in ruins
生息	shengxi	reproduce and multiply
猶	you	still, even more
方	fang	now, at this time
勞思慮	lao silü	to be worried
建康	Jiankang	old name for Nanjing, Zhu Yuanzhang's seat of government
汝	ru	you
趙均用	Zhao Junyong	a Red Turban rebel leader
部曲	buqu	retainer, follower
往往	wangwang	usually, often
重名	zhongming	important title
繼歸	jigui	subsequently turn to
食其祿	shi qilu	draw his pay
寧	ning	could it be said that...?
舊主	jiuzhu	former master
思	si	miss, think of
草昧	caomei	chaos
誠	cheng	sincerely
擇	ze	select

自附	zifu	attach oneself to
幸	xing	fortunately
去彼	qubi	leave them
昏暗	hun'an	pitch darkness
覩	du	see
天日	tianri	sun in heaven
豈敢	qigan	How dare ...?
反覆	fanfu	change sides again
真	zhen	really
豁達大度	huoda dadu	open-minded and magnanimous
英明果斷	yingming guoduan	brilliant and resolute
推赤心	tui chixin	repose sincerity in
任人	renren	employ people
報	chuo	stop
賞	shang	reward
令行禁止	lingxing jinzhi	orders are executed and prohibitions are carried out
命世	mingshi	to command the world, be famous
貳心	erxin	disloyalty
戮力	luli	do one's utmost
建功	jiangong	perform meritorious deeds
保	bao	preserve, save
富貴	fugui	wealth and rank, riches and honor
甲子	jiazi	a date (May 22)
發	fa	leave
省	xing	examine, watch
陵墓	lingmu	mausoleums (of the imperial

		ancestors)
博士	boshi	Erudite
許存仁	Xu Cunren	person's name
從行	congxing	accompany (him) on the journey
竹貞	Zhu Zhen	person's name
馬步兵	ma bu bing	cavalry and infantry
柳灘	Liutan	place name
渡	du	ferry over
部將	bujiang	subordinate general
陳州	Chenzhou	a prefecture of Bianliang Route
南	nan	head south
餽餉	kuixiang	provisions, rations
廬州	Luzhou	seat of Luzhou Route
俞	Yu	person's surname
平章	pingzhang	Administrator
見	xian	at the present time
東正陽	Dongzhengyang	a place in Anfeng Route
脩城	xiucheng	build (or repair) city wall
遣兵	qianbing	dispatch soldiers
巡邏	xunluo	patrol
絕	jue	cut off, sever
糧道	liangdao	supply line
遠來之軍	yuanlai zhi jun	troops coming from distant place
野	ye	open country
相持	xiangchi	locked in a stalemate
老	lao	despondent, gloomy, dejected
罷	pi	exhausted, fatigued

劉	Liu	surname
薛	Xue	surname
部下	buxia	followers
騎卒	qizu	cavalrymen
速	su	swiftly
與之戰	yu zhi zhan	fight against them
一鼓	yigu	in one vigorous effort (lit. one drumroll)
不然	buran	otherwise
事機	shiji	opportunity, chance
後患	houhuan	future trouble
丁卯	dingmao	a date (May 25)
曹國器	Cao Guoqi	person's name
沛縣	Peixian	a district in Jining Route
魚臺	Yutai	a district in Peixian
下	xia	conquer
張	Zhang	surname
同僉	tongqian	Deputy (lit. cosignatory)
司整	Si Zheng	person's name
邳州	Pizhou	a prefecture in Guide
侍郎	shilang	Vice Minister
邳	Pi	i.e., Pizhou
蕭	Xiao	a district in Guide
宿遷	Suqian	a district in Guide
睢寧	Suining	a district in Guide
追念	zhuinian	recall, recollect
仁祖	Renzu	Benevolent Ancestor, Taizu's father

		Zhu Shizhen's temple name
太后	Taihou	Empress Dowager, i.e., Taizu's mother neè Chen
始	shi	originally
葬	zang	bury
改葬	gaizang	reinter
典禮	dianli	ceremony, ritual
據	ju	accord to, base on
禮	Li	<u>Liji</u>
易常服	yi changfu	change from ordinary clothing
用緦麻	yong sima	use fine hemp (a kind of mourning clothing)
畢	bi	finish
除	chu	remove, take off
愴然	chuangran	broken-hearted, in anguish of sorrow
盡報	jinbao	thoroughly repay
製	zhi	make
素冠	suguan	plain [white] cap
纓	ying	chin strap for holding a hat
衫	shan	shirt, gown
經	die	hemp hat worn in mourning for one's parents
麤布	cubu	coarse fabric
比…爲重	bi...weizhong	more serious, graver
與其…寧…	yuqi...ning...	would rather [A]...than [B]...
輕	qing	light
有言	you yan	somebody says

恐	kong	fear
泄	xie	leak
山川	shanchuan	mountains and rivers
靈氣	lingqi	supernatural force
不復	bufu	no longer, not any more
啟葬	qizang	open [the grave] and bury [the dead]
增土	zengtu	add dirt
培其封	pei qi feng	heap up a tumulus over a grave
居民	jumin	inhabitant
汪文	Wang Wen	person's name
劉英	Liu Ying	person's name
有舊	youjiu	have had friendship in the past
召	zhao	summon
慰換	weifu	comfort, convey greetings to
招致	zhaozhi	recruit, gather together
鄰黨	lindang	neighbors
復	fu	exempt from the tax

DOCUMENT 6. Preface (HUANGMING YONGHUA LEIBIAN).

This document is the preface to the HUANGMING YONGHUA LEIBIAN or "Classified subjects concerning transformation under the August Ming," 136 juan, supplement 17 juan. Compilation was completed in 1570 by Deng Qiu (jinshi 1535, from Qiyang, Hunan). The work itself is a political and historical encyclopedia divided into 20 sections with 58 treatises covering the time from Hongwu to the Longqing period (1368-1572).

序	xu	preface
胡人	huren	Mongols, barbarians
主	zhu	rule
華夏	huaxia	China
汙	wu	pollute
衣冠	yiguan	dress (lit. clothes and hat)
禮樂	liyue	rituals and music
俗	su	custom
振古	zhengu	from ancient times
變	bian	catastrophe, cataclysm
皇天	huangtian	august Heaven
詎…乎	ju...hu	could it be that...?
無意	wuyi	have no intention
斯民	simin	these masses
挺生	tingsheng	rise up (as a hero)
太祖高皇帝	Taizu gaohuangdi	the founding emperor Zhu Yuanzhang (1328-1398)
起	qi	rise up

滁	Chu	Chu Subprefecture of Yangzhou Route in the Yuan Dynasty
濠	Hao	Hao Subprefecture of Anfeng Route in the Yuan Dynasty, Ming Taizu's hometown
…間	…jian	within the area of …
蘊	yun	collect, bring together
堯	Yao	a legendary culture hero
舜	Shun	a legendary culture hero
德	de	virtue
襲	xi	inherit
湯	Tang	founder of the Shang dynasty
武	Wu	founder of the Zhou Dynasty
迹	ji	trace, track; deed, achievement
一時	yishi	for a short while
良將	liangjiang	able general
精兵	jingbing	crack troops
應	ying	respond, answer
響	xiang	echo
乙未	yiwei	a year, Yuan Shundi Zhizhen 15 (January 14, 1355 - February 1, 1356)
遂	sui	then
渡	du	ferry over, cross
江	jiang	the Yangzi River
定	ding	pacify
金陵	Jinling	place name (modern Nanjing)
越	yue	exceed, spend

數年	shunian	several years
底輯	diji	pacify
東南	dongnan	southeast
始	shi	begin
遣	qian	send, dispatch
中原	zhongyuan	the Central Plain
山	Shan	Shanxi area
陝	Shaan	Shaanxi area
川蜀	Chuanshu	Sichuan area
兩廣	liang Guang	Guangdong and Guangxi area
閩	Min	Fujian area
浙	Zhe	a mountain in Fujian
車	che	carriage
書	shu	writing
攸同	youtong	standardize, make the same
肅清	suqing	clean up
邊陲	bianchui	frontier
震	zhen	shake
荒遠	huangyuan	very distant
咸	xian	all
慶	qing	celebrate, congratulate
中國	Zhongguo	China
聖人	shengren	sage
主	zhu	ruler, master
三重	sanzhong	3 important things: ritual (yili), institutions (zhidu) and literature (kaowen)

漸	jian	gradually
復	fu	regain, recover
蔚然	weiran	luxuriantly, grandly
觀化	guanhua	observe transformation
洪武	Hongwu	Ming Taizu's reign title (1368-1398)
末	mo	end
爰	yuan	then
建文	Jianwen	Ming Huidi's reign title (1399-1402)
恭惟	gongwei	a self-depreciatory term, indicating respect
成祖文皇帝	Chengzu Wenhuangdi	Zhu Di (1360-1424)
治	zhi	rule
善述	shanshu	transmit (as opposed to creating anew)
幾	ji	several times
炳	bing	manifest; hold
因革	yinge	inheritance and transformation
再	zai	again
都	du	establish the capital [at]
幽燕	youyan	Beijing area
益誕	yidan	increase, extend
文教	wenjiao	culture and education
仁宗昭皇帝	Renzong Zhaohuangdi	Zhu Gaozhi (1378-1425)
宣宗章皇帝	Xuanzong Zhanghuangdi	Zhu Zhanji (1399-1435)

繼體	jiti	succeed to the throne
元良	yuanliang	[as] Heir Apparent
重熙	chongxi	reiterate [the imperial] brightness
衍慶	yanqing	extend [spread] the goodness
傳	chuan	hand down
英宗睿皇帝	Yingzong	
	Ruihuangdi	Zhu Qizhen (1427-1464)
屢泰	lütai	seek prosperity
極	ji	the utmost point
己巳之變	Jisi zhi bian	Incident of jisi year (1449) in which Yingzong was captured by Oirats
仰荷	yanghe	rely on
景皇帝	Jinghuangdi	Ming Daizong Zhu Qiyu (1428-1457)
監國	jianguo	administer the country (temporarily on behalf of the emperor)
天心	tianxin	heavenly heart
效順	xiaoshun	loyal (respectful and submissive)
智勇	zhiyong	wisdom and courage
同猷	tongyou	counsel together
復辟	fubi	restore the throne
晏然	yanran	peaceful
嗣以	si yi	succeeded by
憲宗純皇帝	Xianzong	
	Chunhuangdi	Zhu Jianshen (1447-1487)
孝宗敬皇帝	Xiaozong	
	Jinghuangdi	Zhu Youtang (1470-1505)
武宗毅皇帝	Wuzong Yihuangdi	Zhu Houzhao (1491-1521)

紀	ji	generation, era
治	zhi	rule
興	xing	rise, revive, restore, promote
正德	Zhengde	Ming Wuzong's reign title (1505-1521)
奸孽	jiannie	the wicked and the evil
濶政	hunzheng	confuse [disturb] the government
迨	dai	until
世宗肅皇帝	Shizong	
	Suhuangdi	Zhu Houcong (1507-1567)
入繼	ruji	to succeed, enter [the Court]
大統	datong	line of the throne
縱	zong	bestow on, endow with, invest with
明聖	mingsheng	brilliant and sagely
資	zi	aptitude, natural endowments
時值	shizhi	it happens to be the time of
述作	shuzuo	narration and creation
盛	sheng	zenith
光前啓後	guangqian qihou	illuminate the past and open up the future
倫制	lunzhi	order and institutions
煥然	huanran	splendid, bright, resplendent
天子	tianzi	emperor, son of heaven (here referring to Muzong (1567-1572)
紹聖	shaosheng	succeed sages
致治	zhizhi	achieve great order
恭己	gongji	restrain oneself
無爲	wuwei	[practice] non-action

有血氣者	you xueqi zhe	persons, human beings [lit., those who have blood and breath]
不啻	buchi	not different from, only
出作	chuzhuo	go to work with the sunrise
入息	ruxi	return home to rest at sunset
足	zu	enough, satisfied
治化	zhihua	governing the country and transforming the people
隆	long	grandness, greatness
日臨月照	rilin yuezhao	sun looks down and moon shines
燦然	canran	bright, glowing
閭閻	lūyan	the country (lit. village gates)
兆民	zhaomin	common people
賴	lai	rely on
泳	yong	immerse, immersed
服	fu	willingly submit
顧	gu	regarding, as for
懿章	yizhang	fine texts
紀載	jizai	records
藏	cang	store
秘閣	mige	restricted
非…所得	fei...suode	not that which [certain persons]
草茅	caomao	non-officials, those who do not serve the government
寒賤	hanjian	people of the lower classes
睹	du	see
美	mei	goodness

臣	chen	I, the subject [note the small size of the character]
宋	Song	the Song Dynasty [960-1279]
儒	ru	Confucian scholar
邵雍	Shao Yong	(1011-1077) a philosopher
以…爲	yi...wei	take (A) as (B)
生	sheng	be born, live
大幸	daxing	great happiness
自分	zifen	consider oneself
幸	xing	natural disposition
懶	lan	lazy, be disinclined to
交納	jiaona	association, contact
爲	wei	become
書癖	shupi	book-obsessed
因	yin	subsequently
得	de	obtain
大明一統志	Da Ming yitong zhi	<u>Comprehensive gazetteer of the great Ming</u> , an official geography of the Ming, 90 juan
大明會典	Da Ming huidian	<u>Collected statutes of the great Ming</u>
五倫書	Wulun shu	<u>Book of five exemplars of ethics</u>
爲善陰騭書	Weishan yinzhi shu	<u>Book of doing good for secret merit</u>
聖政紀	Shengzheng ji	<u>Records of the sagely government [of the Hongwu Period]</u>

皇明詔制	Huang Ming zhaozhi	<u>Imperial edicts of the August Ming</u>
皇明文衡	Huang Ming wenheng	<u>Model literature of the August Ming</u>
名臣經濟錄	Mingchen jingji lu	<u>Records of administering [the country] and saving [the people] by celebrated officials</u>
誦	song	hum over, read aloud
未幾	weiji	not a great while, shortly
皇明通紀	Huang Ming tongji	<u>Comprehensive history of the August Ming</u>
金聲玉振	Jinsheng yuzhen	i.e., <u>Jinsheng yuzhen ji,</u> <u>Collection of the sound of metallic instruments and resonance of musical jade, an early congshu, published serially</u>
今獻彙言	Jinxian huiyan	<u>Newly opened collected words</u>
功臣錄	Gongchen lu	<u>Records of meritorious officials</u>
名臣言行錄	Mingchen yanxing lu	<u>Records of words and actions of celebrated officials, a collection of biographies</u>
理學名臣錄	Lixue mingchen lu	<u>Records of celebrated officials of</u>

		<u>the [Confucian] school of principle</u>
內閣詞林記	Neige cilin ji	<u>Records of the Grand Secretariat and Hanlin Academy</u>
名公	minggong	well-known gentlemen
傳	zhuan	biography
集	ji	collection [of works]
奏議	zouyi	memorials
不下	buxia	not less than
家	jia	masters (referring back to <u>gong</u>)
益	yi	more
刻心	kexin	sedulously, painstakingly
展玩	zhanwan	open [the books] and play [with them]
嘗	chang	once, as soon as
感	gan	be moved
思	si	think, ponder over
躍然	yueran	excited
當其...也	dangqi...ye	at the time of
若	ruo	like
竊	qie	presume(adds tentative or self-deprecatory tone to statement)
得	de	gains, what one has learned
嘆	tan	sigh
粗迹	cuji	rough records
巍	wei	lofty, eminent, imposing
成功	chengong	achievements, success
煥	huan	flaming, brilliant, lustrous
文章	wenzhang	rituals and institutions

日	ri	daily
泳	yong	immerse, swim under water
化	hua	transformation
輒	zhe	thereupon
手錄	shoulu	write down by hand, copy out
分類	fenlei	classify
久	jiu	in the course of time, as time passes
成帙	chengzhi	become voluminous (materials were piling up)
卷	juan	sections of text (lit. scrolls)
若干	ruogan	many
情	qing	feeling, emotion
生	sheng	arise, derive [from]
皦皦	haohao	vastness (of the ruler's virtue)
名	ming	name
雖然	suiran	even so
芹曝之私	qinpu zhi si	[the contribution is] trivial
祖宗	zuzong	ancestor
朝	chao	reign; dynasty
以至	yizhi	up to
今日	jinri	today
戊申	wushen	the first year of Hongwu (1368)
啓運	qiyun	beginning of the dynasty (lit. start destiny)
承	cheng	inherit
藉	jie	make use of
上	shang	above, superior

泰	tai	peaceful, safe
危	wei	danger
臨	lin	look down from above; approach, reach
下	xia	below; common people
偷	tou	loaf, waste time
察	cha	look at
消息	xiaoxi	growth and decline
盈虛	yingxu	waxing and waning; ups and downs
數	shu	plan, destiny, fortune
懷	huai	take to heart
兢業	jingye	caution and fear
危微	weiwei	fear and subtlety
幾	ji	essences; omen, portent, augury
懋	mao	make grand; encourage
樹德	shude	establish virtue
廣威	guangwei	spread influence
實	shi	fruit; truth, fact; reality
永貽	yongyi	forever continue
萬事	wanshi	ten thousand generations
太平	taiping	great peace
將	jiang	lit. to take; denotes object that follows
斯世	sishi	this world
民物	minwu	people and things
游息	youxi	[make] happy and at ease
化養	huayang	[make] transformed and nourished
斯	si	a particle which gives emphasis or

		strength to the sentence
征	zheng	travel, go
邁	mai	go on a journey; pass
固	gu	certainly, to be sure
耿耿	genggeng	bright, brilliant
微歟	weiyu	[there is] nothing like this
直	zhi	only
資	zi	property
博	bo	ample, extensive
隆慶	Longqing	Ming Muzong's reign title (1567-1572)
戊辰	wuchen	Longqing 2 (January 29, 1568 - January 16, 1569)
中秋	zhongqiu	Mid-Autumn [Day] (September 6, 1568)
嘗	chang	once
誦	song	recited
先賢	xianxian	previous worthies
詩	shi	poem (what follows is quotation of the poem; for a version of the poem see <u>Zhongwen dazidian</u> , entry 14048.55)
光	guang	illuminate, manifest
天德	tiande	Heavenly virtue
壯	zhuang	make splendid
帝居	diju	imperial dwelling
無以	wuyi	with nothing, without anything
報	bao	repay, requite
願	yuan	like to, willing to

萬年書	wannian shu	a kind of congratulatory memorial (this ends the poem)
紀	ji	record; Basic Annals
分門	fenmen	classify (the book is broken into categories according to the characters in this poem)
云	yun	and so on
明	Ming	the Ming Dynasty
進士	jinshi	metropolitan graduate
祁陽	Qiyang	a district in Yongzhou Prefecture, Huguang Provincial Administration Commission
鄧球	Deng Qiu	1535 <u>jinshi</u>
謹	jin	sincerely
序	xu	[write] a preface
畢	bi	over, finished

DOCUMENT 7. On Law (HUANG MING YONGHUA LEIBIAN).

The passage presented here concerns the creation of the legal system in the early Ming Dynasty. Written some two hundred years after the dynasty was founded, the compiler is interested in explaining how the law and various legal practices were instituted. Attention is given to portraying the Ming founder as a sage legislator. The text is excerpted from juan 100 of an unofficial encyclopedia, the HUANG MING YONGHUA LEIBIAN (compiled by Deng Qiu 鄧球, preface 1568, photographic reprint Taipei: Guofeng chubanshe, 1965), 8 vols. For details of publication and editions see W. Franke. As you can see from the reproduction, the text was printed with wooden blocks which were based on a hand written scribal original. In some cases the printing is unclear, in other cases the scribe who wrote the original used variant forms of characters which can be difficult to identify.

法律	falū	law, legal statutes
吳	Wu	the state of Wu governed by Zhu Yuanzhang prior to the Ming founding
元年	yuannian	the first year of a reign, here 1367
丁未	dingwei	a date
詔	zhao	an imperial proclamation
定	ding	to fix, to legislate
律	lū	Code, the body of legal statutes
令	ling	Commandment, a prescriptive set of norms issues as a companion text to

		the Code
漢	Han (?)	The Han Dynasty ?; original character is unclear
斷獄	duanyu	decide criminal cases
行事	xingshi	to manage affairs; administration
條格	tiaoge	regulations
吏胥	lixu	functionaries
緣	yuan	pretext
奸	jian	evil
既	ji	already, since
武昌	Wuchang	place name
即	ji	promptly
議	yi	discuss
詳	xiang	detailed
尋	xun	investigate; subsequently, soon
臺	tai	short for yushitai 御史臺, "tribunal of censors"
監	jian	short for jiancha yushi 監察御史 "investigating censors"
道	dao	circuit, a Yuan administrative subdivision
按察史	anchashi	surveillance commissioner
欲	yu	will, intend
巡歷	xunli	make an inspection tour
郡縣	junxian	districts
遵守	zunshou	observe
中書省	zhongshusheng	the Secretariat (central

		administrative organ in early Ming)
李善長	Li Shanchang	name
參知政事	canzhi zhengshi	assistant administrator (in Secretariat)
傅瓛	Fu Huan	name
松滋人	Songzi ren	a person from Songzi (a note to identify the preceding name)
楊憲	Yang Xian	name
大史令	taishiling	official title implying astronomical or astrological responsibilities
劉基	Liu Ji	name
翰林學士	Hanlin xueshi	Hanlin academician
陶安	Tao An	name
滕毅	Teng Yi	name
文原	Wen Yuan	name
僉事	jianshi	assistant commissioner
劉承諭	Liu Chengyu	name
諭	yu	imperial edict
坐 [法]	zuo [fa]	punished [should read <u>fa</u> : law]
連坐	lianzuo	punishment for being related to a guilty person
謂	wei	it is said
侵損	qinsun	harm
傷	shang	injure
衆	zhong	many
吾	wu	I
罰	fa	punish, fine

嗣	si	heirs, posterity
忠厚	zhonghou	honest, upright, worthy
犯	fan	transgress
立法	lifa	legislate, enact laws
貴	gui	emphasis, to stress
簡當	jiandang	brief
使	shi	cause, make
易曉	yi xiao	easy to understand (this is commentary)
網	wang	fish net
密	mi	close, dense
全民	quanmin	intact or innocent person
條緒	tiaoxu	articles, stipulations
繁多	fanduo	complicated, burdensome; too many
夤緣	yinyuan	intrigue, bribery
禁	jin	prohibit
殘暴	canbao	cruel
反	fan	opposite, to the contrary
害	hai	evil, do harm
卿	qing	high official
盡心	jinxin	with all one's heart
斟酌	zhenzhuo	consider, deliberate
行之	xingzhi	carry it out
庶	shu	so that
洪武	Hongwu	reign period, 1368-1398
戊申	wushen	January 20, 1368 to February 6, 1369
正月	zhengyue	first month of the year

己丑	jichou	February 6, 1368
大明令	Ta Ming ling	The Great Ming Commandment
頒行	banxing	proclaim, enforce
大綱	dagang	main outline
節目	jiemu	items, details
表里	biaoli	coat and lining, outside and inside
太祖	Taizu	Grand Progenitor, posthumous title of the Ming founder
齊	qi	regulate
漸	jian	gradually
哉	zai	final particle
陷	xian	trap, to frame someone
朕	zhen	the imperial pronoun; c.f. <u>wu</u> above
憫	min	commiserate, feel sorrow
芟	shan	delete
歸	gui	return
庶幾	shuji	so that
書	<u>Shu</u>	<u>Shujing</u> or Book of Documents
期	qi	expect
措	cuo	arrange, manage; renounce, abandon
尔	er	you
予	yu	I, to confer
至懷	zhi huai	bosom, keep in mind; best intention
處決	chujue	pass a capital sentence
秋後	qiuhou	after the beginning of autumn; this refers to the practice of carrying out capital sentences in the fall

庚戌	gengshu	January 28, 1370 to January 16, 1371
令	ling	order, an imperial command
三覆五奏	sanfu wuzou	memorialize three or five times (all death sentences had to be memorialized to the throne for review)
毋	wu	do not, may not
輒	zhe	abruptly, in haste
癸丑	guichou	January 24, 1373 to February 11, 1374
丙辰	bingchen	February 6, 1373
工部	gongbu	Ministry of Works
尚書	shangshu	minister
王肅	Wang Su	name
笞	chi	beat with a stick
六卿	liu qing	six ministers
職	zhi	office, duty
不宜	buyi	ought not
細	xi	trivial
加	jia	cause, subject to
辱	ru	disgrace
俸	feng	salary
贖罪	shuzui	atone for crime, redeem penalty
百官	bai guan	officialdom, officials in general
蓋	gai	the above (a particle indicating conclusion)
刑部	xingbu	Ministry of Punishments
劉惟謙	Liu Weiqian	name

學士	xueshi	academician
宋濂	Song Lian	name
更定	gengding	revise
輕重	qingzhong	light and heavy (punishments); degree of severity
頗有乖	poyouguai	out of line, inconsistent (with principle)
唐律	Tang lü	the Tang Code
繕寫	shanxie	write out
裁定	caiding	decide, determine
務	wu	the essential thing, emphasis
協	xie	harmonize
厥	jue	it
中	zhong	the mean, centrality
篇目	pianmu	section, subdivision
名例	mingli	names (of punishments) and principles (to apply them)
衛禁	weijin	imperial guard and pass prohibitions
職制	zhizhi	administrative regulations
戶婚	huhun	household and marriage
廩庫	jiuku	stables and granaries
擅興	shanxing	unauthorized levies
賊盜	zeidao	violence and robbery
鬪訟	dousong	assaults and accusations
詐僞	zhawei	fraud and counterfeit
雜律	zalü	miscellaneous regulations
捕亡	buwang	arrest and flight

斷獄	duanyü	judgement and prison
採用	caiyong	adopt
頒	ban	promulgate
條	tiao	article
因事	yinshi	in response to circumstances
授	duo	arrange, gather, pluck
補遺	buyi	supplement, addendum
撰	zhuan	write, edit
表	biao	memorial
進	jin	present to the throne
翰林院	Hanlinyuan	Hanlin Academy
比年	binian	previous years
例	li	regulations
參考	cankao	examine, compare, collate
折衷	zhezong	weigh opinions, discriminate
類	lei	classify
編	bian	edit, arrange
附	fu	attach
仍	reng	still, as before
名例律	Minglilü	the "Minglilü," a chapter in the Code
載	zai	record, enter [in a register]
何孟春	He Mengchun	name
津	jin (lǔ?)	the Code?
皇祖	huangzu	imperial ancestor
晉	Jin	Jin Dynasty, 265-420
文	wen	language
深	shen	profound

旨	zhi	meaning (in contrast to language)
奧	ao	mysterious, obscure, esoteric
士大夫	shidafu	gentry, officials, elite
乍	zha	at first
不逮	budai	do not understand
况	kuang	how much more
吏胥	lixu	minor functionaries, clerks
大學士	daxueshi	grand secretary
丘文莊公	Qiu Wenzhuangong	posthumous title of Qiu Jun (1420-1495)
嘗	chang	once
須	xu	necessary, must
儒臣	ruchen	scholars and officials
解釋	jieshi	explain
思索	sisuo	comprehend, think out
考究	kaojiu	investigate
悉	xi	comprehend, know
愚民	yumin	the stupid ones, the common people
容情	rongqing	yield to private emotions, show mercy
賣法	maifa	sell the law
云	yun	and so forth
皇明祖訓	Huang Ming zuxun	<u>August Ming Ancestral Instruction</u> , a clan law for the imperial family
有云	youyun	it says
守成	shoucheng	preserve accomplishments
大誥	Dagao	<u>Grand Pronouncement</u> , declarations by the Ming founder on criminal matters

黥刺	qingci	punish by branding on the face
剕	fei	cut off the leg
剕	yi	cut off the nose
奏	zou	memorialize
劾奏	hezou	impeach in memorial to throne
明法	mingfa	manifest the law
濟恩	jien	showing kindness
祖宗	zuzong	ancestor
垂	chui	hand down
訓	xun	teaching, instruction
邁	mai	surpass, go beyond
成周	Cheng Zhou	Zhou Dynasty
中罰	zhongfa	(use) appropriate law
長	chang	extend
王國	wangguo	sovereignty

DOCUMENT 8. Memorial re Ming Code (HUANG MING ZHISHU).

The "Jin Dà Ming lǔ biao" (Memorial presenting the Great Ming Code) is an example of a biao, one form of memorial submitted by high officials to the emperor. This document dates from 1374 when an early revision of the Ming law code was presented to the emperor Zhu Yuanzhang. Internal evidence indicates that the memorial was presented by the Minister of Justice, Liu Weiqian 劉惟謙. It was actually authored by Song Lian (1310-1381), an eminent scholar-official and literary figure who served as adviser to the Ming founder. This version is a preface to the 1397 version of the Da Ming lǔ in Zhang Lu 張鹵, ed., HUANG MING ZHISHU 皇明制書 (Taipei: Chengwen chubanshe, 1969), vol. 5, pp. 1608-15.

進	jin	to present
大明律	Da Ming lǔ	The <u>Great Ming Code</u>
表	biao	a kind of memorial, addressed to the emperor
臣	chen	Your subject, I (notice the small character indicating deference)
蒸民	zhengmin	masses
欲	yu	desires
欲動情勝	yudong qingsheng	desires are aroused and passion triumphs
詭偽	guiwei	craftiness and deceit
日滋	rizi	multiplied daily
強暴	qiangbao	bullies

縱	zong	be indulgent in
欺凌	qinling	intimidations
弱懦	rounuo	weak people
無以自立	wu yi zili	no way to survive
聖人	shengren	sages
因時制治	yinshi zhizhi	create government in accordance with the time
設刑憲	she xingxian	establish law
以爲…防	yiwei...fang	as a safeguard against...
欲	yu	intend (c.f. above)
惡者	ezhe	the evil
知懼	zhiju	have the sense of fear
善者	shanzhe	the good
獲寧	huoning	obtain peace
傳	<u>Zhuan</u>	the commentary
獄	yu	legal cases
萬民之命	wanmin zhi ming	(being related to) the lives of the masses
禁暴止邪	jinbao zhixie	restrain villains and stop evil
養育群生	yangyu qunsheng	foster all living beings
譬	pi	it is just like
禾黍	heshu	(grow) crops
刈稂莠	yi langyou	eliminate weeds
苗	miao	seedlings
茂	mao	thrive
白粲	baican	white rice
去沙礫	qu shali	wash out sands and gravel

可食	kecan	be edible
梗化	genghua	hinder the process of civilizing
敗俗	baisu	corrupt public morals
不有以	buyouyi	the means to, the wherewithal
誅	zhu	execute
堯	Yao	an ancient culture hero
舜	Shun	an ancient culture hero
治	zhi	achieve great order
自…以來	zi...yilai	since
軒轅	Xuanyuan	the Yellow Emperor
代	dai	every dynasty
刑官	xingguan	Minister of Justice
五刑之法	wuxing zhi fa	laws on the five punishments
漸	jian	gradually
著其詳	zhuqixiang	made in detail
弗可復知	fuke fuzhi	cannot know again (the laws in detail)
逮	dai	until, when
魏文侯	Wei Wenhou	Marquis Wen of Wei [424-387 B.C.]
師	shi	take...as teacher (advisor)
李悝	Li Kui	(455-395 B.C.) Minister of Wei
始	shi	begin to
采	cai	collect
刑典	xingdian	penal codes
法經	Fa jing	<u>Classic of Law</u>
蕭何	Xiao He	[?-193 B. C.] Chancellor of early Han
篇	pian	chapter, section

九章	Jiuzhang	the <u>Statutes in Nine Sections</u>
曹魏	Cao Wei	the Wei Dynasty, 220-264
劉劭	Liu Shao	official during Three Kingdoms period
衍	yan	amplify, gloss
晉	Jin	Jin Dynasty, 265-313
賈充	Jia Chong	(217-282) Director of the Imperial Secretariat [shangshu ling] in early Jin
參	can	refer to
長孫無忌	Zhangsun Wuji	a Tang official
擇	ze	select
可行者	kexingzhe	those (articles) that can be applied [There were 12 in the Tang]
大槩	dagai	in general
以…爲宗	yi...weizong	take ... as one's model; learn from
集厥大成	ji que dacheng	accomplished collection of the laws
洪惟	hongwei	grandly
受億兆君 師之命	shou yizhao junshi zhi ming	receive the Mandate to be the ruler and teacher of the masses
登大寶位	deng dabaowei	ascend the throne
保乂	baoyi	protect
臣民	chenmin	the subjects
孳孳	zizi	with diligence
弗怠	fudai	to be not indolent
訓迪	xundi	instruct
諄復	zhunfu	repeatedly
唯恐有犯	weikong youfan	for fear they would violate the law

慈愛仁厚	ciai renhou	mercy and magnanimity
意	yi	intention
每見於	meixianyu	to be often shown in
言外	yanwai	beyond the literal words
大舜	da Shun	the Great Shun
惟刑之恤	weixing zhixu	punishments should be carried out with great care
義	yi	the sense that
矜憫	jinmin	commiserate, have pity on
愚民無知	yumin wuzhi	the foolish people are ignorant
陷於罪戾	xianyu zuili	commit crimes
法司	fasi	judicial offices
奏讞	zouyan	memorialize cases for imperial decision
輒	zhe	then, often
惻然弗寧	ceran funing	feel sad and ill at ease
多所寬宥	duosuo kuanyou	to pardon [them] in many cases
是	shi	this [shows]
神禹	shen Yu	the Great Yu
見辜而泣	jiangu erqi	to see the guilty and then cry
心	xin	heart, state of mind
貪墨之吏	tanmo zhi li	greedy and corrupted officials
承踵	chenzhong	follow
元弊	Yuan bi	evil practices of the Yuan Dynasty
不異	buyi	not different from
乃	nai	so
不得已	budeyi	reluctantly

假	jia	by means of
峻法	junfa	harsh law
繩之	shengzhi	restrain them
是以	shiyi	therefore
臨御已來	linyü yilai	ever since [Your Majesty] ascended the throne
屢詔大臣	lüzhaò dachen	often summon high officials
更定新律	gengding xinlü	revise the new Code
至五六	zhi wuliu	up to five or six times
弗倦	fujian	do not feel tired
凡	fan	that is all because
欲生斯民	yusheng simin	intend to keep the people living
特勅	te chi	specifically order
刑部尚書	xingbu shangshu	Minister of Justice
劉惟謙	Liu Weiqian	person's name
重會衆律	chonghui zhonglü	again collect various law codes
以協厥中	yixie quezhong	epitomize their essence
近代	jindai	in recent years
比例	bili	precedents and special regulations
繁	fan	numerous
奸吏	jianli	corrupt officials
資	zi	take advantage of
出入	chu ru	exonerate [the guilty] and incriminate [the innocent]
咸	xian	all
痛革	tongge	thoroughly eliminate
每	mei	whenever

輟	zhe	abruptly, hastily
繕書	shanshu	write out
上奏	shangzou	memorialize the throne
揭	jie	put on
西廡之壁	Xiwu zhi bi	the wall of West Corridor
親御	qinyu	use in person
翰墨	hanmo	pen and ink
裁定	caiding	decide
由是	youshi	in terms of this
仰見	yangjian	look up to with respect
仁民愛物	renmin aiwu	love the people and be kind to creatures
虞	Yu	legendry tribe with Shun as its chief
夏	Xia	legendary dynasty before the Shang
同一	tongyi	the same
哀矜	aijin	extend sympathy to
易	Yi	the <u>Book of Changes</u>
山上有火	shanshang you huo	there is fire on the mountain
旅	lū	travel
君子	junzi	gentleman
以	yi	accordingly
明慎用刑	mingshen yongxing	to inflict punishments wisely and carefully
不留獄	bu liuyu	not to delay the hearing of cases
言	yan	[That] means
獄	yu	legal cases
不可	buke	shall not

不謹	bujin	not to be careful
書	Shu	the <u>Book of Documents</u>
刑期于無刑	xing qi yu wu xing	punishment is created with the intent that there will be no punishment
辟以止辟	pi yi zhi pi	penalties are used to eliminate penalties
自	zi	spontaneously
聖慮淵深	shenglü yuanshen	deep sage considerations
上稽天理	shangji tianli	examine heavenly principle above
下接人情	xiakui renqing	estimate human feelings below
成	cheng	to perfect
準繩	zhunsheng	standard
百代	baidai	for a hundred generations
奧旨	aozhi	the essence
行見	xingjian	we will see
好生之德	haosheng zhi de	the virtue of fostering life
洽于民心	qiayu minxin	in harmony with the people's mind
日月所照	ri yue suozhao	all who are illuminated by the sun and the moon
霜露所墜	shuang lu suozhui	all who are exposed to frost and dew
有血氣者	you xueqi zhe	those who have blood and energy
莫不	mobu	there are none who do not
上承	shangcheng	receive the sacred
神化	shenhua	transformation from above
改過遷善	gaiguo qianshan	reform their errors and revert to the good
悉	xi	all

臻	zhen	reach
雍熙之治	yongxi zhi zhi	the great government of harmony and peace
何其盛哉	heqi sheng zai	How splendid it is!
惟謙	Weiqian	Liu Weiqian
洪武	Hongwu	Ming Taizu's reign title, 1368-98. The eleventh month of Hongwu 6 was June 21 - July 19, 1373.
受詔	shouzhao	receive the imperial rescript
明年二月	mingnian eryue	the second month of Hongwu 7 [March 14 - April 12, 1374].
篇目	pianmu	sections
一準之於唐	yizhun zhiyu	all follow the model of the Tang [Code]
名例	Mingli	names [of the punishments] and principles [to apply the punishments]
衛禁	Wei Jin	imperial guards and pass prohibitions
職制	Zhizhi	administrative regulations
戶婚	Hu Hun	household and marriage
廄庫	Jiu Ku	stables and granaries
擅興	Shan Xing	unauthorized dispatch (of troops) and levy (of labor service)
賊盜	Zei Dao	violence and robbery
鬪訟	Dou Song	assaults and accusations
詐僞	Zha Wei	fraud and counterfeit
雜犯	Zafan	miscellaneous violations
捕亡	Bu Wang	arrest and flight

斷獄	Duan Yu	judgement and prison
採用	caiyong	adopt
頒	ban	promulgate
舊	jiu	former, old
續	xu	continue
令	ling	the <u>Commandment</u>
因事	yinshi	according to circumstances
掇	duo	select
補遺	buyi	make up a deficiency
其間	qijian	in the midst
損	sun	decrease
益	yi	increase
仍其舊	reng qijiu	continue the old stipulations
務	wu	it is essential that
合	he	accord with
重輕之宜	zhongqing zhi yi	the proper degree of harshness and leniency
云	yun	marks end of the memorial
謹	jin	respectfully
俯伏	fufu	to prostrate
闕廷	queting	the imperial palace
投進	toujin	send in
奉表以聞	fengbiao yi wen	report to the throne with this memorial
誠惶誠恐	chenghuang chengkong	with reverence and awe
稽首	jishou	knock the head, kowtow

頓首

dunshou

bow the head

DOCUMENT 9. Imperial Proclamation (HUANG MING ZHAOLING).

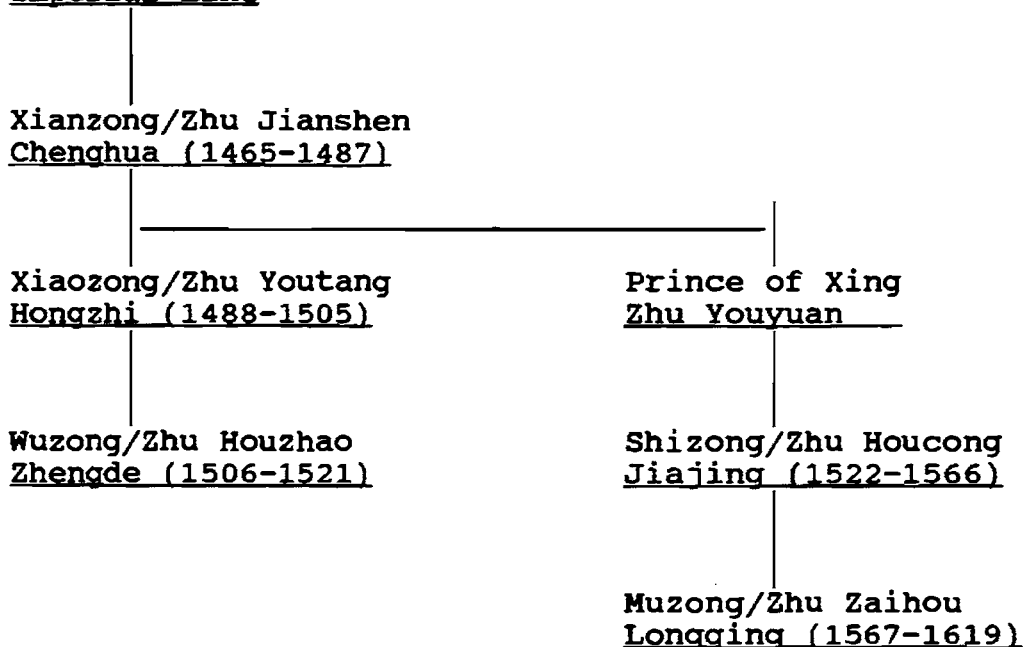
This edict, the "Dihou zunhao zhao," was issued in the first year of the Jiajing reign when Zhu Houcong, the son of a prince, was elevated to the throne because the previous emperor had died without heir. Zhu Houcong's desire to honor his natural mother and father conflicted with the dynasty's need for a direct succession. To maintain the fiction of an unbroken succession the new emperor would have had to become the adopted son of the deceased emperor's father and give up ancestral worship on behalf of his own parents. His unwillingness to do this led to a prolonged crisis in the court known as the Great Ritual Controversy. This document is taken from the HUANG MING ZHAOLING, 21 juan, a collection of imperial edicts from 1367-1539 selected and edited by [Ming] Fu Fengxiang 傅鳳翔 (4 volume Taiwan edition, Taipei: Chengwen chubanshe, 1967), vol.4, pp. 1652-64.

皇明詔令	Huangming	
	zhaoling	<u>Imperial Edicts of the August Ming</u>
帝	di	emperor
后	hou	empress
尊號	zunhao	venerable title
詔	zhao	imperial proclamation
嘉靖	Jiajing	reign title of Ming Shizong, 1522-1566, i.e., Zhu Houcong

The following table may be useful in understanding the

document. It shows the relationship between the new emperor, Shizong (Jiajing), his predecessor Wuzong (Zhengde), Wuzong's father Xiaozong (Hongzhi), and their common grandfather Xianzong (Chenghua). Shizong was the son of Zhu Youyuan, the Prince of Xing, a younger brother of Xiaozong and hence an uncle to the recently deceased Wuzong.

Imperial Line



三月十五日 sanyue shiwuri renwu day (April 11)

奉天承運 fengtian

chengyun entrusted by Heaven with the care of the empire (lit. receiving the [Mandate of] Heaven and carry on the fortune), phrase beginning the imperial proclamation

皇帝 huangdi emperor

自古 zigu from ancient times

帝王	diwang	rulers
以孝	yi xiao	by means of filial piety
治天下	zhi tianxia	govern the realm
尊親之禮	zunqin zhili	rituals of honoring [superior] relatives
來	lai	origin
遠	yuan	far
仰惟	yangwei	rely on
聖母	shengmu	sage mother [i.e., empress dowager]. In this document Xiaozong's widow, the empress dowager referred to as Shengmu, is first granted a title and then confers titles on Shizong's parents.
慈壽皇太后	Cishou huangtaihou	Merciful Longlived Empress Dowager née Zhang, Ming Xiaozong's wife.
敬相	jingxiang	reverence and support
皇考	huangkao	deceased imperial father
孝宗	Xiaozong	Zhu Youtang, reign title Hongzhi, 1488-1505
訓育	xunyu	educate and train
皇兄	huangxiong	imperial elder brother
武宗	Wuzong	Zhu Houzhao, reign title Zhengde, 1506-1521
舍弘光大	hanhong guangda	embrace the vast canopy and glorify it

蔚有	weiyou	carry splendidly
顯聞	xianwen	illustrious reputation
奄棄	yanqi	suddenly leave, i.e., die
臣民	chenmin	subjects, officials and common people
中外	zhongwai	inside and outside (the Capital)
岌岌	jiji	perilous, hazardous, in a very critical situation
賴	lai	rely on, depend on
我	wo	my, our
上念	shangnian	turn her consideration upward
宗社	zongshe	ancestral altars, the ruling house
大計	daji	grand designs
擁翊	yongyi	support, assist
衝人	chongren	young child (self-deprecatory expression by a young ruler)
入繼	ruji	enter (the palace) to succeed
大統	datong	the throne, legitimate line of succession
剪除	jianchu	discretely eliminate
凶逆	xiongni	evil traitor, rebel
潛消	qianxiao	secretly eliminate
禍變	huobian	disastrous catastrophe
呼吸之際	huxi zhiji	during a period of one breath
安定	anding	stabilize, maintain
家邦	jiabang	family and country
功德并隆	gongde binglong	merit and virtue are both great
揄揚	yuyang	praise

莫既	moji	not reach
不舉	buju	(if) do not hold
尊崇	zunchong	venerate, revere
典	dian	ceremony, institution
曷伸	heshen	how can express
孝敬	xiaojing	filial piety and reverence
誠	cheng	sincerity
皇嫂	huangsao	imperial sister-in-law [elder brother's wife], i.e., Wuzong's Empress, née Xia
皇后	huanghou	empress
巽順	xunshun	submissive and forbearing
含章	hanzhang	inwardly beautiful
安貞	anzhen	peaceful and chaste
應地	yingdi	respond to (the nature of) the Earth
伉儷	kangli	well matched (implying happy marriage)
宸極	chenji	the throne
表正宮闈	biaozheng	
	gongwei	play an exemplary role in the women's quarters of the palace
母儀	muyi	paragon of maternal virtues
有年	younian	have been in existence for years
名稱	mingcheng	titles
宜異	yiyi	should change
重念	chongnian	again think of
聖祖母	sheng zumu	sage (paternal) grandmother

貴妃	guifei	honored consort (Hucker), i.e., Xianzong's <u>guifei</u> , Shizong's paternal grandmother, née Shao
聖	sheng	sacred
善	shan	kind
仁	ren	merciful
慈	ci	benevolent
靜	jing	peaceful
專	zhuan	delicate
明	ming	wise
哲	zhe	virtuous
事	shi	serve
憲祖	Xianzu	Xianzong, i.e., Zhu Jianshen, reign title Chenghua, 1465-1487
贊理	zanli	help manage
內庭	neiting	inner court
燕禴	yanmei	ceremonies for sons on the day when the swallows come
兆祥	zhaoxiang	good fortune, auspicious
澤隆	zelong	grace is great (abundant)
佑啓	youqi	protect and enlighten (her children)
本生父	benshengfu	(my) biological father
興獻王	Xingxian wang	Prince of Xingxian, Zhu Youyuan (1476-1519)
聰明	congming	intelligence
天授	tianshou	Heaven bestowed
仁孝夙成	renxiao sucheng	benevolence and filial piety were

		long ago achieved
河間	Hejian	a Han Dynasty prince noted for virtue
好禮	haoli	fond of rituals
東平	Dongping	a prince in Eastern Han
樂善	leshan	delight in the good
餘慶流行	yuqing liuyan	surplus blessings are transmitted widely
垂裕後人	chuiyu houren	hand down abundance to later generations
本生母	benshengmu	(my) biological mother
興獻王妃	Xingxian wang fei	consort of Prince of Xingxian, née Jiang
莊敬	zhuangjing	dignity and respect
持身	chishen	maintain herself
儉勤治內	jianqin zhinei	be thrifty and industrious in managing the inner palace
媲德	bide	match the virtue of
任	Ren	mother of King Wen of Zhou
姒	Si	mother of King Wu of Zhou
遠嗣徽音	yuansi huiyin	inherit the good word from remote antiquity
誕育眇躬	danyu miaogong	give birth to and raise (my) trivial body
丕承前烈	picheng qianlie	grandly carry on former achievements
雖	sui	although
傳序之統	chuanxu zhi tong	transmit order of succession

義有所專	yi you suo zhuan	ought to be determined by righteousness
而	er	but
天性之恩	tianxing zhi en	natural benevolence (from his father)
自不容己	zibu rongyi	cannot be denied
用是	yongshi	for this, therefore
遠稽載籍	yuanji zaiji	look up the written records handed down from remote antiquity
博采公言	bocai gongyan	broadly collect public opinions
率籲	shuaiyu	lead ... to request (beseech)
文武群臣	wenwu qunchen	civil and military officers
謹奉	jinfeng	reverently receive
冊寶	cebao	the document (to confer nobility titles) and the seal
昭聖慈壽	Zhaoshengcishou	
皇太后	huangtaihou	Luminous Sagely Merciful Longlived Empress Dowager
莊肅皇后	Zhuangsu huanghou	Sedate Empress
懿旨	yizhi	a decree by the empress
上	shang	present
壽安皇太后	Shouan huangtaihou	Venerable Longlived Peaceful Empress Dowager
興獻帝	Xingxian di	Flourishing Dedicated Emperor
興國太后	Xingguo taihou	Flourishing Dynasty Empress
大禮	dali	great ritual (of conferring honorable

		titles)
既舉	jiju	already carried out
洪恩	hongen	great kindness (grace)
誕敷	danfu	grandly spread
所有	suoyou	all
合行事宜	hexing shiyi	matters that shall be taken care of
條列于後	tiaolie yuhou	list as following
宗室	zongshi	the imperial clan
年	nian	age
賜	ci	bestow
石	shi	measure of grain (about 133 pounds)
絹	juan	a kind of thick, loosely-woven raw silk fabric
匹	pi	a bolt (of cloth) (about four <u>zhang</u>)
一應	yiying	all
禮儀	liyi	rituals, ceremonies
衰病	shuaibing	decrepit and ill
自行	zixing	conduct by oneself
代行	daixing	conduct on behalf of another
以	yi	with it
示	shi	express
優老	youlao	give preferential treatment to the aged
意	yi	intention
庶人	shuren	commoner
布	bu	cloth
及	ji	reach, get to

婚配	hunpei	marriage
所司	suosi	responsible government office
具名	juming	write down the name, sign
以聞	yiwen	memorialize it
照例	zhaoli	in accordance with regulations
選婚	xuanhun	select (the mate for) marriage
量	liang	accordingly, appropriately
助	zhu	help
嫁娶之資	jiaqu zhi zi	expenses for the marriage
俱	ju	(for) all (these matters)
令	ling	order
有司	yousi	responsible authorities, government office
辦給	banji	manage and supply
鳳陽	Fengyang	prefecture in Nanjing, Ming Taizu's native place
高牆	gaoqiang	prison (lit. high wall)
還	huan	return
查	cha	investigate
原犯	yuanfan	original criminals
情罪	qingzui	circumstances and crimes
輕重	qingzhong	degree of seriousness
來聞	laiwen	come to report
軍民之家	junmin zhi jia	military and civilian households
許	xu	allow, permit
一丁	yiding	one able-bodied male
侍養	shiyang	serve

免	mian	exempted from
雜泛差役	zafan chaiyi	miscellaneous corvee service
綿	mian	cotton
肉	rou	meat
倍	bei	double
鄉里	xiangli	village, local community
敬服	jingfu	respect unreservedly
加	jia	add, bestow
冠帶	guandai	ceremonial cap and belt
榮其身	rong qi shen	glorify his person
五世	wushi	five generations
同居共爨	tongju gongcuan	live and eat together
不分異	bu fenyi	do not separate
具實	jushi	write down the truth
奏聞	zouwen	memorialize
旌表	jingbiao	confer the honor
詔書	zhaoshu	imperial edict
到日	daori	the date [when the edict] arrives
獎勵	jiangquan	reward and encourage
孝子	xiaozi	filial son
順孫	shunsun	obedient paternal grandson
義夫	yifu	righteous husband
節婦	jiefu	chaste wife
各處	gechu	everywhere
陵寢	lingqin	mausoleum
名臣賢士	mingchen xianshi	well-known officials and worthy scholars

墳墓	fenmu	tomb
毀	hui	destroy
發	fa	open
所在	suozaì	local
即時	jishi	immediately
修理	xiuli	repair
如舊	rujiu	as before
附近	fujin	nearby
民人	minren	people
看護	kanhu	guard, take care of
但有	danyou	as long as there is
露棺暴骨	luguan pugu	coffins or bones are exposed to the elements
悉	xi	all
與	yu	give
掩埋	yanmai	bury, cover up

Note: At this point the vocabulary skips to document page D 74.

各項	gexiang	each item
恩典	endian	gracious rules
軍衛	junwei	military guards
務在	wuzai	have to, must, essentially
着實	zhuoshi	actually, full force
舉行	juxing	carry out
虛應故事	xuying gushi	perfunctorily, in a routine manner
於戲	wuhu	alas
愛由親始	aiyou qinshi	love starts with familial relations

廣	guang	carry out, becomes broad
孝	xiao	filial piety
因乎心	yinhu xin	originate from the heart
恩以序推	enyi xutui	benevolence shall be extended using proper order (or hierarchy)
爲治	weizhi	achievement of great order
運於掌	yun yu zhang	is well in hand
詔告	zhaogao	proclaim
天下	tianxia	the realm
咸使聞知	xianshi wenzhi	make all hear and know

DOCUMENT 10 Adult Males (ZHENZE XIANZHI).

The ZHENZE XIANZHI is a high-quality gazetteer of a county in Suzhou prefecture. Zhenze county was created by imperial edict in 1727 by dividing Wujiang county in half. The selection presented here concerns rending, adult males subject to corvee or labor service requirements.

人丁	rending	adult male
戶口	hukou	population (lit. doors and mouths)
震澤	Zhenze	a county in Suzhou prefecture
吳江	Wujiang	the old county name before division
額	e	quota
順治	Shunzhi	reign period beginning in 1644
鄉紳	xiangshen	gentry
舉貢生員	ju gong	
	shengyuan	recommended tribute students
優免	youmian	those exempt by privilege
奉文	fengwen	received a document
紳矜	shenjin	gentry
按	an	note (small characters indicate an editorial comment)
改追	gaizhui	changed back
餘	yu	the remainder
賦役全書	fuyiquanshu	"Complete book of tax and service"
滋生	zisheng	supernumerary, outside the quota
恩詔	enzhao	merciful decree
錢糧	qianliang	taxes in cash and grain

續生	xusheng	added through natural increase
盛世滋生	shengshi	
戶口	zisheng hukou	supernumerary population of a prosperous age
通計	tongji	grand total
雍正	Yongzheng	reign period beginning in 1723
析	xi	split, divide, separate off
置	zhi	establish
分管	fenguan	separately administer
當差	dangchai	government service as runners
實免	shimian	actually exempt
充餉	chongxiang	to provision (troops)
乾隆	Qianlong	reign period beginning in 1736
烟戶	yanhu	household
郭	guo	suburbs
典史	dianshi	local police
轄	xia	control, govern
嘉靖	Jiajing	reign period beginning in 1522
知府	zhifu	prefect
王儀	Wang Yi	person's name
成	Cheng	Chenghua reign period, 1465-1487
宏	Hong	Hongzhi reign period, 1488-1505
保甲	Baojia	tithing office, local administrative unit
法	fa	the system of
嚴飭	yanchi	strictly enforce
編排	bianpai	enroll, register

牌頭	paitou	registration unit head
甲長	jiazhang	tithing head
保正	baozheng	security group head
裱掛	biaogua	paste up, hang up

DOCUMENT 11. Treatise on Rituals (MINGSHI).

The Treatise on Rituals (lizhi) is one of the more substantial technical accounts in the Ming dynastic history. The sections selected here concern such matters as administration of the capital in the event of the emperor's absence, proclamations, the reception accorded imperial orders, the presentation of memorials to the throne, and the village wine drinking ceremony.

東宮	donggong	residence of the Heir Apparent (lit. eastern palace), an indirect expression for the Heir Apparent
監國	jianguo	[temporarily] administer the realm
古制	guzhi	[according to] ancient systems
太子	taizi	the Heir Apparent
出	chu	go outside [the Capital]
撫軍	fujun	review the troops
守	shou	stay [in the Capital]
三代	sandai	the three dynasties: Xia, Shang, and Zhou
下	xia	onward
惟	wei	only
唐	Tang	the Tang Dynasty (618-907)
結	jie	knot, tie
雙龍符	shuanglong fu	tally with a double-dragon design
儀	yi	ceremony
著	zhu	written down, documented
永樂	Yongle	Ming Chengzu's reign title

		(1403-1424)
七年	qinian	the year jichou (January 16, 1409 - February 3, 1410)
駕幸 北京	jiaxing Beijing	the emperor visits seat of Shuntian Prefecture which became the Capital of the Ming Dynasty in Yongle 19 (1421)
定制 凡 常朝	dingzhi fan changchao	establish the system in all cases, whenever ordinary audience with the [temporary] throne
皇太子 午門	huang taizi Wumen	Heir Apparent, i.e taizi Meridian Gate, the front (south facing) gate of the imperial palace
視事 左右侍衛	shishi zuoyou shiwei	administer, rule attendant imperial guards
啓事 常儀	qishi changyi	make a statement, to report affairs ordinary ceremony
御	yu	ascend
文華殿	Wenhua dian	Wenhua Hall, where emperors listened to lectures on classics and history
承旨	chengzhi	receive the decree
召入 方	zhaoru fang	summon [somebody] to enter just then
內外 軍機	neiwai junji	inside and outside [the Capital] military affairs
王府	wangfu	princely establishment

急務	jiwu	urgent matters
悉	xi	all
奏請	zouqing	petition in a memorial
邊警	bianjing	alarm from the frontier
調軍	diaojun	move troops
剿捕	jiaobu	launch attacks and capture [them]
仍	reng	still
馳奏	chizou	memorialize swiftly
行在	xingzai	temporary location [of the emperor on tour]
皇城	huangcheng	imperial city
守衛	shouwei	guards
增置	zengzhi	augment, increase
官軍	guanjun	government soldiers
遇	yu	in case of
聖節	shengjie	imperial birthday (lit., sagely day)
正旦	zhengdan	New Year's Day
冬至	dongzhi	the winter solstice
率	shuai	lead
百官	baiguan	all officials
拜表	baibiao	send memorial
行…禮	xing...li	perform the ceremony of
稗	bai	prostrate
中門	zhongmen	middle gate
導	dao	guide, lead, direct
長安右門	Changan youmen	right door of the Changan Gate
文	wen	civil officials

五品	wupin	the fifth rank
武	wu	military officers
以上	yishang	above, higher
近侍官	jinshi guan	court attendant officials
監察御史	jiancha yushi	investigating censors
俱	ju	all
乘馬	chengma	ride horses
三山門	Sanshan men	Sanshan Gate
授	shou	confer, give
進奏官	jinzou guan	memorial transmitter
至期	zhiqi	when the date arrives
告天	gaotian	report to Heaven
祝壽	zhushou	offer [birthday] congratulations
千秋節	qianqiu jie	emperor [or heir apprent]'s birthday (lit. festival of one thousand autumns)
慶賀	qinghe	celebrate
享	xiang	sacrifice (to ancestors)
太廟	Taimiao	imperial ancestral temple
社稷	She Ji	[gods of] Soil and Grain
諸神	zhu shen	various spirits, deities
祭	ji	sacrifice
先期	xianqi	in advance (of the sacrifice date)
敕	chi	imperial rescript
攝	she	act (as an agent for another)
祀典	sidian	sacrificial statutes
神祇	shenqi	spirits of heaven and earth

太常寺	taichang si	Court of Imperial Sacrifices
四夷	siyi	barbarians from the four directions
來朝	laichao	come to pay audience
循例	xunli	follow regulations
賜宴	ciyan	bestow feasts
禮部	libu	Ministry of Rites
所	suo	place, location
詔書	zhaoshu	imperial proclamation
設	she	establish
龍亭	longting	dragon pavilion, small portable structure to receive the imperial regalia
儀仗	yizhang	imperial regalia
大樂	dayue	grand music
朝服	chaofu	[wear] court robe
奉迎	fengying	respectfully greet
冕服	mianfu	ceremonial robe
叩頭	koutou	kowtow
升殿	shengdian	ascend the Hall
展讀	zhandu	open [the scroll] and read
使者	shizhe	emissary
捧	peng	hold in both hands
置	zhi	place
雲輿	yunyu	cloud carriage
承天門	Chentian men	Chengtian Gate
開	kai	open
鼓樂	guyue	drum and music

詣	yi	go to
會同館	huitong guan	Interpreters Institute
北征	beizheng	northern expedition
復	fu	again
達	da	reach
嘉靖	Jiajing	Ming Shizong's reign title (1522-1566)
十八年	shiba nian	the year jihai (January 20, 1539 - February 7, 1540)
南巡	nanxun	southern inspection
幼	you	young
輔臣	fuchen	assisting minister
居守	jushou	stay and guard
軍國機務	junguo jiwu	important military and administrative affairs
聽	ting	allow
啓行	qixing	report and handle
皇太孫	huang taisun	Imperial Grandson-heir
皇長孫	huang zhangsun	eldest imperial grandson, i.e., the future Xuanzong
宣宗	Xuanzong	temple name of Zhu Zhanji, reign title Xuande (1426-35)
冠	guan	to be capped, enter adulthood
制	zhi	system
奉天門	Fengtian men	Fengtian Gate
諸司	zhusi	all government offices
具啓	juqi	open (the file)

施行	shixing	carry out, execute
要務	yaowu	important affairs
一	yi	one (copy)
啓	qi	report
處分	chufen	handle, deal with, manage
香案	xiangan	incense table
天下	tianxia	the realm, the empire
表文	biaowen	memorial
朝貢	chaogong	tribute
南京	Nanjing	the Southern Capital
武選	wuxuan	military appointments process
有犯	youfan	there is somebody who commits a crime
大者	dazhe	major matters
小者	xiaozhe	minor matters
皇親	huangqin	imperial relatives
犯情	fanqing	circumstances of the crime
重	zhong	serious
謀逆	mouni	plot rebellion
即事	jishi	immediately
拘執	juzhi	seize, arrest
會問	huiwen	jointly interrogate
不服	bufu	do not accept (a judgement)
公	gong	duke
侯	hou	marquis
伯	bo	earl
五府	wufu	Five (Chief Military) Commissions
六部	liubu	Six Ministries

都察院	ducha yuan	Censorate
大理寺	dali si	Court of Judicial Review
候	hou	await
車駕	chejia	the Carriage (i.e., the emperor)
頒	ban	promulgate
儀	yi	ceremony
赦書	sheshu	amnesty order
敕符	chifu	tally of imperial rescript
丹符	danfu	vermilion tally, an imperial rescript written with red ink
制諭	zhiyu	imperial proclamation
手詔	shouzhao	handwritten imperial decree
闕廷	queting	imperial palace
宣讀	xuandu	read out (in public)
頒行	banxing	promulgate
齎付	jifu	give
所授官	suoshou guan	the official who delivered (the document)
秘	mi	keep in secret
不敢	bugan	do not dare
發	fa	open
迎接	yingjie	greeting
洪武	Hongwu	Ming Taizu's reign title (1368-1398)
二十六年	ershiliu nian	the year guiyou (February 12, 1393-January 31, 1394)
御座	yuzuo	imperial seat
寶案	baosan	table for the imperial seal

陳	chen	display, set out
中和韶樂	zhonghe shaoyue	a music title
向	xiang	towards
清晨	qingchen	early morning
校尉	xiaowei	Commandant
擎	qing	prop up, hold up
雲蓋	yungai	cloud umbrella
帘	lian	curtain
班	ban	stand in rank order
皮弁服	pibian fu	court dress with leather cap
訖	qi	(when) finished
作	zuo	sound
自…降	zi...jiang	descend from...
陛	bi	stairs
金水橋	Jinshui qiao	Jinshui Bridge
鳴贊	mingzan	Herald, an official in the Court of State Ceremonial
唱	chang	call
排班	paiban	fall in line according to rank
就位	·jiuwei	take one's place
展讀	zhandu	spread (the scroll) and read (it)
稱	cheng	say, call
跪	gui	kneel down
贊禮	zanli	Ceremonial Assistant, an official in the Court of Imperial Sacrifices
俯伏	fufu	prostrate
興	xing	begin, rise

舞蹈	wudao	dance
山呼	shanhu	three kowtows and three hails to the emperor
儀禮司	yili si	Ritual Office
分	fen	respectively
退	tui	leave, withdraw, recede
六年	liunian	the year dinghai (February 1, 1527 - January 21, 1528)
續定	xuding	supplementarily establish
鴻臚官	honglu guan	official from the Court of State Ceremonial
錦衣衛	jinyi wei	Imperial Bodyguard (lit., embroidered-uniform guard)
雲蓋盤	yungai pan	cloud-parasol tray
別	bie	separately
綵輿	caiyu	colored carriage
丹墀	danchi	red stairs
侍立	shili	be in attendance
升座	shengzuo	ascend the seat
朝儀	chaoyi	ceremony for court audience
翰林院	hanlin yuan	Hanlin Academy
贊	zan	call, inform
上儀	shangyi	preceeding ceremonies
雲匣	yunxia	cloud box
綵索	caisuo	colored string
繫	ji	tie up
龍竿	longgan	dragon pole

頒降	banjiang	promulgate
隆慶	Longqing	Ming Muzong's reign title (1567-1572)
六年	liunian	the year renshen (January 15, 1572 - February 1, 1573)
皇極門	Huangji men	Huangji Gate
中	zhong	amid, within the period of
本處	benchu	local
郭	guo	outer city wall
下	xia	dismount
上	shang	mount
公廨	gongxie	government office
班首	banshou	headman
問	wen	ask
皇躬	huanggong	imperial body
萬福	wanfu	boundless blessings, felicitations
鞠躬	jugong	bow
先	xian	first
守臣	shouchen	guard officer
進書	jinshu	present document or book
惟	wei	only
實錄	shilu	Veritable Record
最重	zuizhong	be taken most seriously
具	ju	wear
袞冕	gunmian	ceremonial dress
進表	jinbiao	present memorial
稱賀	chenghe	offer congratulations
其餘	qiyu	the rest

纂修	zuanxiu	write, compile
重錄書	chonglu shu	re-copied book
玉牒	yudie	imperial genealogy
茲	zi	here
詳載	xiangzai	record in detail
推見	tuijian	infer
云	yun	and so on
建文	Jianwen	Ming Huidi's reign title (1399-1403)
太祖實錄	Taizu shilu	Veritable Records of Ming Taizu
無考	wukao	undocumented
元年	yuannian	the first year, the year guiwei (January 23, 1403 - February 10, 1404)
重修	chongxiu	re-write
丹陛	danbi	red stairs
表案	biaoan	memorial table
鹵簿	lubu	insignia
史官	shiguan	historiographer
入班	ruban	enter the line
序班	xuban	Usher
內侍官	neishi guan	Palace Attendant
謹身殿	Jinshen dian	Jinshen Hall
復座	fuzuo	return to seat
太祖高皇帝	Taizu gao huangdi	Great Ancestor and Exalted Emperor
高皇后	Gao huanghou	Exalted Empress
功德光華	gongde guanghua	merit and virtue are brilliant
纂述	zuanshu	compilation and narration

詳實	xiangshi	full and accurate
歡慶	huanqing	delighted and joyful
卿等	qing deng	you ministers
同之	tong zhi	the same
萬曆	Wanli	Ming Shengzong's reign title (1573-1619)
五年	wunian	the year dingchou (January 19, 1577 February 6, 1578)
世祖	Shizu	i.e., Ming Shizong, reign title Jiajing (1522-1566)
續	xu	additionally, supplementarily
史館	shiguan	Historiography Institute
中樞殿	Zhongji dian	Zhongji Hall
侍班	shiban	wait in rank order
監修	jianxiu	Chief Compiler
總裁	zongcai	Director-general
纂修	zuanxiu	Compiler
導迎	daoying	guide the greeting
傘	san	umbrella
蓋	gai	parasol
會極門	Huiji men	Huiji Gate
階	jie	stairs
隨	sui	follow
石墀	shichi	stone stairs
內殿	neidian	inner the Hall
皇極殿	Huangji dian	Huangji Hall
司禮監	sili jian	Directorate of Ceremonial, a leading

		eunuch agency
皇史宬	Huangshi cheng	House of Imperial History
尊	zun	respectfully
藏	cang	store
箋	jian	report (to the Heir Apparent and others rather than the Emperor)
王	wang	prince
隨班	suiban	follow each other in the ranked order
中宮	Zhonggong	Empress (lit., middle palace)
賀表箋	hebiao jian	congratulatory memorial and report
皇子	huangzi	imperial son
封	feng	enfeoff
天子	tianzi	Emperor (lit., the Son of Heaven)
自稱	zicheng	call themselves
第幾子	diji zi	number X son
某	mou	so-and-so
王某	wang mou	Prince Such-and-such
稱	cheng	address
父皇	fuhuang	Father Emperor
陛下	bixia	Your Majesty
皇后	huanghou	Empress
母后	muhou	Mother Empress
殿下	dianxia	Your Highness
孫	sun	grandson
祖父	zufu	grandfather
祖母	zumu	grandmother
弟	di	younger brother

封某	fengmou	enfeoffed such-and such
大兄	daxiong	Great [elder, big] Brother
尊嫂	zunsao	Honorable Elder Sister-in-law
侄	zhi	nephew
伯父	bofu	elder uncle
叔父	shufu	younger uncle
伯母	bomu	elder uncle's wife
叔母	shumu	younger uncle's wife
尊屬	zunshu	superior relative
封臣某	fengchen mou	Enfeoffed Subject Such-and-such
從孫	zong sun	second degree great nephew [brother's son's son]
再從孫	zaizong sun	third degree great nephew [father's brother's son's son's son]
三從孫	sanzong sun	fourth degree great nephew [father's father's brother's son's son's son's son]
伯祖	bozu	elder great uncle
叔祖	shuzu	younger great uncle
伯祖母	bozumu	elder great uncle's wife
叔祖母	shuzumu	younger great uncle's wife
王府	wang fu	princely establishment (fief)
聖號	shenghao	imperial [sagely] title
家人禮	jiaren li	domestic ritual
在外	zaiwai	outside the Capital
結綵	jiecai	festoon, be decorated with colored streamers

街衢	jiequ	street
齋	zhai	fast
沐	mu	bathe
宿	su	sleep
本署	benshu	their own offices
庭	ting	courtyard
露臺	lutai	high terrace; open stage
嚴	yan	[night] watch
澌	di	wash
印	yin	seal
幕次	muci	office
執事者	zhishi zhe	manager, ceremonial functionary
金鼓	jingu	[military] gong and drum
郊外	jiaowai	suburb
陳列	chenlie	line up
就	jiu	at one's convenience
馬上	ma shang	on the horse
即	ji	immediately
鄉飲酒禮	xiang yinjiu li	community wine-drinking ceremony
記	ji	<u>Liji, Book of Rites</u>
廢	fei	abolished, discarded
爭鬪	zhengdou	quarrel and assault
獄	yu	case
繁	fan	numerous
儀禮	yili	<u>Ceremony and Rites</u> , an early Confucian text
所記	suo ji	what is recorded in

達	da	reach
庶民	shumin	common people
自…迄	zi...qi	from...to
損益	sunyi	increase and decrease
代殊	daishu	vary in different dynasties
五年	wunian	the year renzi (February 5, 1372 - January 23, 1373)
有司	yousi	the authorities
學官	xueguan	educational officials
士大夫	shi dafu	the official class, scholar-officials
行	xing	carry out
學校	xuexiao	school
民間	minjian	among the people
里社	lishe	community soil god altar
十六年	shiliu nian	the year guihai (February 3, 1383 - January 22, 1384)
班	ban	promulgate
圖式	tushi	diagram
每歲	meisui	every year
正月	zhengyue	the first month
儒學	ruxue	Confucian school
府	fu	prefecture
州	zhou	subprefecture
縣	xian	district
長吏	zhangli	head official
主	zhu	host
鄉	xiang	township, village

致仕官	zhishi guan	retired official
有…者	you...zhe	he who has...
德行	dexing	virtue and accomplishment
賓	bin	guest
擇	ze	select
年高	niangao	aged
侯賓	zunbin	honorable guest
其次	qici	the next
介	jie	assistant guest
教職	jiaozhi	educational officers
司正	sizheng	Director
贊禮	zanli	Ceremonial Assistant
贊引	zanyin	Ceremonial Escort
讀律	dulü	Law Code Reader
使	shi	employ
能者	neng zhe	those capable [of doing something]
前期	qianqi	before the ceremony
席	xi	seat
堂	tang	hall
極	ying	pillar, column
少	shao	slightly, a little
阼階	zuojie	east stairs
西階	xijie	west stairs
專席	zhuaxi	special seats
屬	zhu	connected with
序	xu	wing
上	shang	[taking...as] the seat of honor

僚佐	liao-zuo	staff officers
當	dang	the same
贊	zan	assistant
次	ci	rank, station
廊	lang	corridor
庠門	xiangmen	school gate
酒尊	jiuzun	wine-vessel
隅	yu	corner
勺	shao	ladle, spoon
幕	mi	cloth cover
葛巾	gejin	linen napkin
爵洗	juexi	wine-cup-rinsing basin
篚	fei	round bamboo basket
實	shi	filled with
爵	jue	[smaller] wine-cup
解	zhi	[larger] wine-cup
盥洗	guanxi	hand-washing basin
卓案	zhuoan	table
陳	chen	place, display
豆	dou	food-holding platter
如…數	ru...shu	be the same number as
藟醢	zuhai	minced meat
至期	zhiqi	when the time [for carrying out the ceremony] arrives
將	jiang	be about to
及	ji	get to
執事者	zhishi zhe	ceremonial functionary

進報	jinbao	come in and report
揖	yi	bow with hands held in front
讓	rang	yield
而後	erhou	afterwards
升堂	shengtang	enter the hall
相向	xiangxiang	face each other
升坐	shengzuo	take seats
揚	yang	raise
尊所	zunsuo	location of the wine vessel
酌酒	zhuojiu	ladle the wine out
報揖	baoyi	return bowing
恭惟	gongwei	respectful
朝廷	chaoting	the Court
率由	shuaiyou	follow
舊章	jiuzhang	old institutions
敦崇	dunchong	strengthen and honor
禮教	lijiao	ethical education
舉行	juxing	carry out
飲食	yinshi	drinking and eating
長幼	zhangyou	the aged and the youth
勸勉	quanmian	encourage and exhort
為臣	weichen	those who are subjects
竭忠	jiezhong	devout loyalty
為子	weizi	those who are sons
盡孝	jinxiao	fulfill (dictates of) filial piety
有序	youxu	there is an order
友	you	friendly

恭	gong	respectfully
內	nei	inward
睦宗族	mu zongzu	make the lineage peaceful
外	wai	outward
和鄉里	he xiangli	make the village harmonious
無或	wuhuo	nothing
廢墜	feizhui	abandoned and collapsed
忝	tian	be ashamed of
所生	suosheng	biological parents
如初	ruchu	as before
復位	fuwei	return to seat
令	ling	The Great Ming Commandment
有過之人	youguo zhi ren	those who had transgressed
赴	fu	go to
正席	zhengxi	main seat
立聽	liting	listen while standing
供饌	gongzhuan	serve food
獻	xian	present [something to]
降	jiang	descend
酬	chou	reciprocate, requite
行	xing	pass
湯	tang	soup, broth
品	pin	sort, kind
徹饌	chezhuan	remove food
以次	yici	in order
里中	lizhong	in the community
略同	lüetong	basically the same

二十二年	ershier nian	the year jisi (January 28, 1389 - January 16, 1390)
過犯	guofan	transgressions
列	lie	arrange, line up
外坐	waizuo	outer seats
同類者	tonglei zhe	persons of the same kind
成席	chengxi	give a banquet
雜於	zayu	mix up, mingle
善良	shanliang	the good folk
著爲令	zhu wei ling	write it up as a law

E. DOCUMENTS

明通鑑卷六 紀六 太祖洪武十一年(一三七七—一三七八)

三五八

制度如舊，規模益弘。

十一年(戊午、一三七八)

春，正月，甲戌朔，封皇子椿爲蜀王，柏湘王，桂豫王，樸漢王，植衛王。改封吳王椿爲

周王。罷杭州護衛。

己卯，進封湯和信國公。

是月，徵天下布政使及知府來朝。

上謂廷臣曰：「布政使即古方伯之職，知府即古刺史之職，所以承流宣化，撫安吾民者也。然得人則治，不則瘵官尸位，病吾民多矣。朕今令之來朝，使識朝廷治體，以儆其玩愒之心，且以詢察言行，考其治績，以覘其能否。苟治效有成，天下何憂不治！」

以寶鈔司提舉費震爲戶部侍郎，禮部員外郎朱夢炎爲本部侍郎，兵部郎中陳銘爲吏部尙書。

上諭吏部曰：「朝廷懸爵祿以待天下之士。資格者，爲常流設耳，若有賢才，豈拘常例！」一時超擢者九十五人。

尋進震尙書。【考異】按「不拘資格」之語，見明史費震傳。傳中系之洪武十一年，孫氏春明夢餘錄並引張江陵集，在是年正月，證之潛庵史稿，慶進尙書在四月。

上又諭吏部曰：「披沙將以求金，掘井在于獲泉，薦士期于得賢。今薦舉之士，名實不副，視爲具文，豈昧于識人邪？抑賢才之果難得也？其令有司悉心詢訪，務求真才，以禮敦遣。」

二月，四川茂州蠻作亂，指揮胡淵等討平之。

初，茂州土酋楊者七來貢，命權知州事。會四川都司遣兵修灌縣橋梁，至陶關，汝川土酋孟道貴等集部落邀阻關道。淵與童勝分兵二道擊之，一由石泉，一由灌口。由灌口者進次陶關，蠻衆伏兩山間，投石崖下，兵不得進。適汝川土官來降，得其間道，大破之。其由石泉者亦敗其衆，兩軍遂會于茂州，者七迎降。承制置茂州衛，仍以者七領其衆，留指揮楚華將兵三千守之。

三月，壬午，命「奏事毋關白中書省。」上于是始疑胡惟庸等，始命秦王橈、晉王櫛之國。

上賜秦王璽書曰：「關內之民，自元氏失政，不勝其敝。今吾定天下，又有轉輸之勞，民未休息。爾之國，若宮室已完，其不急之務悉已之！」

晉王就藩太原，中道笞膳夫，上馳諭曰：「吾率羣英平禍亂，不爲姑息。獨膳夫徐興祖，事吾二十三年，未嘗折辱。怨不在大，小子識之！」

明通鑑卷六 紀六 太祖洪武十一年(一三七八)

三六〇

時吳王已改封河南，命與燕、楚、齊王同駐鳳陽俟命。

定制，諸王之國，皆令詣辭皇陵而后行。

是月，各官朝覲來京師者，上命吏部課其殿最，分爲三等：稱職無過者爲上，賜坐、宴；有過稱職者爲中，宴而不坐；有過不稱職者爲下，不預宴，序立于門，宴畢始退。朝覲考察自此始。

夏、四月，元嗣君阿裕實哩達喇殂，子特古斯特穆爾嗣。舊作脫古思帖木兒。

時元丞相魯爾，舊作羅兒。哈刺章、曼濟，舊作蠻子。等寇塞下。【考異】據明史本紀三編，元嗣君殂

在四月，紀事本末系之五月，今從本紀。

10 江陰侯吳良，督田鳳陽，上命修葺皇陵，至是成。

詔曰：「皇堂新造，予時秉鑑窺形，但見蒼顏皓首，忽思往日之艱辛。竊恐前此碑記，

出自儒臣粉飾之文，不足以爲後世子孫戒，特述艱難以明昌運。」乃自制碑文，命良督工刻

之。【考異】重建皇陵碑，明史不載，專具郎氏七修類稿中。前引太祖自述之文云：「洪武十六年夏四月，命江陰侯吳良

督工部造皇堂，予時秉鑑窺形，但見蒼顏皓首，忽思往日之艱辛。況皇陵碑記，皆儒臣粉飾之文，不足以爲後世子孫之

戒。特述艱難以明昌運，俾世代見之。」其碑詞則通體皆用陽韻，此重建皇陵碑之本末也。徐氏典彙，則云「十一年四月，

上又以前建皇陵碑，恐代草者有文飾，復親製文，命江陰侯吳良督工刻之，奉氏五禮通考亦引其文，此即本太祖自序之

意也。證之良傳，良是時督田于鳳陽，故太祖就命之。迨十二年，命良建齊王府于青州，十四年，良卒于青州。據此，則七修類稿「十六年」之「六」字誤也。蓋十六年所建，乃濬陽王廟碑，郎氏誤記年月，或誤寫「一」字爲「六」耳。今據典彙所系年月，而記其重建序語之大略云。

11 五月，丁酉，存問蘇、松、嘉、湖被水災民，戶賜米一石，蠲逋賦六十五萬有奇。

先是戶部以蘇州逋賦太多，請論官吏，上不許曰：「逮其官，必責之于民，民傾貲輸官，困將益甚。」至是命悉免之。

12 六月，壬子，遣使祭故元嗣君。

13 己巳，五開蠻吳面兒作亂，殺靖州衛指揮過興，詔以辰州衛指揮楊仲名爲總兵官，討之。

14 秋，七月，丁丑，振平陽饑。

15 是月，蘇、松、台、揚四府海溢，人多溺死，詔遣官存恤。

16 八月，免應天、太平、鎮江、寧國、廣德諸府州秋糧。

17 九月，丙申，追封劉繼祖爲義惠侯。

18 冬，十月，丙辰，河決蘭陽。

19 甲子，大祀殿成。

明通鑑卷六 紀六 太祖洪武十一年（一三七八）

三六一

²⁰西番諸蠻，數爲邊患。十一月，庚午，授西平侯沐英爲征西將軍，率都督藍玉、王弼等討之。

²¹是月，楊仲名討平五開蠻，吳面兒遁。上初遣內臣吳誠觀軍，至是又遣尙履奉御呂玉視捷。

上嘗語侍臣曰：「朕讀唐書，至魚朝恩爲觀軍容使，未嘗不嘆此曹掌兵，遂恣肆至此。然代宗苟一旦去之，如孤雛腐鼠，亦有何難，惟在斷與不斷耳。漢、唐宦官之禍，朕深鑒之。故此輩左右服役之外，其重者傳命四方而已。」然是役也，兩遣內臣出使，宦官之預兵事自此始。

²²大同白羊鎮巡檢張文煥，遇元兵于焦山，戰沒。其妻聞之，同日死。一子貧寒，十指俱墮，上命取至京師，月給米一石，終其身。

²³十二月，上以佛經遺佚，命僧宗泐偕其徒使西域求之，凡三年而還。
²⁴國子助教貝瓊致仕卒。

瓊與清江張美和、聶鉉齊名，時稱「成均三助」云。〔考異〕事見明史宋納傳中。
²⁵是歲，有彭亨、百花等國始來貢。

彭亨在暹羅之西，百花居西南海中，皆西南洋之小國也，詔皆宴勞其使而遣之。

十二年(己未,一三七九)

¹春,正月,己卯,始合祀天地于南郊。上自制大祀文並迎神以下九章之樂。

²甲申,洮州十八族番酋三副使等叛,據納麟七站之地。

時沐英討西番,敗之于土門峽,降其萬戶乞迭迦等,上乃命英移師平洮州。

³初,四川松州蠻叛,詔平羌將軍丁玉移師討之。

丙申,玉平松州,請置軍衛。上敕玉曰:「松、潘僻在萬山,接西戎之境。今克松州,則將進取潘州,擇其險要而守之,則威茂不窮兵而自服。」于是始并潘州于松州,置松州衛指揮使司,遣寧州衛指揮高顯城其地。

⁴二月,戊戌,命曹國公李文忠督理河、岷、臨、鞏軍事,與沐英討番寇。

英至洮州,舊城三副使遁去,追擊,大破之,斬其酋長阿昌、失納等,遂于東籠山南川度地勢,築城戍守。遣使請事宜,上命置洮州衛。

文忠言「官軍守洮州,餉艱民勞」,上遣人勞師,諭之曰:「洮州西控羌、戎,東蔽湟、隴,漢、唐以來備邊要地。今棄不守,諸番將復爲邊患。惜小費而忘大虞,豈良策邪!所獲牛羊,分給將士,亦足充兩年軍食。其如敕行之!」【考異】按遣沐英討西番在去年,至是年二月,始命李文忠督理軍事。文忠之法以二月,還以七月。英再破西番,禽其三副使在九月,則文忠已還也。三編及明史英傳皆牽連並

明通鑑卷六 紀六 太祖洪武十二年(一三七九)

三六三

明會要卷五十三

永新龍文彬纂

食貨一

田制

洪武元年正月甲申，帝謂中書省臣曰：「兵革之餘，郡縣版籍多亡，田賦之制不能無增損。」

今遣周鑄等往浙西，覈實田畝，定其賦稅，無令妄有增擾。」昭代典

三年五月，帝以中原地多荒蕪，命省臣議，計民授田。設司農司，開置河南、臨濠之田，驗

其丁力，計畝給之，不得兼并。北方近城地多不治，召民耕種，人給十五畝，蔬地二畝，

免租三年。通典。

五年，詔：流民復業者各就丁力耕種，毋以舊田為限。同上。

二十年二月戊子，命國子生武淳等分行州縣，隨糧定區。區設糧長四人，量度田畝方圓，次

以字號，悉書主名及田之丈尺，編類爲冊，號「魚鱗圖冊」。

食貨志。

凡典賣田土，過割稅糧，各州縣年終通行造冊解府，毋令產去稅存。

大明令。

永樂元年，發流罪以下墾北京田。

通典。

十年以兗州東昌、定陶等縣，地廣民稀，令青、登、萊諸郡擇丁多者分居耕種，蠲役三年。

王圻通考。

正統三年，詔：各處凡有入額納糧田地，不堪耕種，另自開墾補數者，有司勘實，不許重起

科。通典。

四年，奏准：江西、浙江、福建并直隸、蘇、松等府，凡官民田地有因水塌漲去處，令所在

王圻通考。

有司逐一丈量，給與附近小民承種，照民田起科。塌沒無田者，悉與開豁稅糧。

五年，令北直隸府州縣，將富豪軍民人等包耕田地，除原納糧田地外，其餘均撥貧民及衝塌田地人戶耕種，照例起科。其貧民典當田宅，年久無錢取贖，及富豪軍民占種逃民田地，待復業之日，照舊斷還原主。

十三年，令：各處寺觀僧道，除洪武年間置買田土，其有續置者，悉令各州縣有司查照，散

遠於民。若廢弛寺觀遺下田莊，令該府州縣踏勘，悉撥與招還無業及丁多田少之民。每戶男子二十畝，三丁以下者三十畝。若係官田，照依減輕則例，每畝改科正糧一石，俱爲官田。如本戶絕，仍撥貧民，不許私自典賣。

景泰二年，令各處寺觀量存六十畝爲業，其餘撥與小民佃種納糧。

已上通典。

天順二年，敕皇親公侯伯文武大臣，不許強占官民田地起蓋房屋；事發，坐以重罪。其家人及投託者，俱發邊衛，永遠充軍。

又令：各處軍民有新開無額田地，及願佃種荒閒地土者，俱照減輕則例起科。

成化六年，巡視河南戶部侍郎原傑奏：「洪武間，恩例：除常稅，荒地許民耕種，永不起科。

景泰間乃剽起科例，至今奸民互相告訐，徵斂日重。請如舊例，凡軍民有告訐不起科者，

不聽。」已上王折考。

二十一年，令：遼東地方軍人有開墾拋荒土田，分上中下三等起科。

通典。

洪武二十六年，覈天下土田，總八百五十萬七千六百二十三頃。弘治十五年，天下土田總計四百二十三萬八千五百八十八頃：內，官田五十九萬八千四百五十六頃，民田三百六十萬九千

六百一頃。

弘治二年，令：順天等六府入官田地，俱撥與附近無田小民耕種起科，每名不過三十畝。

嘉靖六年，令：各處板荒、積荒、拋荒田地，不拘本府別府軍、民、匠、竈，儘力耕墾，給

與田帖，永遠管業。已上通典。

八年，霍韜奉命脩會典，言：「自洪武迄弘治百四十年，天下額田已減強半，而湖廣、河南、

廣東失額尤多。非撥給於王府，則欺隱於猾民。廣東無藩府，非欺隱即委棄於寇賊矣。司

國計者，可不究心？」是時，桂萼、郭宏化、唐龍、簡霄先後疏請覈實田畝，而顧鼎臣請

履畝丈量。丈量之議由此起。江西安福、河南裕州首行之，而法未詳具，人多疑憚。其後

福建諸州縣爲「經」「緯」二冊，其法頗詳；然率以地爲主，田多者猶得上下其手。神宗

初，建昌知府許孚遠爲「歸戶冊」，則以田從人，法簡而密矣。食貨志。

是年，令：陝西拋荒田土最多州縣分爲三等：第一等，召募耕種，量免稅銀三年；第二等，

許諸人承種三年後，方納輕糧，每石照例減納五年；第三等，召民自種，不徵稅糧。王圻考。

十三年，題准：各處但有拋荒堪種之地，聽招流移小民或附近軍民耕種，照例免稅三年。如

地主見其耕種成熟，復業爭種者，許赴官告明，量撥三分之一給主，二分仍聽開荒之人承種。各照畝納糧十年之上，方行均分。敢有恃強奪占者，官司問罪。通典

十七年，詔：各處衛所官舍餘丁人等置買民田，一體坐派糧差，不許抗拒。違者奪田入官。

隆慶元年，巡按御史董堯封奏：查出蘇、松、常、鎮四府，投詭田一百九十九萬五千四百七

十畝，花分田三百三十一萬五千六百六十畝。因條上便宜八事。戶部酌行。已上王折考

萬曆八年十一月，閣臣張居正議：天下田畝通行丈量。遂用開方法，以徑圍乘除畸零截補。

於是豪猾不得欺隱，里甲免賠累，而小民無虛糧。總計田七百一萬三千九百七十六頃，視

孝宗時贏三百萬頃。居正頗以溢額為功。有司短縮步弓以求田多，或培克見田以充虛額，

後遂按溢額增賦。三編

閣臣沈一貫山東營田疏曰：「該省六府，大抵地廣民稀，而迤東海上尤多拋荒。請令巡撫得

自選廉幹官員，將該省荒蕪土地逐一查覈頃畝的數。多方招致能耕之民，如：江西、福

建、浙江、山西及徽、池等處，不問遠近，凡願入籍者悉許報名擇便。官為之正疆定界、

畧置安插。凡拋荒、積逋，一切蠲貸，與之更始。或聽和買，或聽分種。其新籍之民則為

編戶，排年爲里，爲甲。循阡履畝，勸耕勸織。毋籍爲兵，毋重其課。相生相養，不出數年，可稱天府。」農政全書

屯田

明太祖初，命諸將於龍江等處屯田。惟康茂才所屯田，穀一萬五千餘石。乃下令褒之，因以申諭將士。昭代典則

洪武四年，中書省言：「河南、山東、北平、陝西、山西及直隸、淮安諸府屯田，凡官給牛種者，十稅五；自備者，十稅三。」詔且勿徵，三年後，畝收租一斗。食貨志

是年，徐達請徙山後民一萬七千餘戶屯北平，又以沙漠遺民三萬二千餘戶屯田北平。凡置屯二百五十四，開田一千三百四十三頃。通典

六年，太僕丞梁額森特穆爾言：「寧夏、四川土膏沃，宜招集流亡屯田。」從之。明年，命都督僉事王簡往彰德，王賊往濟寧，平章李伯昇往真定，經理屯務。又命鄧愈等諸將，分屯陝西、河南、北平。官吏犯罪，謫鳳陽屯種。民犯流罪者，鳳陽輸作一年，然後屯種。命李善長、朱亮祖、俞通源撫諭諸屯，勸課農事。又因海運餉遼，有溺死者，遂益講屯政。

明史卷一百九十五

列傳第八十三

王守仁 冀元亨

王守仁，字伯安，餘姚人。

父華，字德輝，成化十七年進士第一。授修撰。弘治中，累官學士、少詹事。華有器度，在講幄最久，孝宗甚眷之。李廣貴幸，華講大學衍義，至唐李輔國與張后表裏用事，指陳甚切。帝命中官賜食勞焉。正德初，進禮部左侍郎。以守仁忤劉瑾，出爲南京吏部尙書，坐事罷。旋以會典小誤，降右侍郎。瑾敗，乃復故，無何卒。華性孝，母岑年踰百歲，尚華已年七十餘，猶寢苦蔬食，士論多之。

守仁娠十四月而生。祖母夢神人自雲中送兒下，因名雲。五歲不能言，異人拊之，更名守仁，乃言。年十五，訪客居庸、山海關。時闕出塞，縱觀山川形勝。弱冠舉鄉試，學大

列傳第八十三 王守仁

五一五九

進。顧益好言兵，且善射。登弘治十二年進士。使治前威寧伯王越葬，還而朝議方急西北邊，守仁條八事上之。尋授刑部主事。決囚江北，引疾歸。起補兵部主事。

正德元年冬，劉瑾逮南京給事中御史戴銑等二十餘人。守仁抗章救，瑾怒，廷杖四十，謫貴州龍場驛丞。龍場萬山叢薄，苗、僚雜居。守仁因俗化導，夷人喜，相率伐木爲屋，以棲守仁。瑾誅，量移廬陵知縣。入覲，遷南京刑部主事，吏部尙書楊一清改之驗封。屢遷考功郎中，擢南京太僕少卿，就遷鴻臚卿。

兵部尙書王瓊素奇守仁才。十一年八月擢右僉都御史，巡撫南、贛。當是時，南中盜賊蜂起。謝志山據橫水、左溪、桶岡，池仲容據涇頭，皆稱王，與大庾陳日能、樂昌高快馬、郴州龔福全等〔一〕攻剽府縣。而福建大帽山賊詹師富等又起。前巡撫文森托疾避去。志山合樂昌賊掠大庾，攻南康、贛州，贛縣主簿吳玘戰死。守仁至，知左右多賊耳目，乃呼老黠隸詰之。隸戰栗不敢隱，因實其罪，令誦賊，賊動靜無勿知。於是檄福建、廣東會兵，先討大帽山賊。

明年正月，督副使楊璋等破賊長富村，〔二〕逼之象湖山，指揮覃桓、縣丞紀鏞戰死。守仁親率銳卒屯上杭。佯退師，出不意搗之，連破四十餘寨，俘斬七千有奇，指揮王鎧等擒師富。疏言權輕，無以令將士，請給旗牌，提督軍務，得便宜從事。尙書王瓊奏從其請。乃更兵

制：二十五人爲伍，伍有小甲；二伍爲隊，隊有總甲；四隊爲哨，〔三〕哨有長，協哨二佐之；二哨爲營，營有官，參謀二佐之；三營爲陣，陣有偏將；二陣爲軍，軍有副將。皆臨事委，不命於朝；副將以下，得遞相罰治。

其年七月進兵大庾。志山乘間急攻南安，知府季敷擊敗之。副使楊璋等亦生繫曰能以歸。遂議討橫水、左溪。十月，都指揮許清、贛州知府邢珣、寧都知縣王天與各一軍會橫水，敷及守備郝文、汀州知府唐淳、縣丞舒富各一軍會左溪，吉安知府伍文定、程鄉知縣張戩遇其奔軼。〔四〕守仁自駐南康，去橫水三十里，先遣四百人伏賊巢左右，進軍逼之。賊方迎戰，兩山舉幟。賊大驚，謂官軍已盡犁其巢，遂潰。乘勝克橫水，志山及其黨蕭貴模等皆走桶岡。左溪亦破。守仁以桶岡險固，移營近地，諭以禍福。賊首藍廷鳳等方震恐，見使至大喜，期仲冬朔降，而珣、文定已冒雨奪險入。賊阻水陣，珣直前搏戰，文定與戩自右出，賊倉卒敗走，遇淳兵又敗。諸軍破桶岡，志山、貴模、廷鳳面縛降。凡破巢八十有四，俘斬六千有奇。時湖廣巡撫秦金亦破福全。其黨千人突至，諸將擒斬之。乃設崇義縣於橫水，控諸瑤。還至贛州，議討涇頭賊。

初，守仁之平師富也，龍川賊盧珂、鄭志高、陳英咸請降。及征橫水，涇頭賊將黃金巢亦以五百人降，獨仲容未下。橫水破，仲容始遣弟仲安來歸，而嚴爲戰守備。詭言珂、志高，

警也，將襲我，故爲備。守仁佯杖繫珂等，而陰使珂弟集兵待，遂下令散兵。歲首大張燈樂，仲容信且疑。守仁賜以節物，誘入謝。仲容率九十三人營教場，而自以數人入謁。守仁呵之曰：「若皆吾民，屯於外，疑我乎？」悉引入祥符宮，厚飲食之。賊大喜過望，益自安。守仁留仲容觀燈樂。正月三日大享，伏甲士於門，諸賊入，以次悉擒戮之。自將抵賊巢，連破上、中、下三洞，斬馘二千有奇。餘賊奔九連山。山橫亙數百里，陡絕不可攻。乃簡壯士七百人衣賊衣，奔崖下，賊招之上。官軍進攻，內外合擊，擒斬無遺。乃於下洞立和平縣，置戍而歸。自是境內大定。

初，朝議賊勢強，發廣東、湖廣兵合剿。守仁上疏止之，不及。桶岡既滅，湖廣兵始至。及平涇頭，廣東尙未承檄。守仁所將皆文吏及偏裨小校，平數十年巨寇，遠近驚爲神。進右副都御史，予世襲錦衣衛百戶，再進副千戶。

十四年六月命勘福建叛軍。行至豐城而寧王宸濠反，知縣顧必以告。守仁急趨吉安，與伍文定徵調兵食，治器械舟楫，傳檄暴宸濠罪，俾守令各率吏士勤王。都御史王懋中，編修鄒守益，副使羅循、羅欽德，郎中曾直，御史張鰲山、周魯，評事羅僑，同知郭祥鵬，進士郭持平，降謫驛丞王思、李中，咸赴守仁軍。御史謝源、伍希儒自廣東還，守仁留之紀功。因集衆議曰：「賊若出長江順流東下，則南都不可保。吾欲以計撓之，少遲旬日無患矣。」乃多

遣間諜，檄府縣言：「都督許泰、郤永將邊兵，都督劉暉、桂勇將京兵，各四萬，水陸並進。南贛王守仁、湖廣秦金、兩廣楊旦各率所部合十六萬，直擣南昌，所至有司缺供者，以軍法論。」又爲蠟書遺僞相李士實、劉養正，敍其歸國之誠，令從臾早發兵東下，而縱諜洩之。宸濠果疑。與士實、養正謀，則皆勸之疾趨南京即大位，宸濠益大疑。十餘日，詢知中外兵不至，乃悟守仁紿之。七月壬辰朔，留宜春王拱樞居守，而劫其衆六萬人，襲下九江、南康，出大江，薄安慶。

守仁聞南昌兵少則大喜，趨樟樹鎮。知府臨江戴德孺、袁州徐璉、贛州邢珣，都指揮余恩，〔六〕通判瑞州胡堯元、童琦、撫州鄒琥、安吉談儲，推官王暉、徐文英，知縣新淦李美、秦和李楫、萬安王冕、寧都王天與，各以兵來會，合八萬人，號三十萬。或請救安慶，守仁曰：「不然。今九江、南康已爲賊守，我越南昌與相持江上，二郡兵絕我後，是腹背受敵也。不如直擣南昌。賊精銳悉出，守備虛。我軍新集氣銳，攻必破。賊聞南昌破，必解圍自救。逆擊之湖中，蔑不勝矣。」衆曰：「善」。己酉次豐城，以文定爲前鋒，先遣奉新知縣劉守緒襲其伏兵。庚戌夜半，文定兵抵廣潤門，守兵駭散。辛亥黎明，諸軍梯絙登，縛拱樞等，宮人多焚死。軍士頗殺掠，守仁戮犯令者十餘人，宥脅從，安士民，慰諭宗室，人心乃悅。

居二日，遣文定、珣、璉、德孺各將精兵分道進，而使堯元等設伏。宸濠果自安慶還兵。

乙卯遇於黃家渡。文定當其前鋒，賊趨利。珣繞出賊背貫其中，文定、恩乘之，璉、德孺張兩翼分賊勢，堯元等伏發，賊大潰，退保八字腦。宸濠懼，盡發南康、九江兵。守仁遣知府撫州陳槐、饒州林城取九江，〔七〕建昌曾璉、廣信周朝佐取南康。丙辰復戰，官軍却，守仁斬先却者。諸軍殊死戰，賊復大敗，退保樵舍，聯舟爲方陣，盡出金寶犒士。明日，宸濠方晨朝其羣臣，官軍奄至。以小舟載薪，乘風縱火，焚其副舟，妃婁氏以下皆投水死。宸濠舟膠淺，倉卒易舟遁，王冕所部兵追執之。士實、養正及降賊按察使楊璋等皆就擒。南康、九江亦下。凡三十五日而賊平。京師聞變，諸大臣震懼。王瓊大言曰：「王伯安居南昌上游，必擒賊。」至是，果奏捷。

帝時已親征，自稱威武大將軍，率京邊驍卒數萬南下。命安邊伯許泰爲副將軍，偕提督軍務太監張忠、平賊將軍左都督劉暉將京軍數千，泝江而上，抵南昌。諸嬖倖故與宸濠通，守仁初上宸濠反書，因言：「覬覦者非特一寧王，請黜奸諛以回天下豪傑心。」諸嬖倖皆恨。宸濠既平，則相與媚功。且懼守仁見天子發其罪，競爲蜚語，謂守仁先與通謀，慮事不成，乃起兵。又欲令縱宸濠湖中，待帝自擒。

守仁乘忠、泰未至，先俘宸濠，發南昌。忠、泰以威武大將軍檄邀之廣信。守仁不與，間道趨玉山，上書請獻俘，止帝南征。帝不許。至錢唐遇太監張永。永提督贊畫機密軍

務，在忠、泰輩上，而故與楊一清善，除劉瑾，天下稱之。守仁夜見永，頌其賢，因極言江西困敝，不堪六師擾。永深然之，曰：「永此來，爲調護聖躬，非邀功也。公大勛，永知之，但事不可直情耳。」守仁乃以宸濠付永，而身至京口，欲朝行在。聞巡撫江西命，乃還南昌。忠、泰已先至，恨失宸濠。故縱京軍犯守仁，或呼名嫚罵。守仁不爲動，撫之愈厚。病予藥，死予棺，遭喪於道，必停車慰問良久始去。京軍謂王都堂愛我，無復犯者。忠、泰言：「寧府富厚甲天下，今所蓄安在？」守仁曰：「宸濠異時盡以輸京師要人，約內應，籍可按也。」忠、泰故嘗納宸濠賄者，氣懾不敢復言。已，輕守仁文士，強之射。徐起，三發三中。京軍皆歡呼，忠、泰益沮。會冬至，守仁命居民巷祭，已，上塚哭。時新喪亂，悲號震野。京軍離家久，聞之無不泣下思歸者。忠、泰不得已班師。比見帝，與紀功給事中祝續、御史章綸譏毀百端，獨永時時左右之。忠揚言帝前曰：「守仁必反，試召之，必不至。」忠、泰屢矯旨召守仁。守仁得永密信，不赴。及是知出帝意，立馳至。忠、泰計沮，不令見帝。守仁乃入九華山，日晏坐僧寺。帝覘知之，曰：「王守仁學道人，聞召卽至，何謂反？」乃遣還鎮，令更上捷音。守仁乃易前奏，言奉威武大將軍方略討平叛亂，而盡入諸嬖倖名，江彬等乃無言。

當是時，讒邪構煽，禍變叵測，微守仁，東南事幾殆。世宗深知之。甫卽位，趣召入朝受封。而大學士楊廷和與王瓊不相能。守仁前後平賊，率歸功瓊，廷和不喜，大臣亦多忌

其功。會有言國哀未畢，不宜舉宴行賞者，因拜守仁南京兵部尚書。守仁不赴，請歸省。已，論功封特進光祿大夫、柱國、新建伯，世襲，歲祿一千石。然不予鐵券，歲祿亦不給。諸同事有功者，惟吉安、守伍、文定至大官，當上賞。其他皆名示遷，而陰絀之，廢斥無存者。守仁憤甚。時已丁父憂，屢疏辭爵，乞錄諸臣功，咸報寢。免喪，亦不召。久之，所善席書及門人方獻夫、黃綰以議禮得幸，言於張璠、桂萼，將召用，而費宏、故銜、守仁，復沮之。屢推兵部尚書，三邊總督，提督團營，皆弗果用。

嘉靖六年，思恩、田州土酋盧蘇、王受反。總督姚鏌不能定，乃詔守仁以原官兼左都御史，總督兩廣兼巡撫。綰因上書訟守仁功，請賜鐵券歲祿，並敕討賊諸臣，帝咸報可。守仁在道，疏陳用兵之非，且言：「思恩未設流官，土酋歲出兵三千，聽官征調。既設流官，我反歲遣兵數千防戍。是流官之設，無益可知。且田州隣交阯，深山絕谷，悉瑤、僮盤據，必仍設土官，斯可藉其兵力爲屏蔽。若改土爲流，則邊鄙之患，我自當之，後必有悔。」章下兵部，尚書王時中條其不合者五，帝令守仁更議。十二月，守仁抵潯州，會巡按御史石金定計招撫。悉散遣諸軍，留永順、保靖土兵數千，解甲休息。蘇、受初求撫不得，聞守仁至益懼，至是則大喜。守仁赴南寧，二人遣使乞降，守仁令詣軍門。二人竊議曰：「王公素多詐，恐給我。」陳兵入見。守仁數二人罪，杖而釋之。親入營，撫其衆七萬。奏聞於朝，陳用兵

十害，招撫十善。因請復設流官，量割田州地，別立一州，以岑猛次子邦相爲吏目，署州事，俟有功擢知州。而於田州置十九巡檢司，以蘇、受等任之，並受約束於流官知府。帝皆從之。

斷藤峽瑤賊，上連八寨，下通仙臺、花相諸洞蠻，盤互三百餘里，郡邑罹害者數十年。守仁欲討之，故留南寧。罷湖廣兵，示不再用。伺賊不備，進破牛腸、六寺等十餘寨，峽賊悉平。遂循橫石江而下，攻克仙臺、花相、白竹、古陶、羅鳳諸賊。令布政使林富率蘇、受兵直抵八寨，破石門，副將沈希儀邀斬軼賊，盡平八寨。

始，帝以蘇、受之撫，遣行人奉璽書獎諭。及奏斷藤峽捷，則以手詔問閣臣楊一清等，謂守仁自誇大，且及其生平學術。一清等不知所對。守仁之起由璉、萼薦，萼故不善守仁，以璉強之。後萼長吏部，璉入內閣，積不相下。萼暴貴喜功名，風守仁取交趾，守仁辭不應。一清雅知守仁，而黃綰嘗上疏欲令守仁入輔，毀一清，一清亦不能無移憾。萼遂顯詆守仁征撫交失，賞格不行。獻夫及霍韜不平，上疏爭之，言：「諸瑤爲患積年，初嘗用兵數十萬，僅得一田州，旋復召寇。守仁片言馳諭，思、田稽首。至八寨、斷藤峽賊，阻深巖絕岡，國初以來未有輕議剿者，今一舉蕩平，若拉枯朽。議者乃言守仁受命征思、田，不受命征八寨。夫大夫出疆，有可以安國家，利社稷，專之可也。況守仁固承詔得便宜從事者乎？守

仁討平叛藩，忌者誣以初同賊謀，又誣其輦載金帛。當時大臣楊廷和、喬宇飾成其事，至今未白。夫忠如守仁，有功如守仁，一屈於江西，再屈於兩廣。臣恐勞臣灰心，將士解體，後此疆圉有事，誰復爲陛下任之！帝報聞而已。

守仁已病甚，疏乞骸骨，舉鄖陽巡撫林富自代，不俟命竟歸。行至南安卒，年五十七。喪過江西，軍民無不縞素哭送者。

守仁天姿異敏。年十七謁上饒婁諒，與論朱子格物大指。還家，日端坐，講讀五經，不苟言笑。游九華歸，築室陽明洞中。泛濫二氏學，數年無所得。謫龍場，窮荒無書，日釋舊聞。忽悟格物致知，當自求諸心，不當求諸事物，喟然曰：「道在是矣。」遂篤信不疑。其爲教，專以致良知爲主。謂宋周、程二子後，惟象山陸氏簡易直捷，有以接孟氏之傳。而朱子集註、或問之類，乃中年未定之說。學者翕然從之，世遂有「陽明學」云。

守仁既卒，桂萼奏其擅離職守。帝大怒，下廷臣議。萼等言：「守仁事不師古，言不稱師。欲立異以爲高，則非朱熹格物致知之論；知衆論之不予，則爲朱熹晚年定論之書。號召門徒，互相倡和。才美者樂其任意，庸鄙者借其虛聲。傳習轉訛，背謬彌甚。但討捕盜賊，擒獲叛藩，功有足錄，宜免追奪伯爵以章大信，禁邪說以正人心。」帝乃下詔停世襲，卹典俱不行。隆慶初，廷臣多頌其功。詔贈新建侯，諡文成。二年予世襲伯爵。既又有請以

守仁與薛瑄、陳獻章同從祀文廟者。帝獨允禮臣議，以瑄配。及萬曆十二年，御史詹事講申前請。大學士申時行等言：「守仁言致知出大學，良知出孟子。」陳獻章主靜，沿宋儒周敦頤、程顥。且孝友出處如獻章，氣節文章功業如守仁，不可謂禪，誠宜崇祀。」且言胡居仁純心篤行，衆論所歸，亦宜並祀。帝皆從之。終明之世，從祀者止守仁等四人。

始守仁無子，育弟子正憲爲後。晚年，生子正億，二歲而孤。既長，襲錦衣副千戶。隆慶初，襲新建伯。萬曆五年卒。子承勛嗣，督漕運二十年。子先進，無子，將以弟先達子業弘繼。先達妻曰：「伯無子，爵自傳吾夫。由父及子，爵安往？」先進怒，因育族子業洵爲後。及承勛卒，先進未襲死。業洵自以非嫡嗣，終當歸爵先達，且虞其爭，乃謗先達爲乞養，而別推承勛弟子先通當嗣，屢爭於朝，數十年不決。崇禎時，先達子業弘復與先通疏辨。而業洵兄業浩時爲總督，所司懼忤業浩，竟以先通嗣。業弘憤，持疏入禁門訴。自刎不殊，執下獄，尋釋。先通襲伯四年，流賊陷京師，被殺。

守仁弟子盈天下，其有傳者不復載。惟冀元亨嘗與守仁共患難。

冀元亨，字惟乾，武陵人。篤信守仁學。舉正德十一年鄉試。從守仁於贛，守仁屬以教子。宸濠懷不軌，而外務名高，貽書守仁問學，守仁使元亨往。宸濠語挑之，佯不喻，獨與

國。
土魯番，在火州西百里，去哈密千餘里，嘉峪關二千六百里。漢車師前王地。隋高昌
唐滅高昌，置西州及交河縣，此則交河縣安樂城也。宋復名高昌，爲回鶻所據，嘗入

貢。元設萬戶府。

永樂四年遣官使別失八里，道其地，以綵幣賜之。其萬戶賽因帖木兒遣使貢玉璞，明年達京師。六年，其國番僧清來率徒法泉等朝貢。天子欲令化導番俗，即授爲灌頂慈慧圓智普通國師，徒七人並爲土魯番僧綱司官，賜賚甚厚。由是其徒來者不絕，貢名馬、海青及他物。天子亦數遣官獎勞之。

二十年，其會尹吉兒察與哈密共貢馬千三百匹，賜賚有加。已而尹吉兒察爲別失八里會歪思所逐，走歸京師。天子憫之，命爲都督僉事，遣還故土。尹吉兒察德中國，洪熙元年躬率部落來朝。宣德元年亦如之。天子待之甚厚，還國病卒。三年，其子滿哥帖木兒來朝。已而都督鎖格弟猛哥帖木兒來朝，命爲指揮僉事。五年，都指揮僉事也先帖木兒來朝。正統六年，朝議土魯番久失貢，因米昔兒使臣還，令齎鈔幣賜其會巴刺麻兒。明年遣使入貢。

初，其地介于闐、別失八里諸大國間，勢甚微弱。後侵掠火州、柳城，皆爲所并，國日強，其會也密力火者遂僭稱王。以景泰三年，偕其妻及部下頭目各遣使入貢。天順三年復貢，其使臣進秩者二十有四人。先後命指揮白全、都指揮桑斌等使其國。

成化元年，禮官姚夔等定議，土魯番三年或五年一貢，貢不得過十人。五年遣使來貢，

其酋阿力自稱速檀，奏求海青、鞍馬、蟒服、綵幣、器用。禮官言物多違禁，不可盡從，命賜綵幣、布帛。明年復貢，奏求忽撥思箏、鼓羅、粘錠、高麗布諸物。廷議不許。

時土魯番愈強，而哈密以無主削弱，阿力欲并之。九年春，襲破其城，執王母，奪金印，分兵守之而去。朝廷命李文等經略，無功而還。阿力修貢如故，一歲中，使來者三，朝廷仍善待之，未嘗一語嚴詰。貢使益傲，求馴象。兵部言象以備儀衛，禮有進獻，無求索，乃却其請。使臣復言已得哈密城池及瓦刺奄檀王人馬一萬，又收捕曲先并亦思渴頭目倒刺火只，乞朝廷遣使通道，往來和好。帝曰：「迤西道無阻，不須遣官。阿力果誠心修貢，朝廷不計前愆，仍以禮待。」使臣復言赤斤諸衛，素與有仇，乞遣將士護行，且謂阿力雖得哈密，止以物產充貢，願質使臣家屬於邊，賜敕歸諭其王，獻還城印。帝從其護行之請，而賜敕諭阿力獻王母及城印，即和好如初。使臣還，復遣他使再入貢，而不還哈密。

十二年八月，甘州守臣言，番使謂王母已死，城印俱存，俟朝廷往諭即獻還。帝已却其貢使，復俾入京。時大臣專務姑息，致遐方小醜無顧忌。

十四年，阿力死，其子阿黑麻嗣爲速檀，遣使來貢。十八年，哈密都督罕慎潛師擣哈密，克之。賊將牙蘭遁走。阿黑麻頗懼。朝議罕慎有功，將立爲王。阿黑麻聞之，怒曰：「罕慎非忠順族，安得立！」乃僞與結婚。

弘治元年躬至哈密城下，誘罕慎盟，執殺之，復據其城，而遣使入貢，稱與罕慎締姻，乞賜蟒服及九龍渾金膝襪諸物。使至甘州，而罕慎之變已聞，朝廷亦不罪，但令還諭其主，歸我侵地。番賊知中國易與，不奉命，復遣使來貢。禮官議薄其賞，拘使臣，番賊稍懼。

三年春，偕撒馬兒罕貢獅子，願獻還城印，朝廷亦還其使臣。禮官請却勿納，帝不從。及使還，命內官張芾護行，諭內閣草敕。閣臣劉吉等言：「阿黑麻背負天恩，殺我所立罕慎，宜遣大將直擣巢穴，滅其種類，始足雪中國之憤。或不即討，亦當如古帝王封玉門關，絕其貢使，猶不失大體。今寵其使臣，厚加優待，又遣中使伴送，此何理哉！陛下事遵成憲，乃無故召番人入大內看戲獅子，大賚御品，誇耀而出。都下聞之，咸爲駭嘆，謂祖宗以來，從無此事。奈何屈萬乘之尊，爲奇獸之玩，俾異言異服之人，雜遝清嚴之地。況使臣滿刺土兒即罕慎外舅，忘主事警，逆天無道。而阿黑麻聚集人馬，謀犯肅州，名雖奉貢，意實叵測。兵部議羈其使臣，正合事宜。若不停張芾之行，彼使臣還國，阿黑麻必謂中土帝王可通情希寵，大臣謀國，天子不聽，其奈我何。長番賊之志，損天朝之威，莫甚於此。」疏入，帝止芾行，而問閣臣興師、絕貢二事。吉等以時勢未能，但請薄其賜賚。因言飼獅日用二羊，十歲則七千二百羊矣，守獅日役校尉五十人，一歲則一萬八千人矣。若絕其餵養，聽其自斃，傳之千載，實爲美談。帝不能用。

秋，又遣使從海道貢獅子，朝命却之，其使乃潛詣京師。禮官請治沿途有司罪，仍却其使，從之。當是時，中外乂安，大臣馬文升、耿裕輩，咸知國體，於貢使多所裁損，阿黑麻稍知中國有人。四年秋，遣使再貢獅子，願還金印，及所據十一城。邊臣以聞，許之，果以城印來歸。明年封陝巴爲忠順王，納之哈密，厚賜阿黑麻使臣，先所拘者盡釋還。

六年春，其前使二十七人還，未出境，後使三十九人猶在京師，阿黑麻復襲陷哈密，執陝巴以去。帝命侍郎張海等經略，優待其使，俾得進見。禮官耿裕等諫曰：「朝廷馭外番，宜惜大體。番使自去年入都，久不宣召，今春三月以來，宣召至再，且賜幣帛羊酒，正當謾書投入之時，小人何知，將謂朝廷恩禮視昔有加，乃畏我而然。事干國體，不可不慎。況此賊倔强無禮，久蓄不庭之心。所遣使臣，必其親信腹心，乃令出入禁掖，略無防閑。萬一奸宄窺伺，潛逞逆謀，雖悔何及。今其使寫亦滿速兒等宴賚已竣，猶不肯行，曰恐朝廷復宣召。夫不寶遠物，則遠人格。獅本野獸，不足爲奇，何至上煩鑾輿，屢加臨視，致荒徼小醜，得覲聖顏，藉爲口實。」疏入，帝卽遣還。張海等抵甘肅，遵朝議，却其貢物，羈前後使臣一百七十二人於邊，閉嘉峪關，永絕貢道。而巡撫許進等，又潛兵直擣哈密，走牙蘭，阿黑麻漸懼。其鄰邦不獲貢，胥怨阿黑麻。十年冬，送還陝巴，款關求貢，廷議許之。十二年，其使再求，命前使安置廣東者悉釋還。

十七年，阿黑麻死，諸子爭立，相仇殺。已而長子滿速兒嗣爲速檀，修貢如故。明年，忠順王陝巴卒，子拜牙卽襲，昏愚失道，國內益亂。而滿速兒桀黠變詐踰於父，復有吞哈密之志。

正德四年，其弟真帖木兒在甘州，貢使乞放還。朝議不許，乃以甘州守臣奏送還。還卽以邊情告其兄，共謀爲逆。九年，拜牙卽叛，復據哈密。朝廷遣彭澤經略，贖還城印。其部下他只丁復據之，且導滿速兒犯肅州。自是，哈密不可復得，而患且中於甘肅。會中朝大臣自相傾陷，番酋覘知之，益肆譏構，賊腹心得侍天子，中國體大虧，賊氣焰益盛。

十五年復許通貢。甘肅巡按潘倣言：「番賊犯順，殺戮擄掠，慘不可勝言。今雖悔罪，果足贖前日萬一乎？數年以來，雖嘗閉關，未能問罪。今彼以困憊求通，且將窺我意向，探我虛實，緩我後圖，誘我重利。不於此時稍正其罪，將益啓輕慢之心，招反覆之釁，非所以尊中國馭外番也。況彼番文執難從之詞，示敢拒之狀，當悔罪求通之日，爲悔慢不恭之語，其變詐已見。若日來者不拒，馭戎之常，盡略彼事之非，納求和之使，必將叨冒恩禮，飽饜賞餼，和市私販，滿載而歸。所欲旣足，驕志復萌，少不慊心，動則藉口，反復之釁，且在目前。叛則未嘗加罪，而反獲鈔掠之利，來則未必見拒，而更有賜賚之榮，何憚不爲。臣謂宜乘窘迫之時，聊爲潛伏之計，雖納其悔過之詞，姑阻其來貢之使，降敕責其犯順，仍索歸還

未盡之人。其番文可疑者，詳加詰問，使彼知中國尊嚴，天威難犯，庶幾反側不萌，歸服可久。」時王瓊力主款議，不納其言。

明年，世宗立，賊腹心寫亦虎仙伏誅，失所恃，再謀犯邊。嘉靖三年寇肅州，掠甘州，四年復寇肅州，皆失利去。於是卑詞求貢。會璉、萼等起封疆之獄，遂陰庇滿速兒再許之貢，議已定。賊黨牙蘭者，本曲先人，幼爲番掠，長而黠健，阿力以妹妻之，握兵用事，久爲西陲患，至是獲罪其主，七年夏，率所部二千人來降。有帖木兒哥土巴者，俱沙州番族，土魯番役屬之，歲徵婦女牛馬，不勝侵暴，亦率其族屬數千帳來歸。邊臣悉處之內地。

滿速兒怒，使其部下虎力納咱兒引瓦刺寇肅州，不勝，則復遣使求貢。總督王瓊請許之，詹事霍韜言：「番人攻陷哈密以來，議者或請通貢，或請絕貢，聖諭必有悔罪番文然後許。今王瓊譯進之文，皆其部下小醜之語，無印信足憑。我違許之，恐戎心益驕，後難駕馭。可虞者一。哈密城池雖稱獻還，然無實據，何以興復。或者遂有棄置不問之議，彼愈得志，必且劫我罕東，誘我赤斤，掠我瓜、沙，外連瓦刺，內擾河西，而邊警無時息矣。可虞者二。牙蘭爲番會腹心，擁衆來奔，而彼云不知所向，安知非詐降以誘我。他日犯邊，日納我叛臣也。我不歸彼叛臣，彼不歸我哈密。自是西陲益多事，而哈密終無興復之期。可虞者三。牙蘭之來，日給廩餼，所費實多，猶曰羈縻之策不獲已也。倘番會擁衆叩關，索彼叛

人，將予之耶，抑拒之耶？又或牙蘭包藏禍心，搆變於內，內外協應，何以禦之？可虞者四。或曰今陝西饑困，甘肅孤危，哈密可棄也。臣則曰，保哈密所以保甘、陝也，保甘肅所以保陝西也。若以哈密難守即棄哈密，然則甘肅難守亦棄甘肅乎？昔文皇之立哈密也，因元遺孽力能自立，因而立之。彼假其名，我享其利。今忠順之嗣三絕矣，天之所廢，孰能興之。今於諸夷中，求其雄傑能守哈密者，即畀金印，俾和輯諸番，爲我藩蔽，斯可矣，必求忠順之裔而立焉，多見其固也。」

疏入，帝嘉其留心邊計，下兵部確議。尙書胡世寧等力言牙蘭不可棄，哈密不必興復，請專圖自治之策，帝深納其言。自是番會許通貢，而哈密城印及忠順王存亡置不復問，河西稍獲休息，而滿速兒桀傲益甚矣。

十二年遣臣奏三事。一，請追治巡撫陳九疇罪。一，請遣官議和。一，請還叛人牙蘭。詞多悖慢，朝廷不能罪，但戒以修職貢無妄言。然自寫亦虎仙誅，他只丁陣歿，牙蘭又降，失其所倚賴，勢亦漸孤，部下各自雄長，稱王入貢者多至十五人，政權亦不一。

十五年，甘肅巡撫趙載陳邊事，言：「番會屢服屢叛，我撫之太厚，信之太深，愈長其奸狡。今後入犯，宜戮其使臣，徙其從人於兩粵，閉關拒絕。即彼悔罪，亦但許奉貢，不得輒還從人。彼內有所牽，外有所畏，自不敢輕犯。」帝頗採其言。

二十四年，滿速兒死，長子沙嗣爲速檀，其弟馬黑麻亦稱速檀，分據哈密。已而兄弟讐殺，馬黑麻乃結婚瓦剌以抗其兄，且墾田沙州，謀入犯。其部下來告，馬黑麻乃叩關求貢，復求內地安置。邊臣諭止之，乃還故土，與兄同處。總督張珩以聞，詔許其入貢。二十六年定令五歲一貢。其後貢期如令，而來使益多。逮世宗末年，番文至二百四十八道。朝廷重違其情，咸爲給賜。

隆慶四年，馬黑麻嗣兄職，遣使謝恩。其弟瑣非等三人，亦各稱速檀，遣使來貢。禮官請裁其犒賜，許附馬黑麻隨從之數，可之。迄萬曆朝，奉貢不絕。

校勘記

〔一〕以威武王納忽里鎮之。納忽里，太宗實錄卷二九永樂二年六月甲午條、殊域周咨錄卷一二均作「忽納失里」，明史稿傳二〇二哈密衛傳作「納忽失里」。

〔二〕倒瓦答失里卒。倒瓦答失里，原作「倒瓦刺失里」，據上文及英宗實錄卷七一正統五年九月辛丑條改。

〔三〕留其妹婿牙蘭守哈密。牙蘭，本書卷一九九胡世寧傳、世宗實錄卷八九嘉靖七年六月壬寅條、國權卷三七頁二三四二作「牙木蘭」。下同。

大明太祖高皇帝實錄卷之二十

丙午夏四月壬子朔。○癸丑。夏主明昇遣其學士虞某來聘。
 ○乙卯。上閱古車制至周禮五輅。曰玉輅太侈。何若止用木
 輅。詹同對曰。昔顏淵問為邦。孔子答以乘殷之輅。即木輅是也。
 孔子以其朴素渾堅質而得中故取焉。上曰。以玉飾車。攷之
 古禮亦惟祀天用之。若常乘之車。只宜用孔子所謂殷輅。然祀
 天之際。玉輅或未備。木輅亦未為不可。叅政張昶對曰。木輅戎
 車也。不可以祀天。上曰。孔子萬世帝王之師。其斟酌四代禮
 樂實為萬世之法。乘木輅何損于祭祀。况祀事在誠敬。不在儀
 文也。昶頓首謝。○左相國徐達兵至淮安。聞張士誠將徐義軍
 在馬驛港。夜率兵往襲之。破其水寨。軍義泛海遁去。獲船百餘
 艘。俘其院判錢富等及兵三千餘人。舟師進薄城下。其右丞梅

思祖、副樞唐英、蕭成、籍軍馬府庫出降、得糧四萬石、兵萬人、馬
 千五百匹、民四千餘戶、官五百餘人、達宿兵城上、民皆按堵、命
 指揮蔡仙華雲龍守其城。○丁巳↑沂州王宣以兵襲海州入
 之。宣揚州興化縣長安鄉人、元末為司農掾、會黃河決、省部募
 淮揚才能之士、俾召集民丁疏濬之。宣挺身自薦、元以為淮南
 淮北都元帥府都事、賫楮幣至揚州市竹茂、募丁夫。數月之間、
 得丁夫三萬餘、就令宣統領治河、數月工成。特徐州芝麻李兵
 起、據州城、因命宣為招討使、率丁夫從總兵知樞密院也速復
 徐州、尋授宣淮南淮北義兵都元帥、守馬陵、調滕州鎮禦、且耕
 且戰、以給軍儲。移鎮山東益都、田豐兵益都、宣子信從察帖木
 兒援之、破田豐、復令宣與信還鎮沂州、授宣父子俱為平章。于
 是權勢日重、宣因乘隙與信率兵攻掠山東、遂竊據沂州。○戊

午、徐達率兵取興化。先是，上命達圍泰州、興化、海安、通州、高郵、山川地勢要害以進，覽之，見輿子角為興化要地，寇兵所出之路，令達以兵絕其隘。達如旨進兵，至是遂取興化。淮地悉平。○己未，上謂太史令劉基起居注王禕曰：兵戈未靖，四方凋瘵，軍旅之需一出于民，吾欲舒其力奈何。基對曰：今用師之日，必資財用，出民所供，未可舒也。上曰：我謂舒民之力在均節財用，必也制其常賦乎。國家愛養生民，正猶抱保赤子，惟恐傷之。苟無常制，惟掎斂以蝟其脂膏，雖有慈父不能收愛子之心。今日之計當定賦以節用，則民力可以不困。崇本而祛末，則國計可以恒舒。基對曰：臣愚所不及，此上下兼足之道。仁政之本也。○庚申，上濠州李濟以城降。先是韓政兵至濠，攻其水濂洞月城，又攻其西門，殺傷相當。城中拒守甚堅，政乃督願時以

雲梯砲石四面並攻。時孫德崖久已死，城中度不能支。濟及知
 州馬麟乃出降。得官一百七十三人，馬一千四百九十，民九百
 三十九戶，馬一百五十疋，戰艦三十艘。○辛酉，上命朱文忠
 往徐達軍會議淮安城守事宜。諭達曰：大軍既克淮安，足以保
 障江淮，控制齊魯。然將士新附，軍士移戍者多，留鎮者少。今就
 于其屬選將簡卒，人人望長其屬，不得則易怨。將軍在處置得
 所，使上下相安，則吾無閭外之憂矣。○壬戌，上遣人齎書諭
 宿州吏民曰：自元失政，豪傑並起，奸詭之徒，多假向義之名，以
 濟其私。如浙西張九四，亂元之天下，乍臣乍叛，視勢強弱以為
 向背。浚民膏血，專利自私。近殺元江浙丞相及南臺大夫，又誑
 誘浙右之人，擾我邊民。觀其所為，詭詐多端，不可不討。自去年
 十月十七日，命中書左相國徐達率兵平淮地。今年四月初九

日報至、淮東郡縣八處鹽場三十三所、已次第克平。近者安東
淮安守臣梅右丞蕭叅政等、封府庫、籍甲兵、全城來歸、已令官
復其職、民復其業。惟爾宿州、實我親戚、將士故鄉、安得不取。以
其為父母桑梓之邦、不忍即興師旅、恐傷鄉里之民。是用遣使
告諭本州官吏軍民人等、宜體予懷、毋為自絕。○元徐州守將
樞密院同知陸聚聞左相國徐達已克淮安、以徐宿二州詣達
軍請降。事聞、上甚喜、以聚為江淮行省叅政、仍守徐州。賜文
綺三十疋、白金三百兩、勞之。仍以書諭其吏民曰、自古帝王之
興、務在除暴救民、故成湯放桀、周武伐紂、皆以師旅而興。然大
軍所過之處、民庶不驚、由帥行以律、兵禍不加於百姓。此所以
為王者之師也。近自胡元失政、兵起汝潁、天下之人以為豪傑
奮興、太平可致。而彼惟以妖言惑眾、不能上順天意、下順民心、

是用旨底滅亡。及元兵雲集其老將舊臣雖有握兵之權皆無
 戡亂之畧師行之地甚于群盜致使中原板蕩城郭丘虛十有
 餘年禍亂極矣。予觀古昔救民者必成功害民者必速禍是以
 兢兢業業敬畏天命修律治兵教民耕種訪賢才以定名爵命
 執法以伸冤枉紀綱雖布政化未周。近為浙西張士誠擾我邊
 民、納我叛將、爰命左相國徐達總兵討之。自去歲十月至今年
 四月、屢收捷報、淮東諸郡次第削平。徐州將陸聚當我軍之未
 至、即先以土地人民來歸、予嘉乃志、遂加爵賞、命其統兵仍守
 本郡。咨爾士民、既罹妖黨之禍、復遭胡兵之毒、供餽轉輸、勞苦
 日久、可自丙午歲為始、民間稅糧軍需差役、叅政陸聚其與有
 司會議、務從寬簡。令爾軍民各安生業、毋或驚疑。○癸亥、上
 謂侍臣孔克仁等曰、壬辰之亂、生民塗炭、中原諸將若字羅帖

木兒擁重兵犯城闕。亂倫干紀。行已夷滅。擴廓帖木兒挾太子以動兵。是以子抗父。且急于私仇。無敵愾之志。糜爛其民。終無成就。李思齊張思道輩固碌碌不足數。然竊據一方。民受其蔽。他如張士誠外假元名。內竄寇心。反覆兩端。情狀可見。明玉珍父子據有川蜀。僭稱大號。喜于自用。而無遠謀。觀其所為。皆不能有成。中原擾擾。孰為拯之。予揆天時。審人事。有可定之機。今師西出襄樊。東踰淮泗。首尾相擊。理之必勝。而大事可成。伐敵制勝。貴先有謀。謀定事舉。敵無不克矣。然中原固不難定。但民物凋喪。千里丘墟。既定之后。生息猶難。方勞思慮耳。○淮安降將梅思祖等至建康。上諭之曰。汝等多故。趙均用部曲。往往皆投重名。繼歸張氏。復食其祿。今來歸我。寧無舊主之思乎。思祖等對曰。草昧之際。誠欲擇豪傑以自附。今幸去彼而從。主

上猶出昏暗觀天日，豈敢有反覆耶。上曰：汝豈真知我之可
 附哉。思祖等曰：臣觀主上豁達大度，英明果斷，推赤心以任
 人，殺衣食以賞士，令行禁止，真命世之主。臣等誠得所歸。上
 曰：爾等既無貳心，當戮力建功，以保富貴。思祖等頓首謝。○甲
 子，上發建康往濠州省陵墓，命博士許存仁起居注，王禕等
 從行。遣使諭徐達曰：聞元將竹貞、頌馬、步兵萬餘自柳灘渡
 入安豐，其部將漕運自陳州而南，給其餽餉。我廬州俞平章見
 駐師東正陽，脩城守禦，宜令遣兵巡邏，絕其糧道。安豐糧既不
 給，而竹貞遠來之軍，野無所掠，與我軍相持，師老力罷，爾宜選
 劉平章、薛恭政部下騎卒五百，并廬州之兵，速與之戰，一鼓可
 克之。不然，事機一失，為我後患。達聞命，即統率馬步舟師三萬
 餘取安豐。○丁卯，江淮行省參政守徐州陸聚，遣院判曹國

器攻沛縣魚臺，下之，獲張同僉等官五十人。聚又遣院判司整
 率兵取邳州，敗其守將張侍郎。于是邳蕭宿遷睢寧諸縣皆降。
 上至濰州，追念仁祖太后始葬時禮有未備，議欲改葬。問
 博士許存仁等改葬典禮當何據。存仁等曰：禮改葬易常服用
 總麻，葬畢除之，今當如其禮。上愴然曰：改葬雖有常禮，父母
 之恩豈能盡報耶？命有司製素冠白纓衫，經皆以麤布為之。起
 居注王禕曰：此總為重矣。上曰：與其輕也，寧重。時有言改葬
 恐泄山川靈氣，乃不復啟葬，但增土以培其封。陵旁居民汪文
 劉英於上有舊名，至慰撫之，遂令招致鄰黨二十家以守陵
 墓，命有司復其家。○戊辰，方國珍遣經歷劉庸等來貢白金
 二萬兩，賜庸白金百兩，千戶梁某五十兩，綺帛各二疋。○濰州
 父老經濟等來見，上與之宴，謂濟等曰：吾與諸父老不相見

皇明泳化類編序

胡人主我華夏汗我衣冠禮樂之俗
振古未有之變也

皇天詎無意于斯民乎挺生

太祖高皇帝起滁濠間蘊堯舜之德襲湯

武之跡一時良將精兵應之如響乙

未遂渡江定金陵越數年底輯東南

始遣將中原及山陝川蜀兩廣閩浙

皇明泳化類編

序

之地車書攸同乃肅清邊陲震于荒
遠咸慶中國有

聖人民得其主三重漸復蔚然觀化矣洪
武之末爰有建文恭惟

成祖文皇帝治惟善述幾炳因革再都幽
燕益誕文教

仁宗昭皇帝

宣宗章皇帝繼體元良重熙衍慶再傳

英宗睿皇帝履泰之極因有己巳之變仰

荷

景皇帝監國天心效順智勇同猷已而

英宗復辟天下晏然嗣以

憲宗純皇帝

孝宗敬皇帝

武宗毅皇帝三紀之治禮樂可興正德之

間奸孽涵政追我

皇明

卷二

二

世宗肅皇帝入繼大統

天縱明聖之資時值述作之盛光前啓後

倫制煥然今

天子紹

聖致治恭已無爲凡有血氣者不啻出作
而入息足矣二百餘年以來治化之
隆日臨月照燦然閭閻兆民賴之可
泳而服也顧懿章紀載藏之秘閣非

①—

草茅寒賤所得覩其盛美 臣讀書見
宋儒邵雍以生治世爲大幸 臣自分
此生其幸多矣性懶交納遂爲書癖
因得大明一統志大明會典五倫書
爲善陰騭書 聖政紀 皇明詔制
皇明文衡名臣經濟錄等書而誦之未
幾又得 皇明通紀金聲玉振今獻
彙言功臣錄名臣言行錄理學名臣

錄內閣詞林記以及諸名公傳集奏
議不下數十家益刻心展玩嘗讀則
感感則思思則躍然當其躍然也即
若竊有得者嘆曰此非粗跡也乃巍
乎成功煥乎文章民日泳其化而不
知爲之耳輒手錄分類久而成帙遂
分爲卷若干以其情生于皞皞也名
之曰泳化類編雖然亦竊有芹曝之

私焉自

祖宗朝以至今日其化不可謂不盛矣自
戊申啓運以至今日民之泳乎化者
不可謂不深矣承其盛也而思以藉
之則上益泰及其深也而危以臨之
則下不偷察消息盈虛之數懷兢業
危微之幾懋樹德廣威之實以永貽
萬世之太平將斯世民物游息化養

與日期往而月斯邁固其耿耿之微

歟豈直資博而已哉

時隆慶戊辰八月中秋也

嘗誦先賢詩日月光天德山河壯
帝居太平無以報願上萬年書以

紀分門云

明進士祁陽鄧球謹序

序畢

①—

皇明泳化類編法律之卷

法律卷之一百

吳元年丁未冬十二月詔定律令濟唐宋皆有成律斷獄元不遵古惟取一時行事為條格吏胥易緣為奸

太祖既平武昌即議詳定尋立臺監并各道按察使至是

欲遣按察司官巡歷郡縣使內外知所遵守

上乃命中書省李善長叅知政事傅松滋人楊憲大史

令劉基翰林學士陶安按察使滕毅文原僉事劉承等

詳定律令因諭善長等曰坐有連坐之條謂侵損傷人

者衆吾以為罰弗及嗣忠厚之至也自今民有犯者毋

連坐又曰立法貴在簡當使言直理明夫網密則水

皇明泳化類編

法律卷之一百

無大魚法密則國無全民若條緒繁多可輕可重奸吏
夤緣為奸則所以禁殘暴者反以害良善非美法也鄉
等宜盡心斟酌行之庶可以為久遠之法

洪武元年戊申春正月己丑中書省進大明令詔頒行
之先是命善長等定律令令舉大綱律詳節目相表裏
也至是善長等定為令一百四十五條上之

太祖曰律令者治天下之法也令以教之於先律以齊之
於後古之律令至簡後世漸繁多至有不能通其義者
何以使人知法意而不犯哉令既難知是啓吏之奸而
陷民於法朕甚憫之今所定律令芟繁就簡使之歸一
直言其事庶幾易知而難犯書曰刑期于無刑天下果

能遵令而不犯于律刑措斯亦不難故命頒行四方惟
尔臣庶體予至懷

是年令處決重刑從秋後無得非時以傷生意

行刑
洪武三年庚戌令臣民有罪法當死者三覆五奏毋輒

太祖曰六卿之職亦宜以細故加厚命以俸贖罪後來百
官有過皆許贖俸蓋始此

是年冬十月命刑部尚書劉惟謙學士宋濂等更定大
明律先是李善長等詳定律令輕重頗有乖

上乃命濂等同刑部官凡四人講唐律每二篇成輒繕寫

以奏

上親為裁定務協厥中明年成律其篇目一準之於唐曰
名例曰衛禁曰戒制曰戶婚曰廩庫曰擅興曰賊盜曰
鬪訟曰詐偽曰雜律曰捕亡曰斷獄采用已頒舊律二
百八十八條續律百二十八條舊令改律三十六條因
事制律三十一條掇唐律以補遺一百二十三條合六
百有六條分為三十卷宋濂撰表以進至二十二年秋
八月又命翰林院同刑部官將比年例律條參考折衷
以類編附凡三百七十有六條曰名例律仍載于律書
之首頒行之

何孟春曰津

皇祖有命百司官吏不可不讀讀斯求以明之誰謂明習
律法非吾儒事哉我

皇祖欽定律條大抵承用晉唐舊文文深而旨奧士大夫
乍讀或有所不逮而況于諸吏胥故大學士丘文莊公
嘗言律須儒臣通法意者為之辭釋必使人人易曉不
待思索考究而自悉則愚民各知所守奸吏不得容情
一買法云

皇明祖訓有云守成之君止守與大誥並不許用黥刺刑
剗之刑臣下敢有奏用此刑者文武群臣即時劾奏
夫律所以明法也大誥所以濟恩也

祖宗垂訓之意豈不邁成周之用中罰而長王國者哉

進

大明律表

臣聞天生蒸民不能無欲欲動情勝詭
偽日滋強暴縱其侵凌柔懦無以自立
故聖人者出因時制治設刑憲以為之
防欲使惡者知懼而善者獲寧傳所謂
獄者萬民之命所以禁暴止邪養育群
生者也譬諸禾黍必刈稂莠而後苗始
茂方於白粢必去沙礫而後食可養苟

梗化敗俗之徒不有以誅之雖堯舜不能以為治夫自軒轅以來代有刑官而五刑之法漸著其詳弗可復知逮魏文侯師於李悝始采諸國刑典造法經六篇漢蕭何加以三篇通號九章曹魏劉劭又衍漢律為十八篇晉賈充又參魏律為二十篇唐長孫無忌等又取漢魏晉三家釋可行者定為十一篇大槩皆以九章為宗歷代之律至於唐亦可謂

等厥大成矣洪惟

呈帝陛下受億兆君師之命登大寶位保乂
臣民孳孳弗怠其訓迪群臣諄復數千
言唯恐其有犯慈愛仁厚之意每見於
言外是大舜惟刑之恤之義也矜憫愚
民無知陷於罪戾法司奏讞輒惻然弗
寧多所寬宥是神禹見辜而泣之心也
唯貪墨之吏承踵元弊不異白粲中之
沙礫禾黍中之稂莠也乃不得已假峻

法以繩之是以臨

御以來屢詔大臣更定新律至五六而弗倦者凡欲生斯民也今又特

勅刑部尚書劉惟謙重會衆律以協厥中而近代比例之繁奸吏可資為出入者咸痛革之每一篇成輒繕書上

奏揭於西廡之壁

親御翰墨為之裁定由是仰見

陛下仁民愛物之心與虞夏帝王同一哀矜

也易曰山上有火旅君子以明慎用刑而不留獄言獄不可不謹也書曰刑期于無刑言辟以止辟而民自不敢犯也陛下聖慮淵深上稽天理下揆人情成此百代之準繩實有易書之與肯行見好生之德洽于民心凡日月所照霜露所墜有血氣者莫不上承神化改過遷善而悉臻雍熙之治矣何其盛哉臣惟謙以洪武六年冬十一月受

詔明年二月書成篇目一準之於唐曰名例
曰衛禁曰職制曰戶婚曰廩庫曰擅興
曰賊盜曰鬪訟曰詐偽曰雜犯曰捕亡
曰斷獄采用已頒舊律二百八十八條
續律百二十八條舊令改律三十六條
因事制律三十一條掇唐律以補遺一
百二十三條合六百有六分為三十卷
其間或損或益或仍其舊務合重輕之
宜云謹俯伏

闕廷投

進奉

表以

聞臣等誠惶誠恐稽首頓首謹言

洪武七年 月 日刑部尚書等官

臣劉惟謙等上表

帝后尊號詔

嘉靖元年三月十五日

奉

天承運

皇帝詔曰自古帝王以孝治天下尊親之禮其來遠

矣仰惟

聖母慈壽皇太后敬相

皇考孝宗皇帝訓育

皇兄武宗皇帝含弘光大蔚有顯聞

皇兄奄棄臣民之日中外岌岌賴我

聖母上念

宗社大計擁翊冲人入繼

大統及剪除兇逆潛消禍變呼吸之際安定家邦

功德並隆揄揚莫既不舉尊崇之典曷伸孝敬之

誠

皇嫂皇后巽順含章安貞應地伉儷

宸極表正宮闈母儀有年名稱宜異重念

聖祖母貴妃聖善慈仁靜專明哲事我

憲祖贊理內庭燕謀兆祥澤隆佑啓

本生父興猷王聰明天授仁孝夙成河間好禮東平

前烈雖傳序之統義有所專而天性之恩自不容已

用是遠稽載籍博采公言率籲文武羣臣謹

奉

冊寶

聖母尊號曰

昭聖慈壽皇太后

皇嫂曰

莊肅皇后又奉

聖母懿旨上

聖祖母尊號曰

壽安皇太后

本生父母曰

興獻帝

興國太后大禮既舉洪恩誕敷所有合行事宜條列

于後

一宗室有年七十以上者各賜米十石絹十匹

凡一應禮儀有衰病不能自行者子為代行

以示優老之意

一宗室為庶人者各賜米八石絹八匹其子女
人賜米五石布五匹年及婚配者所司具名
以聞照例選婚量助嫁娶之資俱令有司辦
給

一鳳陽高墻庶人還各查原犯情罪輕重來聞
一軍民之家有年七十以上者許一丁侍養免
其雜泛差役八十以上者仍給與絹一匹綿
一斤米一石肉十斤九十以上者倍之其男
子八十以上有為鄉里所敬服者加以冠帶
以榮其身

一軍民之家有五世同居共爨不分異者有司
具實奏聞照例旌表詔書到日先給羊酒獎

勸

一孝子順孫義夫節婦有司具實奏聞照例旌
表其已旌表年及六十者男子冠帶榮身婦
人照八十以上例給賜綰綿米肉

一各處帝王陵寢名臣賢士墳墓有被人毀發
者所在官司即時修理如舊令附近民人一
丁看護免其雜泛差役其餘墳墓但有露棺

一近年各處盜起有貞烈女婦被賊殘害志節不屈行跡顯著者撫按官查勘是實明白具奏俱與旌表門閭

一各處用兵地方軍民職官有沒于戰陣者撫巡官查勘明白具奏定奪軍民死於鋒鏑及凍餒死亡無人收埋者所在官司俱與掩埋毋致暴露

一弘治十八年以後內外大小官員死忠者及正德十四年文武官員人等因諫止巡遊已經各衙門奏請追贈廕叙者其父母妻室不

拘存歿俱得受封贈親老寡妻無人侍養者
有司量加優恤

一文職致仕一品未受恩典者有司月給食米
二石歲撥人夫二名應用二品以上年及八
十者備綵幣羊酒問勞九十以上者具實奏
來遣使存問五品以上以禮致仕年七十以
上者進散官一階其中廉貧不能自存衆所
共知者每歲仍給米四石以資養贍不許徇
情濫給

一兩京文職官員未及三年考滿者俱與應得

三十一 受民刑

誥勅若父母見存先已受封其子官職遷轉者服色許與子同後不為例其曾經奏准給與誥勅未曾關領因事降調非貪淫酷刑者給與原給誥勅

一武職應得誥勅已經請給年遠未曾撰黃者
一各王府官有年老願致仕者進散官一級其歷俸三年以上父母見存該受封者給與誥勅封之後不為例

一軍官老疾不能任事告替職者准令兒男

部替職免其自来

一弘治十八年以前軍職有紀功核實曾經查
若干者兵部還查奏定奪

一軍職先年降調兩廣等處病故者子孫為因
路遠不能承襲許令原衛承襲帶俸差操

一將軍年及五十歲侍衛二十年以上者不拘
在役退閒俱與冠帶以榮終身

一吏部給由等項聽選官取選未至願告致仕
者俱陞職一級致仕監生不願出仕者已有
授職事例今後還填註衙門給與散官吏員

卷之十一

三十一

冠帶聽選願告回家不出仕者照格填授衙門職名間住在原籍者俱各赴各該司府衙門告勘給授仍類冊繳部以憑查考

一內外衛所軍士月糧多被該管官旗假以公用為名扣除尅減不得全支老幼無所養贍及在外沿邊收糧官攢人等通同勢要親屬包攬插和沙土糠粃虛出通關致令倉庫空虛支給不時軍士困苦令所在風憲官員訪察拏問追究治以重罪

一各處府州縣預備倉糧賑濟饑荒有例見行

官吏人等奉行不至多無實効今後務要設
法措置驗時豐凶斂散年終將收除實在數
目開奏有能多積至數萬石以上者量加旌
擢巡按守巡官時常往來督理

一各處僧道有父母見存無人侍養不問有無
度牒願還俗養親者聽

一在京在外有鰥寡孤獨廢疾不能生業者即
便收入養濟院照例給與衣糧毋令失所已
收養者人各賜米三斗其各州縣貧難戶丁
例該優免者不許一槩編當差役

卷之十九
三十一
詩三百餘

一詔書內各項恩典軍衛有司務在着實舉行
不許虛應故事

於戲愛由親始廣孝必因乎心思以序推為治可
運於掌詔告天下咸使聞知

修翊戴功勅 嘉靖元年三月二十五日

勅兵二部朕入繼大統賴爾内外文武勲戚大臣
定策并迎立各宣忠悃保安

社稷今

山陵及

徽稱大禮事畢宜加殊恩以答元功大學士楊廷和

蔣冕毛紀首先定策忠義大節功尤顯著俱
進封伯爵給與誥券子孫世襲食祿一千石
餘官如故俱仍在內閣辦事大學士費宏廕
他一子錦衣衛指揮使世襲親捧信符迎立等
官駙馬都尉崔元進封侯爵給與誥券子孫
世世承襲食祿一千五百石皇親太傅壽寧伯
張鶴齡加太師祿米三百石禮部尚書毛澄加
太子太傅廕他一子為錦衣衛世襲指揮同知
太監張錦廕他弟姪一人為錦衣衛世襲指揮
僉事定國公徐文祚中途有疾先已賞了罷司

震澤縣之人丁舊吳江縣人丁之半也其原額在順治

三年計八萬九千七百四內除鄉紳舉貢生員優免

人丁一千七百一十二實在當差人丁八萬七千九

百九十二後奉文吏承不免紳衿等止免本身實免

人丁八百二十六

按後改追

餘不免人丁八百八十六又

審增人丁一千五百六十七

見順治十四年賦役全書

康熙五年

計十萬六千四百三十七丁雍正四年析置縣遂下	管舊吳江縣順治中原額當差人丁四萬七千二百	二十實免改追充餉人丁四百四十四不免餘丁四	百五十審增人丁八百康熙中十次審增人丁七千	六百六十四 <small>五年審增五百</small> 十一年審增二千五	審增一千四百四十 <small>十五年審增一千五百</small> 二十年	年審增三百八十 <small>三十五年審增二百三十</small>	十年審增二百二十 <small>四十五年審增</small> 又兩次審增	三百四十五 <small>五十年審增二百三十四</small> 又兩次審增	滋生人丁四百七十 <small>五十五年審增二百六</small> 通計	六十年審增二百六十四	五萬七千三十六內除滋生人丁外其充餉當差人	丁共五萬六千五百六十六	是年置縣後仍審增滋生人丁一百三十一
----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------	----------------------	-------------	-------------------

九年審增滋生人丁三百一十二

乾隆元年審增滋生人丁三百四十二

以本康熙十九年及乾隆三

年賦役全書

六年審增滋生人丁二千三百七十

十一年審增滋生人丁八百四十

戶口

雍正九年震澤縣烟戶計五萬三千六百八十八

附在城郭

典史所轄戶四千三百八十六平望司所轄戶二萬三千九百七震澤司所轄戶二萬五千三百九十五

其口數無考

千三
百九

按舊吳江我朝役法沿明嘉靖中知府王儀之舊計丁田徵銀貼役故書冊亦止編丁而不載戶惟府志有吳江順治三年十七年康熙十三年戶口數然順治三年載戶八萬二千八百九十一口二十一萬一百二十九而十七年康熙十三年戶並少二百餘口並少一百且各數與明成宏間並相等要非覈其實者也其後數皆無考自四十七年雍正四年飭行保甲法九年又嚴飭之各州縣乃奉文實力編排保

甲十戶立一牌頭十牌立一甲長十甲立一保正每
戶給一印信紙牌開列丁男婦女口數以及生業同
居及戶內共有田糧若干裱掛門首出入必使註明
不許容留面生可疑之人令甲長牌頭稽查盜賊窩
線等事指報究詳於是震澤縣始有戶口數然是年
戶五萬三千六百有奇較其時人丁數祇不及三千
八百有奇則一戶而兩三丁者絕少恐亦非實數也
至乾隆九年知縣陳和志奉文逐戶親查於是凡戶
口男女總數細數始皆得其實云

東宮監國

古制，太子出曰「撫軍」，守曰「監國」。三代而下，惟唐太子監國，結雙龍符，而其儀不著。

永樂七年，駕幸北京，定制。凡常朝，皇太子於午門左視事。左右侍衛及各官啓事如常儀。若御文華殿，承旨召入者方入。凡內外軍機及王府急務，悉奏請。有邊警，卽調軍剿捕，仍馳奏行在。皇城及各門守衛，皆增置官軍。遇聖節、正旦、冬至，皇太子率百官於文華殿前拜表，行十二拜禮。表由中門出，皇太子由左門送至午門，還宮。百官導至長安右門外，文五品、武四品以上，及近侍官、監察御史，俱乘馬導至三山門外，以表授進奏官。至期，告天祝壽，行八拜禮。其正旦、冬至、千秋節，百官於文華殿慶賀如常儀。凡享太廟

及社稷諸神之祭，先期敕皇太子攝祭，其祀典神祇，太常寺於行在奏聞，遣官行禮。凡四夷來朝，循例賜宴，命禮部遣送行在所。凡詔書至，設龍亭儀仗大樂，百官朝服，出三山門外奉迎。皇太子冕服迎於午門前，至文華殿，行五拜三叩頭禮，升殿展讀。使者捧詔置龍亭中，皇太子送至午門外。禮部官置詔書雲輿中，文武二品以上官迎至承天門，開讀如儀。以鼓樂送使者詣會同館。使者見皇太子，行四拜禮，賜宴於禮部。

十二年北征，復定制。常朝於文華殿視事，文武啓事，俱達北京。嘉靖十八年南巡，命皇太子監國。時太子幼，命輔臣一人居守，軍國機務悉聽啓行。

皇太孫監國

永樂八年，帝自北京北征。時皇太子已監國於南，乃命皇長孫居北京監國。時宣宗未冠，及冠始加稱皇太孫云。

其制，每日皇長孫於奉天門左視事，侍衛如常儀。諸司有事，具啓施行。若軍機及王府要務，一啓皇太子處分，一奏聞行在所。聖節，設香案於奉天殿，行禮如常儀。天下諸司表文俱詣北京。四夷朝貢俱送南京。武選及官民有犯，大者啓皇太子，小者皇長孫行之。皇親有犯，啓皇太子所。犯情重及謀逆者，即時拘執，命皇親會問。不服，乃命公、侯、伯、

五府、六部、都察院、大理寺會皇親再問，啓皇太子，候車駕回京，奏請處分。

頒詔儀

凡頒命四方，有詔書，有赦書，有敕符、丹符，有制諭、手詔。詔赦，先於闕廷宣讀，然後頒行。敕符等，則使者齎付所授官，秘不敢發。開讀迎接，儀各不同。

洪武二十六年定頒詔儀。設御座於奉天殿，設寶案於殿東，陳中和韶樂於殿內，設大樂於午門及承天門外，設宣讀案於承天門上，西南向。清晨，校尉擎雲蓋於殿內簾前，百官朝服班承天門外，公侯班午門外，東西向。皇帝皮弁服，升殿如儀。禮部官捧詔書詣案前，用寶訖，置雲蓋中。校尉擎雲蓋，由殿東門出。大樂作，自東陞降，由奉天門至金水橋南午門外。樂作，公侯前導，迎至承天門上。鳴贊唱排班，文武官就位，樂作。四拜，樂止。宣讀展讀官升案，稱有制，衆官跪。禮部官捧詔書，授宣讀官。宣訖，禮部官捧置雲蓋中。贊禮唱俯伏興，樂作。四拜，樂止。舞蹈山呼，又四拜。儀禮司奏禮畢，駕輿。禮部官捧詔書分授使者，百官退。

嘉靖六年續定，鴻臚官設詔案，錦衣衛設雲蓋盤於奉天殿內東，別設雲盤於承天門上，設綵輿於午門外，鴻臚官設宣讀案於承天門上。百官入丹墀侍立，帝冕服升座，如朝儀。翰

林院官捧詔書從，至御座前東立。百官入班，四拜，出至承天門外。贊頌詔，翰林院官捧詔書授禮部官，捧至雲盤案上。校尉擎雲蓋，俱從殿左門出，至午門外，捧詔置綵輿內。公侯伯三品以上官前導，迎至承天門上，宣讀贊拜，俱如上儀。禮部官捧詔書授錦衣衛官，置雲匣中，以綵索繫之龍竿，頌降。禮部官捧置龍亭內，鼓樂迎至禮部，授使者頌行。隆慶六年，詔出至皇極門，即奏禮畢，駕還。

迎接詔赦儀

洪武中定。凡遣使開讀詔赦，本處官員龍亭儀仗鼓樂，出郭迎。使者下馬，奉詔書置龍亭中，南向，本處官朝服行五拜禮。衆官及鼓樂前導，使者上馬隨龍亭後，至公廡門。衆官先入，文武東西序立，候龍亭至，排班四拜。使者捧詔授展讀官，展讀官跪受，詣開讀案。宣讀訖，捧詔授朝使，仍置龍亭中。衆官四拜，舞蹈山呼，復四拜畢。班首詣龍亭前，跪問皇躬萬福，使者鞠躬答曰：「聖躬萬福。」衆官退，易服見使者，並行兩拜禮。復具鼓樂送詔於官亭。如有出使官在，則先守臣行禮。

進書儀〔三〕

進書儀惟實錄最重。皇帝具袞冕，百官朝服，進表稱賀。其餘纂修書成，則以表進。重錄書及玉牒，止捧進。茲詳載進實錄儀，餘可推見云。

建文時，太祖實錄成，其進儀無考。永樂元年，重修太祖實錄成。設香案於奉天殿丹陛正中，表案於丹陛之東，設寶輿於奉天門，設鹵簿大樂如儀。史官捧實錄置輿中，帝御殿如大朝儀。百官詣丹墀左右立，鴻臚官引寶輿至丹陛上，史官舉實錄置於案，遂入班。鴻臚官奏進實錄，序班舉實錄案，以次由殿中門入，班首由左門入。帝興，序班以實錄案置於殿中。班首跪於案前，贊史官皆跪。序班并內侍官舉實錄案入謹身殿，置於中。帝復座。贊俯伏，班首俯伏，興。復位，贊四拜。贊進表，序班舉表案，由左門入，置於殿中。贊宣表，贊衆官皆跪。宣訖，俯伏，興，四拜。進實錄官退於東班，百官入班。鴻臚官奏慶賀，各官四拜興。贊有制，史官仍入班。贊跪，宣制云：「太祖高皇帝、高皇后功德光華，纂述詳實。朕心歡慶，與卿等同之。」宣訖，俯伏興，三舞蹈，又四拜，禮畢。

萬曆五年，世祖實錄成，續定進儀。設寶輿、香亭、表亭於史館前，帝袞冕御中極殿，百官朝服侍班。監修、總裁、纂修等官，朝服至館前。監修官捧表置表亭中，纂修官捧實錄置寶輿中，鴻臚官導迎。用鼓樂傘蓋，由會極門下階，至橋南，由中道行。監修、總裁等官隨表亭後，由二橋行至皇極門。實錄輿由中門入，表亭由左門入，至丹墀案前。監修官捧表

置於案，纂修官捧實錄置於案，俱侍立於石墀東。內殿百官行禮訖，帝出御皇極殿。監修、總裁等官入，進實錄、進表俱如永樂儀。次日，司禮監官自內殿送實錄下殿，仍置寶輿中，用傘蓋，與監修總裁官同送皇史宬尊藏。

進表箋儀

明初定制，凡王府遇聖節及冬至、正旦，先期陳設畢。王冕服就位四拜，詣香案前跪。進表訖，復位，四拜，三舞蹈，山呼，又四拜。百官朝服，隨班行禮。進中宮箋儀如之，惟不舞蹈山呼。進皇太子箋，王皮弁服，行八拜禮，百官朝服，隨班行禮。

凡進賀表箋，皇子封王者，於天子前自稱曰「第幾子某王某」，稱天子曰「父皇陛下」，皇后曰「母后殿下」。若孫，則自稱曰「第幾孫某王某」，稱天子曰「祖父皇帝陛下」，皇后曰「祖母皇后殿下」。若弟，則自稱曰「第幾弟某封某」，稱天子曰「大兄皇帝陛下」，皇后曰「尊嫂皇后殿下」。姪則自稱曰「第幾姪某封某」，稱天子曰「伯父皇帝陛下」，「叔父皇帝陛下」，皇后曰「伯母皇后殿下」，「叔母皇后殿下」。若尊屬，則自稱曰「某封臣某」，稱天子曰「皇帝陛下」，皇后曰「皇后殿下」。若從孫以下，則稱「從孫、再從孫、三從孫某封某」，皆稱皇帝皇后曰「伯祖、叔祖皇帝陛下」，「伯祖母、叔祖母皇后殿下」。至世宗時，始令各王府表箋，俱用聖

號，不得用家人禮。

凡在外百官進賀表箋，前一日，結綵於公廨及街衢。文武官各齋沐，宿本署。清晨，設龍亭於庭中，設儀仗鼓樂於露臺，設表箋案於龍亭前，香案於表箋案前，設進表箋官位於龍亭東。鼓初嚴，各官具服。次嚴，班首具服詣香案前，滌印用印訖，以表箋置於案，退立幕次。三嚴，各官入班四拜，班首詣香案前。贊跪，衆官皆跪。執事者以表箋跪授班首，班首跪授進表官，進表官跪受，置龍亭中。班首復位，各官皆四拜，三舞蹈，山呼，四拜。金鼓儀仗鼓樂百官前導，進表官在龍亭後東。至郊外，置龍亭南向，儀仗鼓樂陳列如前，文武官侍立。班首取表箋授進表官，進表官就於馬上受表，即行，百官退。

鄉飲酒禮

記曰：「鄉飲酒之禮廢，則爭鬪之獄繁矣。」故儀禮所記，惟鄉飲之禮達於庶民。自周迄明，損益代殊，而其禮不廢。洪武五年詔禮部奏定鄉飲禮儀，命有司與學官率士大夫之老者，行於學校，民間里社亦行之。十六年詔班鄉飲酒禮圖式於天下，每歲正月十五日、十月初一日，於儒學行之。

其儀，以府州縣長吏爲主，以鄉之致仕官有德行者一人爲賓，擇年高有德者爲僎賓，其

次爲介，又其次爲三賓，又其次爲衆賓，教職爲司正。贊禮、贊引、讀律，皆使能者。

前期，設賓席於堂北兩楹之間，少西，南面；主席於阼階上，西面；介席於西階上，東面；僎席於賓東，南面；三賓席於賓西，南面。皆專席不屬。衆賓六十以上者，席於西序，東面北上。賓多則設席於西階，北面東上；僚佐席於東序，西面北上。設衆賓五十以下者，位於堂下西階之西，當序，東面北上。賓多則又設位於西階之南，北面東上。司正及讀律者，位於堂下阼階之南，北面西上。設主之贊者位於阼階之東，西面北上。設主及僚佐以下次於東廊，賓介及衆賓次於庠門之外，僎次亦在門外。設酒尊於堂上東南隅，加勺、翬，用葛巾；爵洗於阼階下東南，篚一於洗西，實以爵觶；盥洗在爵洗東。設卓案於堂上下席位前，陳豆於其上。六十者三豆，七十者四豆，八十者五豆，九十者六豆，堂下者二豆。主人豆如賓之數，皆實以菹醢。

至期，賓將及門，執事者進報曰：「賓至。」主人率僚屬出迎於門外，主西面，賓以下皆東面。三揖三讓，而後升堂，相向再拜，升坐。執事者報僎至，迎坐如前儀。贊禮唱司正揚觶。司正詣盥洗位，次詣爵洗位，取觶於篚，洗觶。升自西階，詣尊所酌酒，進兩楹之間，北面立。在坐者皆起，司正揖，僎賓以下皆報揖。司正乃舉觶，言曰：「恭惟朝廷，率由舊章。敦崇禮教，舉行鄉飲，非爲飲食。凡我長幼，各相勸勉。爲臣竭忠，爲子盡孝，長幼有序，兄

友弟恭。內睦宗族，外和鄉里，無或廢墜，以忝所生。」言畢，贊禮唱司正飲酒。飲畢，揖報如初。司正復位，僕賓以下皆坐。贊禮唱讀律令，執事舉律令案於堂之中。讀律令者詣案前，北向立讀，皆如揚輝儀。有過之人俱赴正席立聽，讀畢復位。贊禮唱供饌，執事者舉饌案至賓前，次僕，次介，次主，三賓以下各以次舉訖。贊禮唱獻賓，主降詣盥洗及爵洗位，洗爵酌酒，至賓前，置於席。稍退，兩拜，賓答拜。又詣僕前，亦如之。主退復位。贊禮唱賓酬酒，賓起，僕從之，詣盥洗爵洗位如儀。至主前，置爵。賓、僕、主皆再拜，各就坐。執事者於介、三賓、衆賓以下，以次斟酒訖。贊禮唱飲酒，或三行，或五行。供湯三品畢。贊禮唱徹饌，在坐者皆興。僕、主、僚屬居東，賓、介、三賓、衆賓居西，皆再拜。贊禮唱送賓，以次下堂，分東西行，仍三揖出庠門而退。里中鄉飲略同。

二十二年，命凡有過犯之人列於外坐，同類者成席，不許雜於善良之中，著爲令。

三日賓禮，以待蕃國之君長與其使者。宋政和間，詳定五禮，取周官司儀掌九儀賓客擯相，詔王南鄉以朝諸侯之義，故以朝會儀列爲賓禮。按古之諸侯，各君其國，子其民，待以客禮可也，不可與後世之臣下等。茲改從其舊，而百官庶人相見之禮附焉。

F. REFERENCE MATERIALS

HANDY REFERENCE WORKS

The following works are of particular use for research in Ming history. Keep them and the MINGSHI (see 9.1) close at hand.

Cambridge History of China. Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett, eds., THE CAMBRIDGE HISTORY OF CHINA, Volume 7, THE MING DYNASTY, 1368-1644, PART I (New York: Cambridge University Press, 1988). A second Ming volume is in the works.

DMB. L. Carrington Goodrich and Chaoying Fang, eds., DICTIONARY OF MING BIOGRAPHY 1368-1644 (New York and London: Columbia University Press, 1976), 2 vols. (See 3.5)

Franke. The place to begin any search for Ming sources is Wolfgang Franke, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE SOURCES OF MING HISTORY (Kuala Lumpur: University of Malaysia Press, 1968). (See 8.4)

Hucker. Charles O. Hucker, A DICTIONARY OF OFFICIAL TITLES IN IMPERIAL CHINA (Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1985). (See 6.2)

Tan Qixiang's Historical Atlas. Tan Qixiang, ed., ZHONGGUO LISHI DITUJI (The historical atlas of China), vol. 7, YUAN MING SHIQI (The Yuan dynasty period, the Ming dynasty period; Shanghai: Ditu chubanshe, 1982). (See 4.6)

THE FOUR-CORNER SYSTEM

Because of their great numbers and the diversity of their forms Chinese characters are difficult to arrange sequentially. Several strategies for indexing have been developed to solve the problem. One is the ordering according to classifiers (radicals) first and number of strokes second, another is listing by stroke order first and radical second, a third is using phonetic values to put characters in alphabetical order. Yet another approach, the four-corner system, makes it possible to arrange characters in numerical order by assigning numbers based on the configuration of the character as viewed from its four corners (sijiao haoma 四角號碼). Four-corner systems are widely used in Sinological indexes. Because the system requires the user to master a set of conventions for generating numbers a translation of the instructions is offered below.

I. Strokes are divided into ten types, and each has a number to represent it as follows:

Number	Name	Form	Examples	Explanation
0	Head 頭	丶	言主戶戶	Free-standing dot joined to a free-standing horizontal line.
1	Transverse 橫	一 乚 乚	天土地江元風	Includes horizontal strokes, rising strokes and rightward hooks
2	Downstroke 垂	丨 丿 丨	山月千則	Includes perpendiculars, left-slanting downstrokes, and leftward hooks
3	Dot 點	丶 丶	心 禱 之 衣	Includes dots and right-slanting downstrokes

4	Cross 义	十 义	草杏皮刈大荷	A pair of strokes that cross
5	Transfixer 插	扌	扌 戈 申 史	One stroke passing through two or more other strokes
6	Square 方	口	國 烏 目 四 甲 由	Four-sided enclosure
7	Angle 角	丿 丨 丨 丿	刑 門 阪 陰 雪 衣 學 罕	The meeting place of a horizontal and a vertical
8	Eight 八	八 ㄨ 人 厶	分 頁 羊 余 災 余 天 午	The character Eight and its transformations
9	Small 小	小 ㄣ ㄣ 小 十	尖 糸 彳 果 推	The character Small and its transformations

Notes: The types 0, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 are compounds, each composed of some number of individual strokes. When, in analyzing a character, both a single stroke and one of the compounds could be used, the compound should generally be chosen. For instance: ㄩ is 0, not 3; 扌 is 4, not 2; 丿 is 7, not 2; ㄨ is 8, not 3-2; and 小 is 9, not 3-3.

II. For each character, pick out only the four corner strokes in this order: 1) upper left 2) upper right
3) lower left 4) lower right

For example:

When analyzing a character, follow the form (0-9) of the four corners in the above order. Each character then yields a four-digit number:

顔 = 0111 截 = 0111 際 = 0111

III. If the upper or lower portion of a character has only one stroke or compound, regardless of its position, it is always

taken as the left corner and the right corner is counted as 0.

For example:

宣 直 首 冬 巢 宗 毋

After a given stroke has been used, any other corners in which it might appear are also counted as 0. For example:

干 之 持 掛 火 米 車 時

IV. In the case of characters whose main form is 口 門 門 , the lower corners are taken from the enclosed portion of the character. If there are other strokes at the top, bottom, left or right, however, this rule does not apply.

For example:

因=6042 閉=7724 關=7712

but:

茵=4140 淵=3712

Supplementary Rules:

I. Always follow the kaishu 楷書 form of characters as below:

right 佳 巳 反 矛 尸 安 心 卜 斥 刃 业 赤 草 真 執 禺 衣

wrong 佳 巳 反 矛 尸 安 心 卜 斥 刃 业 赤 草 真 執 禺 衣

II. Important points in selecting stroke-type:

1. 尸 廴 and similar characters: If any other strokes touch the right portion of the horizontal stroke below the dot, the upper left number is 3, not 0.

2. 尸 廴 門 and similar characters: If a stroke that forms part of the enclosure extends outside it, the right number is 7, not 6.

3. The two ends of a corner stroke do not count as a 7. For example: 𠃉

4. Strokes which pass through others cannot be part of a type 8. For example: 美

5. 𠃉 have two strokes in the middle, 水 have two strokes on one side, thus neither are in the form of "small."

III. Important points in selecting corners:

1. As for free-standing or parallel strokes, in general disregard their vertical position and take the leftmost or rightmost as the corner. For example:

非 倬 疾 浦 帝

2. If the leftmost or rightmost stroke is covered by other strokes, or covers other strokes beneath it, take the covering strokes at the top or the covered strokes at the bottom as the corners.

宗 幸 寧 共

3. When there is a choice between two compound strokes, choose the higher one for the upper corners and the lower one for the lower corners.

功 盛 頗 鴨 奄

4. If an oblique downstroke is the cover for another stroke, choose the other stroke as the corner. For example:

春 奎 確 衣

5. If an upper left downstroke forms a left elbow, take the right part of the angle as the right corner:

勾 鈎 倬 鳴

IV. When a relatively large number of characters have the same four-corner number, take the stroke with (an) exposed point(s) in closest connection with the upper part of the lower right corner as an additional corner. If this stroke has already been counted, list it as 0. For example:

芒₁元₁洋₁是₁疝₁歆₁畜₁殘₁主₁難₁霖₁
越₁拼₁蠻₁覽₁功₁郭₁癡₁愁₁金₁遠₁仁₁見₁

When this additional number is still the same, arrange the characters by the total number of type 1 strokes in each. For example:市.帝 The four-corner and subsequent numbers are the same for both, but 市 has two type one strokes while 帝 contains three. Thus 市 comes first, then 帝. Other cases are arranged as per this example.

Another four-corner system, the one used in the HARVARD-YENCHING INSTITUTE SINOLOGICAL INDEX SERIES is that based on the mnemonic use of the five characters 中國字度類. In it, the forms of the characters themselves help the user to remember the categories used to generate the numbers. An explanation follows.

I. Gui 度 and xie 類 have the meanings of "put in" and "take out." They are used to represent the method for analyzing and ordering Chinese characters, like English alphabetization. There are ten important types of strokes in Chinese characters. Each is assigned a number to represent it, as below:

Mnemonic	No.	Stroke	Explanation
.	0	丶	dot
—	1	一 ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	horizontal dash and right hook
丿	2	丿 𠃉 𠃉 𠃉 𠃉	left hook, oblique down stroke, and perpendicular
+	3	十 卍 卍 卍 卍	2 strokes that cross where at least one is horizontal or vertical
又	4	又 又	2 strokes that cross, both oblique
才	5	才 丰 夫 戈 彡 手	A straight or oblique line transfixing two or more strokes
糸	6	纆 公 空 火 个 尧 十 示 𠃉 𠃉 𠃉 未 冢 水	Each and any part of 糸 and their transformations
丌	7	丌 丁 土 田 卩 非	A vertical or horizontal stroke with another stroke meeting it in its central portion
目	8	回 囧 山 目 フ ㄣ ㄣ ㄣ	A corner formed by the turning of one stroke or the meeting of two

Mnemonic No. Stroke and Explanation (continued)

9 八 and 人 and their transformations
ハ ハハツ人人入くくゝトイオ

Notes:

Each number represents the solid line portion of the simple or compound strokes in the examples. When a hollow line becomes solid, the solid portion gives the number. Thus:

㇀ = 0, ㇁ = 2, ㇂ = 8, ㇃ = 0802, ㇄ = 7, ㇅ = 72






If a portion of a character can be construed as a compound stroke, it should be. Do not count it as one of its single component strokes. For example: 八 = 9, not 20; 人 = 9, not 22.

Once a stroke is used, subsequent uses of the same stroke are counted as 0. For example: in 十 both top and bottom must be counted as 30, not 33.

If the unused portion of a previously counted stroke joins with others, then it can be counted. 木 The top of it is 十 and the bottom is ㇀ or 36.

II. The guixie method: First consider Chinese characters as representing one of five types, numbered 1-5. In each of the 5, four corner strokes are identified [by number]. These numbers are used as the basis for ordering the characters. The relative order of two characters depends on the magnitude of their respective numbers, smaller numbers coming before larger. For example: ㇀ and 册 are two characters of the first type. Follow the specified order in selecting the four corner numbers, upper left, upper right, lower left, lower right. Thus ㇀ is 1/8888 while 册 is 1/8833. So 册 comes before ㇀. The five form types are given below.

Corner Examples and
Mnemonic Type Order Explanation

Mnemonic	Type	Order	Explanation
中	1		Simple-type characters: cannot be broken into two pieces. If the characters have only one stroke left after they are divided into two portions, to-bottom or inside-outside, they shall not be divided.
國	2		Inclusion type: Three or four faces enclosed or top covered and right sided blocked. But if the division into two parts yields one with only one stroke or two dots separated by the surrounding form, such cases revert to type 1
字	3		Upper-lower type: Characters that can be divided into an upper and lower portion each with two or more strokes. All strokes that do not turn and join a lower horizontal are considered the top part. Compare 羔 and 予 which clarify this case. All characters that have a top half with a stroke that extends into the lower half or a lower part with a stroke that extends into the upper half are <u>not</u> of this type. 吳 is type 2 (國), 年 and 多 are type 4 (度).
度	4		Left-sheltered type: Characters whose top or left side are covered by a left-slanting downstroke. Characters that could belong to either type 3 (字) or 4(度) should be assigned to 3. Characters that could be assigned to type 2 (國) or 3 but whose topmost strokes would make them type 4 are type 4, e.g. 唇.
額	5		Left-right type: All characters that partition into left and right pieces. The extreme left piece is one part and the remainder is the second, right part. If the partition leaves only one dot on the left, it belongs to type 1 (中) like 心. Characters that might appear to fit the form (type 3) but are written left half first, then right half are of type 5.

Notes:

In type 1 characters, if the top-most region has only one stroke in it, this stroke should be counted as the upper-left corner. The extreme right portion, however, will still count as the upper right corner. If the bottommost region has only one stroke, it is stroke is counted as the lower left while the extreme right is the place to seek the lower right corner, e.g. 由 1/5888; 甲 1/8858; 中 1/5808; 夕 1/2820.

Types 2-5 all divide into two parts and each part of this division only counts as one "corner." If the topmost or bottommost region has only one stroke, it can stand for left or right as needed in the type, e.g. 皮 4/3284; 字 3/0273; 陳 5/8256.

Occasionally type 5 characters are composed of three vertical sections. The right two portions count as one. Take the uppermost and lowermost strokes as the corners, e.g. 候 5/9029.

In type 3 characters where a top horizontal is separated from the lower portion in analysis, even though it connects with the lower portions, it should not count as a number 7 stroke (丄), e.g. 主 3/9136; 羔 5/0121; 忘 3/0157.

III. After calculating the four-corner number, count the number of "boxes" on the interior of the character and append this number at the right end of the four digit one. If the character has no such "boxes," assign a 0.

Notes:

- (1) Do not count as boxes seeming squares whose bottom is not regular or does not complete the square, e.g. 夕 1/28200; 龜 1/88876; 凵 1/8880; 亞 1/70700.
- (2) When a character is a large box enclosing smaller ones, or when a large box with its interior lines form other squares, do not count the large box, but just the smaller internal ones, e.g. 回 2/88881; 田 2/88304.
- (3) When a box has dots or strokes inside it, do not count it. For example, the top part of 曾 (5/90882), the big boxes of 西 (1/70881) and 四 (2/88900) shall not be counted as boxes.
- (4) When the number of such interior boxes exceed 9, still count them as 9.
- (5) Calculating the number of boxes in a type 3 (字) character: when splitting one part of a character from the other to establish the two parts, do not count boxes formed by the two split portions. In the case of type 2 (國) characters, however, do count boxes so formed.
- (6) All characters with 月 (肉) count as having two boxes, following the pointed style which transforms 月 to 月 .

Additional Notes:

- (1) The most widespread form of characters today are printed ones. Accordingly, the guixie system is generally based on this form. Occasionally, character's printed forms are not identical and thus we had to select one form as the standard one. The characteristics in the following table are ones frequently

seen. The less common forms, reading expectation, are shown together, e.g. .

a. The topmost stroke is always a 0. Not like 一, |, ノ, etc. 上 1/01000, 𠂇 1/08020, 戶 1/08281

b. This kind of character's two top strokes are all 八, not 丷. 盆 2/90173, 簾 2/90755, 曾 2/90882, 尊 2/90732, 兌 90811

c. These upper left corners are all number 8. 己, ji, and 巳, yi, by themselves are both 1/1881, but other compounds with these two all count as 巳, si. 戶 1/82281, 𠂇 1/88220,

丘 1/82701, 凡 1/82701, 巳 1/88811, 艮 4/88902

d. These upper left corners are 7, not 8.

及 1/78240, 尹 1/78582, 兂 1/70311

e. Upper left corner 7, not 1.

册 5/72720

f. Upper left corner slanting downstroke (ノ) associated with a perpendicular (|) are considered equally high.

牛 1/25000, 𠂇 1/25020, 先 3/27210

g. An upper left perpendicular is considered to be the same height as the strokes to its right.

鼎 3/27604, 吳 2/29882, 止 1/27700

h. The two "shoulder" strokes are considered as high as the "head" strokes.

業 3/07960, 𠂇 5/02210, 坐 1/99700, 脊 2/19822, 幾 2/65900

i. The "与" and "車" contained in the upper portion are considered lower than its right and left elements even though they are sometimes printed higher.

與 3/87900, 輿 3/87904, 盥 3/82873, 災 1/88900, 囧 2/28400

j. In characters of the above type, the 丿 (6) is not made like 𠃉, etc.

豎 3/36114, 豎 3/86876

k. The lower tip of interior downstrokes are considered lower than the surrounding "丿" or "㇇" regardless of printed form.

雲 3/73160, 兼 2/90755, 承 1/18590, 椽 5/36720, 林 5/36360,
水 1/29600

l. A "㇇" does not form boxes with strokes below it.

𠃉 1/25000, 𠃉 4/90390, 𠃉 4/90501, 𠃉 1/25020

m. Printed forms may give 𠃉, but they are considered to be 𠃉, with one interior box.

𠃉 4/90501, 𠃉 1/50001, 𠃉 1/70311

n. All characters of this class are counted as having four boxes. 華 3/33754, 華 1/20704

o. The lower portion is 旦, not 且. 𠃉 3/01813

p. All counted as four boxes. Also, the top of zhen is considered 𠃉, not 𠃉. 直 3/30274, 眞 3/71294

(2) 甫, 月, etc.: Because the perpendicular on the lower right has a hook, even though it may connect with a horizontal, it is not a number 7.

(3) 盒, 父, 凳, 臺, etc. have a top with an umbrella-like covering (a left "丿", right "㇇" or "㇇" extending below). They thus all belong to the 國 (type 2) form. 𠃉, 𠃉, etc. that would seem to be able to come under the 字 class (number 3) are still assigned type 2 since they have strokes from the lower portion extending into the upper.

(4) 熊, 愆 etc.: The upper portion has four small parts, but the top, bottom, left and right do not yield an equal division. Thus they do not come under the example of 品, 蟹 where the extreme upper (left and right) form the top part.

(5) 鹿, 展, etc.: The first part does not combine with the second one to form boxes, thus 鹿 4/02312, 展 4/82392.

(6) All compound characters containing 西 or 酉, except for 晒, 酉, 蓄, are all treated as having 西 as in 羈 3/78329 and 賈 3/78897.

WADE-GILES TO PINYIN CONVERSION TABLE

Wade-Giles	Pinyin	Wade-Giles	Pinyin	Wade-Giles	Pinyin	Wade-Giles	Pinyin
a	a	chua	zhua	hsing	xing	kou	gou
ai	ai	ch'ua	chua	hsiu	xiu	k'ou	kou
an	an	chuai	zhuai	hsiung	xiong	ku	gu
ang	ang	ch'uai	chuai	hsū	xu	k'u	ku
ao	ao	chuan	zhuan	hsūan	xuan	kua	gua
		ch'uan	chuan	hsūeh	xue	k'ua	kua
cha	zha	chūan	juan	hsün	xun	kuai	guai
ch'a	cha	ch'uan	quan	hu	hu	k'uai	kuai
chai	zhai	chuang	zhuang	hua	hua	kuan	guan
ch'ai	chai	ch'uang	chuang	huai	huai	k'uan	kuan
chan	zhan	ch'ueh	jue	huan	huan	k'uang	kuang
ch'an	chan	ch'üeh	que	huang	huang	k'uang	kuang
chang	zhang	chui	zhui	hui	hui	kuei	gui
ch'ang	chang	ch'ui	chui	hun	hun	k'uei	kui
chao	zhao	chun	zhun	hung	hong	kun	gun
ch'ao	chao	ch'un	chun	huo	huo	k'un	kun
che	zhe	chün	jun			kung	gong
ch'e	che	ch'ün	qun	i	yi	k'ung	kong
chen	zhen	chung	zhong			kuo	guo
ch'en	chen	ch'ung	chong	jan	ran	k'uo	kuo
cheng	zheng			jang	rang		
ch'eng	cheng	ê	e	jao	rao	la	la
chi	ji	en	en	je	re	lai	lai
ch'i	qi	erh	er	jen	ren	lan	lan
chia	jia			jeng	reng	lang	lang
ch'ia	qia	fa	fa	jih	ri	lao	lao
chiang	jiang	fan	fan	jo	ruo	le	le
ch'iang	qiang	fang	fang	jou	rou	lei	lei
chiao	jiao	fei	fei	ju	ru	leng	leng
ch'iao	qiao	fen	fen	juan	ruan	li	li
chieh	jie	feng	feng	jui	rui	lia	lia
ch'ieh	qie	fo	fo	jun	run	liang	liang
chien	jian	fou	fou	jung	rong	liao	liao
ch'ien	qian	fu	fu			lieh	lie
chih	zhi			ka	ga	lien	lian
ch'ih	chi	ha	ha	k'a	ka	lin	lin
chin	jin	hai	hai	kai	gai	ling	ling
ch'in	qin	han	han	k'ai	kai	liu	liu
ching	jing	hang	hang	kan	gan	lo	luo
ch'ing	qing	hao	hao	k'an	kan	lou	lou
chiu	jiu	hei	hei	kang	gang	lu	lu
ch'iu	qiu	hen	hen	k'ang	kang	lū	lū
chiung	jiong	heng	heng	kao	gao	luan	luan
ch'iuung	qiong	ho	he	k'ao	kao	lūan	lūan
cho	zhuo	hou	hou	kei	gei	lüeh	lüe
ch'o	chuo	hsi	xi	k'ei	kei	lun	lun
chou	zhou	hsia	xia	ken	gen	lung	long
ch'ou	chou	hsiang	xiang	k'en	ken		
chu	zhu	hsiao	xiao	keng	geng	ma	ma
ch'u	chu	hsieh	xie	k'eng	keng	mai	mai
chū	ju	hsien	xian	ko	ge	man	man
ch'ū	qu	hsin	xin	k'o	ke	mang	mang

<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>
mao	mao	p'ao	pao	sou	sou	tseng	zeng
me	me	pei	bei	ssu	si	ts'eng	ceng
mei	mei	p'ei	pei	su	su	tso	zuo
men	men	pen	ben	suan	suan	ts'o	cuo
meng	meng	p'en	pen	sui	sui	tsou	zou
mi	mi	peng	beng	sun	sun	ts'ou	cou
miao	miao	p'eng	peng	sung	song	tsu	zu
mieh	mie	pi	bi			ts'u	cu
mien	mian	p'i	pi	ta	da	tsuan	zuan
min	min	piao	biao	t'a	ta	ts'uan	cuan
ming	ming	p'iao	piao	tai	dai	tsui	zui
miu	miu	pieh	bie	t'ai	tai	ts'ui	cui
mo	mo	p'ieh	pie	tan	dan	tsun	zun
mou	mou	pien	bian	t'an	tan	ts'un	cun
mu	mu	p'ien	pian	tang	dang	tsung	zong
		pin	bin	t'ang	tang	ts'ung	cong
na	na	p'in	pin	tao	dao	tu	du
nai	nai	ping	bing	t'ao	tao	t'u	tu
nan	nan	p'ing	ping	te	de	tuan	duan
nang	nang	po	bo	t'e	te	t'uan	tuan
nao	nao	p'o	po	tei	dei	tui	dui
ne	ne	p'ou	pou	teng	deng	t'ui	tui
nei	nei	pu	bu	t'eng	teng	tun	dun
nen	nen	p'u	pu	ti	di	t'un	tun
neng	neng			t'i	ti	tung	dong
ni	ni	sa	sa	tiao	diao	t'ung	tong
niang	niang	sai	sai	t'iao	tiao	tzu	zi
niao	niao	san	san	tieh	die	tz'u	ci
nieh	nie	sang	sang	t'ieh	tie		
nien	nian	sao	sao	tien	dian	wa	wa
nin	nin	se	se	t'ien	tian	wai	wai
ning	ning	sen	sen	ting	ding	wan	wan
niu	niu	seng	seng	t'ing	ting	wang	wang
no	nuo	sha	sha	tiu	diu	wei	wei
nou	nou	shai	shai	to	duo	wen	wen
nu	nu	shan	shan	t'o	tuo	weng	weng
nü	nü	shang	shang	tou	dou	wo	wo
nuan	nuan	shao	shao	t'ou	tou	wu	wu
nüeh	nüe	she	she	tsa	za		
nung	nong	shei	shei	ts'a	ca	ya	ya
		shen	shen	tsai	zai	yai	yai
o	e, o	sheng	sheng	ts'ai	cai	yang	yang
ou	ou	shih	shi	tsan	zan	yao	yao
		shou	shou	ts'an	can	yeh	ye
pa	ba	shu	shu	tsang	zang	yen	yan
p'a	pa	shua	shua	ts'ang	cang	yin	yin
pai	bai	shuai	shuai	tsao	zao	ying	ying
p'ai	pai	shuan	shuan	ts'ao	cao	yu	you
pan	ban	shuang	shuang	tse	ze	yü	yu
p'an	pan	shui	shui	ts'e	ce	yüan	yuan
pang	bang	shun	shun	tsei	zei	yüeh	yue
p'ang	pang	shuo	shuo	tsen	zen	yün	yun
pao	bao	so	suo	ts'en	cen	yung	yong

PINYIN TO WADE-GILES CONVERSION TABLE

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
a	a	cu	ts'u	geng	keng	ke	k'e
ai	ai	cuan	ts'uan	gong	kung	ken	k'en
an	an	cui	ts'ui	gou	kou	keng	k'eng
ang	ang	cun	ts'un	gu	ku	kong	k'ung
ao	ao	cuo	ts'o	gua	kua	kou	k'ou
				guai	kuai	ku	k'u
ba	pa	da	ta	guan	kuan	kua	k'ua
bai	pai	dai	tai	guang	kuang	kuai	k'uai
ban	pan	dan	tan	gui	kui	kuan	k'uan
bang	pang	dang	tang	gun	kun	kuang	k'uang
bao	pao	dao	tao	guo	kuo	kui	k'ui
bei	pei	de	te			kun	k'un
ben	pen	dei	tei	ha	ha	kuo	k'uo
beng	peng	deng	teng	hai	hai		
bi	pi	di	ti	han	han	la	la
bian	pien	dian	tien	hang	hang	lai	lai
biao	piao	diao	tiao	hao	hao	lan	lan
bie	pieh	die	tieh	he	ho	lang	lang
bin	pin	ding	ting	hei	hei	lao	lao
bing	ping	diu	tiu	hen	hen	le	le
bo	po	dong	tung	heng	heng	lei	lei
bu	pu	dou	tou	hong	hung	leng	leng
		du	tu	hou	hou	li	li
ca	ts'a	duan	tuan	hu	hu	lia	lia
cai	ts'ai	dui	tui	hua	hua	lian	lien
can	ts'an	dun	tun	huai	huai	liang	liang
cang	ts'ang	duo	to	huan	huan	liao	liao
cao	ts'ao			huang	huang	lie	lieh
ce	ts'e	e	e	hui	hui	lin	lin
cen	ts'en	ei	ei	hun	hun	ling	ling
ceng	ts'eng	en	en	huo	huo	liu	liu
cha	ch'a	eng	eng			long	lung
chai	ch'ai	er	erh	ji	chi	lou	lou
chan	ch'an			jia	chia	lu	lu
chang	ch'ang	fa	fa	jian	chien	lū	lū
chao	ch'ao	fan	fan	jiang	chiang	luan	luan
che	ch'e	fang	fang	jiao	chiao	lue	lueh
chen	ch'en	fei	fei	jie	chieh	lun	lun
cheng	ch'eng	fen	fen	jin	chin	luo	lo
chi	ch'ih	feng	feng	jing	ching		
chong	ch'ung	fo	fo	jiong	chiung	ma	ma
chou	ch'ou	fou	fou	jiu	chiu	mai	mai
chu	ch'u	fu	fu	ju	chū	man	man
chuai	ch'uai			juan	chūan	mang	mang
chuan	ch'uan	ga	ka	jue	chūeh	mao	mao
chuang	ch'uang	gai	kai	jun	chūn	me	me
chui	ch'ui	gan	kan			mei	mei
chun	ch'un	gang	kang	ka	k'a	men	men
chuo	ch'o	gao	kao	kai	k'ai	meng	meng
ci	tz'u	ge	ke	kan	k'an	mi	mi
cong	ts'ung	gei	kei	kang	k'ang	mian	mien
cou	ts'ou	gen	ken	kao	k'ao	miao	miao

<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>	<u>Pinyin</u>	<u>Wade-Giles</u>
mie	mieh	qi	ch'i	shuo	shuo	ya	ya
min	min	qia	ch'ia	si	ssu	yan	yen
ming	ming	qian	ch'ien	song	sung	yang	yang
miu	miu	qiang	ch'iang	sou	sou	yao	yao
mo	mo	qiao	ch'iao	su	su	ye	yeh
mou	mou	qie	ch'ieh	suan	suan	yi	i
mu	mu	qin	ch'in	sui	sui	yin	yin
		qing	ch'ing	sun	sun	ying	ying
na	na	qiong	ch'iong	suo	so	yo	yo
nai	nai	qiu	ch'iu			yong	yung
nan	nan	qu	ch'ü	ta	t'a	you	yu
nang	nang	quan	ch'üan	tai	t'ai	yu	yü
nao	nao	que	ch'üeh	tan	t'an	yuan	yüan
ne	ne	qun	ch'ün	tang	t'ang	yue	yüeh
nei	nei			tao	t'ao	yun	yün
nen	nen	ran	jan	te	t'e		
neng	neng	rang	jang	teng	t'eng	za	tsa
ni	ni	rao	jao	ti	t'i	zai	tsai
nian	nien	re	je	tian	t'ien	zan	tsan
niang	niang	ren	jen	tiao	t'iao	zang	tsang
niao	niao	reng	jeng	tie	t'ieh	zao	tsao
nie	nieh	ri	jih	ting	ting	ze	tse
nin	nin	rong	jung	tong	t'ung	zei	tsei
ning	ning	rou	jou	tou	t'ou	zen	tsen
niu	niu	ru	ju	tu	t'u	zeng	tseng
nong	nung	ruan	juan	tuan	t'uan	zha	cha
nou	nou	rui	juí	tui	t'ui	zhai	chai
nu	nu	run	jun	tun	t'un	zhan	chan
nü	nü	ruo	jo	tuo	t'o	zhang	chang
nuan	nuan					zhao	chao
nüe	nüeh	sa	sa	wa	wa	zhe	che
nuo	no	sai	sai	wai	wai	zhei	chei
		san	san	wan	wan	zhen	chen
o	o	sang	sang	wang	wang	zheng	cheng
ou	ou	sen	sen	wei	wei	zhi	chih
		seng	seng	wen	wen	zhong	chung
pa	p'a	sha	sha	weng	weng	zhou	chou
pai	p'ai	shai	shai	wo	wo	zhu	chu
pan	p'an	shan	shan	wu	wu	zhua	chua
pang	p'ang	shang	shang			zhuai	chuai
pao	p'ao	shao	shao	xi	hsi	zhuai	chuai
pei	p'ei	shao	shao	xia	hsia	zhuang	chuang
pen	p'en	she	she	xian	hsien	zhui	chui
peng	p'eng	shei	shei	xiang	hsiang	zhun	chun
pi	p'i	shen	shen	xiao	hsiao	zhuo	cho
pian	p'ien	sheng	sheng	xie	hsieh	zi	tzu
piao	p'iao	shi	shih	xin	hsin	zong	tsung
pie	p'ieh	shou	shou	xing	hsing	zou	tsou
pin	p'in	shu	shu	xiong	hsiung	zu	tsu
ping	p'ing	shua	shua	xiu	hsiu	zuan	tsuan
po	p'o	shuai	shuai	xu	hsü	zui	tsui
pou	p'ou	shuan	shuan	xuan	hsüan	zun	tsun
pu	p'u	shuang	shuang	xue	hsüeh	zuo	tsuo
		shui	shui	xun	hsün		
		shun	shun				

MING WEIGHTS AND MEASURES

<u>Chinese Unit</u>		<u>English Unit</u>	<u>Metric Unit</u>
<u>Area</u>			
1 <u>mou</u> (<u>mu</u>) 畝	=	.14 acre	5.803 are
1 <u>qing</u> 頃	=	100 <u>mou</u>	5.803 hectares
<u>Capacity</u>			
1 <u>sheng</u> 升	=	.99 quart	1.0737 liters
1 <u>dou</u> 斗	=	10 <u>sheng</u>	10.737 liters
1 <u>shi</u> (<u>dan</u>) 石	=	10 <u>dou</u>	
	=	99 quarts	
	=	3.1 bushels	107.37 liters
<u>Length</u>			
1 <u>chi</u> 尺	=	10 <u>cun</u>	
	=	12.3 inches	31.1 cm
1 <u>bu</u> (double pace) 步	=	5 <u>chi</u>	1.555 meters
1 <u>zhang</u> 丈	=	10 <u>chi</u>	3.11 meters
1 <u>li</u> 里	=	1/3 mile	559.8 meters
<u>Money</u>			
1 <u>liang</u> (tael) 兩	=	1/16 <u>jin</u> (of silver)	
1 <u>qian</u> (copper cash) 錢	=	.1 <u>liang</u>	
1 <u>guan</u> (string of cash) 貫	=	1,000 cash	
<u>Weight</u>			
1 <u>liang</u> 兩	=	1.3 ounces	37.3 grams
1 <u>jin</u> (catty) 斤	=	16 <u>liang</u>	
	=	1.3 pounds	.5968 kilogram

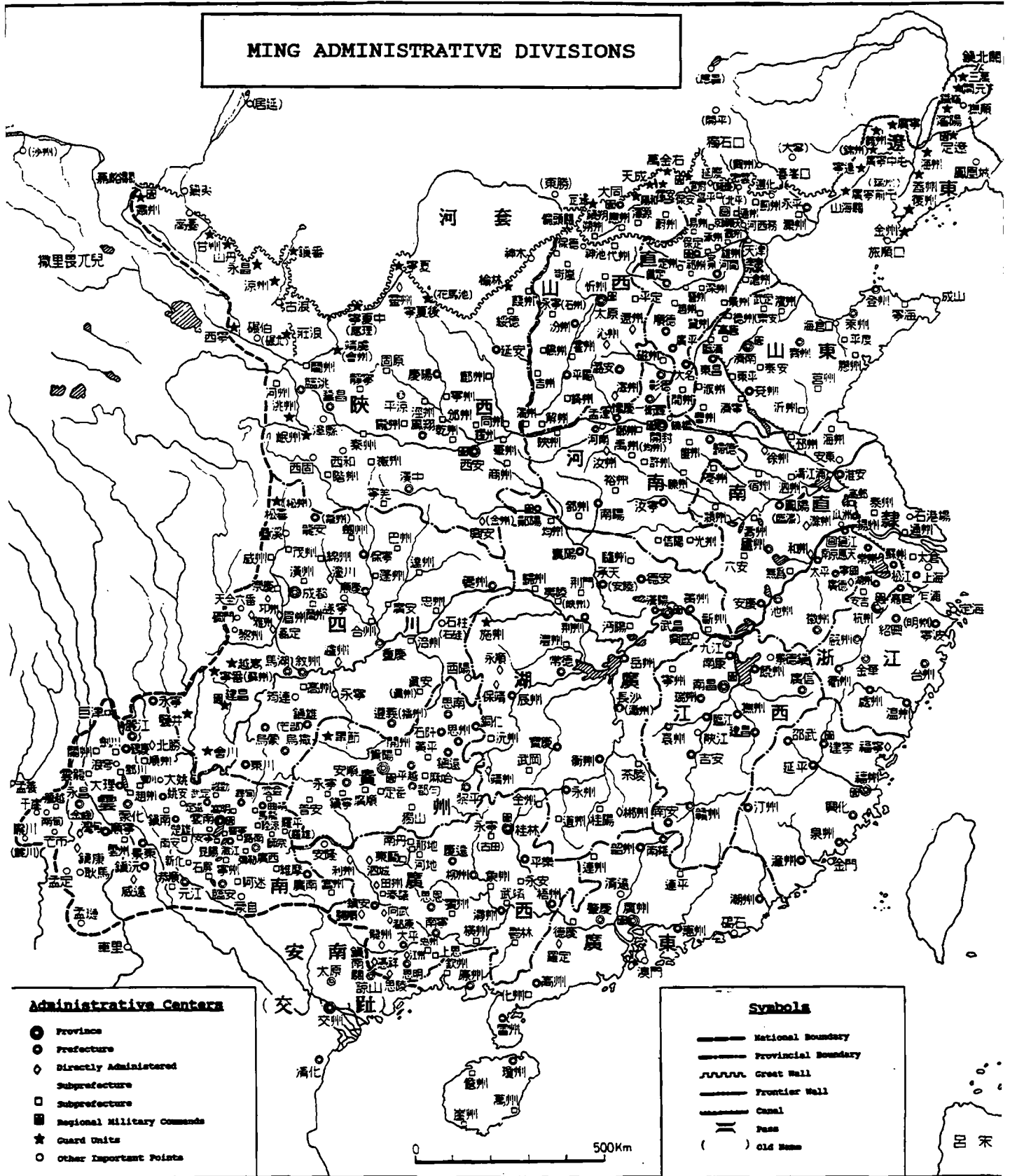
Note: Weights, measures and values were not necessarily standard or stable throughout the Ming Dynasty or in all parts of China. These conversions should be viewed as approximations. For more details on historical weights and measures see tables in CHUGOKU KOTEN BUNGAKU TAIKEI 中國古典文學大系, vol. 57, MINMATSU SHINSHO SEIJI HYORONSHU 明末清初政治評論集 (Tokyo, 1971).

MING REIGN PERIODS AND EMPERORS

Reign Title		Temple Name		Personal Name	
Hongwu 1368-1398	洪武	Taizu	太祖	Zhu Yuanzhang 1328-1398	朱元璋
Jianwen 1399-1402	建文	(Huidi) (Huizong)	惠帝 惠宗	Zhu Yunwen 1377-1402?	朱允炆
Yongle 1403-1424	永樂	Taizong Chengzu (from 1538)	太宗 成祖	Zhu Di 1360-1424	朱棣
Hongxi 1425	洪熙	Renzong	仁宗	Zhu Gaozhi 1378-1425	朱高熾
Xuande 1426-1435	宣德	Xuanzong	宣宗	Zhu Zhanji 1399-1435	朱瞻基
Zhengtong 1436-1449	正統	Yingzong	英宗	Zhu Qizhen 1427-1464	朱祁鎮
Jingtai 1450-1456	景泰	Daizong	代宗	Zhu Qiyu 1428-1457	朱祁
Tianshun 1457-1464	天順	Yingzong (restored)	英宗	Zhu Qizhen 1427-1464	朱祁鎮
Chenghua 1465-1487	成化	Xianzong	憲宗	Zhu Jianshen 1447-1487	朱見深
Hongzhi 1488-1505	弘治	Xiaozong	孝宗	Zhu Youtang 1470-1505	朱祐樞
Zhengde 1506-1521	正德	Wuzong	武宗	Zhu Houzhao 1491-1521	朱厚照
Jiajing 1522-1566	嘉靖	Shizong	世宗	Zhu Houcong 1507-1567	朱厚熜
Longqing 1567-1572	隆慶	Muzong	穆宗	Zhu Zaihou 1537-1572	朱載堉
Wanli 1573-1619	萬曆	Shenzong	神宗	Zhu Yijun 1563-1620	朱翊鈞
Taichang 1620	泰昌	Guangzong	光宗	Zhu Changluo 1582-1620	朱常洛
Tianqi 1621-1627	天啓	Xizong	熹宗	Zhu Youjiao 1605-1627	朱由校
Chongzhen 1628-1644	崇禎	Zhuangliedi (Sizong)	莊烈帝 思宗	Zhu Youjian 1611-1644	朱由檢

For precise dates of birth, death, enthronement, and reign title see Goodrich, DICTIONARY OF MING BIOGRAPHY, xxi.

MING ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS



Administrative Centers

- Province
- Prefecture
- ◇ Directly Administered Subprefecture
- Subprefecture
- Regional Military Commands
- ★ Guard Units
- Other Important Points

Symbols

- National Boundary
- Provincial Boundary
- Great Wall
- Frontier Wall
- Canal
- Pass
- () Old Name

Source: Wada Sei, ed., *MINSHI SHIKASHI YAKUCHU* (Tokyo: Toyo Bunko, 1957), vol. 2.